

**teach
yourself**

beginner's hindi

goal

everyday communication

category

language

content

- **cover all the basics**
- **go at a steady pace**
- **build your confidence to speak**

be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



**teach
yourself**

teach[®] **yourself**

beginner's hindi

rupert snell

For over 60 years, more than 50 million people have learnt over 750 subjects the **teach yourself** way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be
with **teach yourself**

contents

introduction	vi
the Hindi script and sounds	viii
01 नमस्ते	1
<i>namaste</i> greetings	
1 saying hello	2
2 who and how people are	2
3 this and that; he, she and it	5
4 more questions	6
Raju meets his neighbour, Javed	10
02 हमारा परिवार	14
<i>hamārā parivār</i> our family	
1 gender matters	15
2 number	18
3 getting familiar	23
4 getting formal	25
Javed asks Raju about his family	26
03 कमरे में	30
<i>kamre mē</i> In the room	
1 some more questions	31
2 where? on the table	33
3 case	37
at school	42
at home	43

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.co.uk

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 2003 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2003 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 2003 Rupert Snell

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London, EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, an Hachette Livre UK Company, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

04	चाय पीजिए <i>cāy pījīe</i> have some tea	47
	1 giving orders and making requests	48
	2 telling, saying, speaking, asking	51
	3 routine events	53
	Javed and Raju get to know each other	57
05	आपको क्या चाहिए ? <i>āpko kyā cāhīe?</i> what do you want?	61
	1 obliques again	62
	2 what do you like, what do you want?	64
	Pratap goes shopping	66
	3 availability — 'to get, to find'	67
	4 revision!	69
	Raju visits a hotel	69
06	आप क्या काम करते हैं ? <i>āp kyā kām karte hāi?</i> what work do you do?	77
	1 possession and 'to have'	78
	2 the Sharma family	80
	Manoj introduces Pratap to his father	83
	3 you can go	84
	there's nobody in the house	85
	4 let me go!	87
07	भूत-काल <i>bhūt-kāl</i> the past	92
	1 in the past	93
	2 getting specific	97
	3 a shortcut	98
	4 adding emphasis	102
08	क्या हो रहा है ? <i>kyā ho rahā hāi?</i> what's happening?	106
	1 comparisons: bigger and smaller	107
	2 continuous tense: '-ing' verbs	109
	Geeta phones home	110
	3 Raju is reading 'his own' newspaper	113
	revising with Gopal and Jagdish	114
	4 these days, in and out, up and down	118

09	भविष्य में <i>bhavīgya mē</i> in the future	124
	1 the future tense	125
	what will you do tomorrow?	125
	the days ahead	128
	2 ifs and maybes	131
	Javed calls on Raju	131
	3 so that, in order that	133
	4 how long does it take?	134
10	क्या हुआ ? <i>kyā huā?</i> what happened?	138
	1 the past tense	139
	2 transitivity	141
	3 other perfective tenses	145
	4 sit and rest — linking two actions	150
11	कहा जाता है कि ... <i>kahā jātā hai ki...</i> It is said that...	156
	1 a verb with many meanings	157
	2 finding the way in Vilaspur	158
	3 it is said that... the passive is easy	161
	4 you should read this — obligations	166
	5 you must read this — stronger obligations	168
12	तबियत और शैली <i>tabiyat aur śailī</i> health and style	173
	1 'j-words' and relative clauses	174
	2 getting things done — causatives	180
	a visit to the doctor	182
	3 parts of the body	184
	4 shades of meaning	186
	5 style in Hindi	188
	6 numbers	190
	7 time	192
	key to the exercises	198
	Hindi-English vocabulary	230
	English-Hindi vocabulary	244
	glossary of grammatical terms	262
	index	264

Welcome to Beginner's Hindi !

Is this the right course for you?

This course is designed for people who want a structured but user-friendly introduction to Hindi, whether studying alone or in a class. It aims to get you into the world of real Hindi as quickly as possible. Each of the twelve units prepares you for some new social or practical situations while also introducing the grammar gradually and simply. We begin with simple statements and questions using the verb 'to be'; then the various tenses and other structures are explained, steadily increasing the range of contexts that you can deal with. There are plentiful examples and exercises; all numbered questions are provided with answers, either immediately after the questions, or at the back of the book. The book often addresses you directly, asking questions about you and encouraging you to use the language as you learn it. The carefully graded vocabulary for each unit comes at the end, with full Hindi–English and English–Hindi glossaries bringing it all together at the back of the book.

The Sharma family

Most of the dialogues are based on the various members of the Sharma family, who live in Agra: Geeta (a doctor) and her husband Raju (a teacher), their children Manoj, Ram and Meena — and a dog, Moti. Because we're dealing with a set of known characters, it's easy to see the different levels of formality that are an important feature of Hindi: for example, we hear the children being addressed less formally than adults and strangers. One or two subsidiary characters, such as Pratap (a student visiting England), also appear in the book *Teach Yourself Hindi*, which gives a more detailed introduction to the language.

Script and pronunciation

The Hindi script, called 'Devanagari', is an extremely systematic writing system: each character represents a particular sound, making it the perfect guide to pronunciation. Although a 'roman' transliteration is given throughout the book, the small effort required to learn Devanagari is very well worthwhile!

Listen out for two important contrasts in pronunciation. The first is between 'retroflex' consonants (pronounced with the tongue touching the roof of the mouth, giving a 'hard' sound of the kind associated with Indian pronunciations of words like 'doctor') and 'dental' consonants (pronounced with the tongue touching the upper teeth, giving a 'soft' sound as in an Italian pronunciation of 'Italia'). The second contrast is between 'unaspirated' and 'aspirated' consonants, such as the pair क ka and का kha — the first is much less 'breathy' than the second. Vowel sounds are very 'clean': the vowel ए e is more like the vowels in French 'été' than in English 'mayday'.

The recordings

This book is accompanied by recordings which will help bring the language alive for you. They introduce the sounds of Hindi, present the dialogues and other features from the book, and go beyond the book with several further listening and speaking exercises that will build your confidence in using Hindi in real conversations. Pause the recording whenever you need time to think, and practise imitating the Hindi voices as closely as possible, *speaking out loud*.

Where does this book lead?

After finishing this book, you may like to look at *Teach Yourself Hindi*, by Rupert Snell with Simon Weightman: this gives more detail on the grammar, and plenty of reading practice. The web-based course *A Door into Hindi* (www.ncsu.edu/project/hindi_lessons) has an interactive approach to the learning process; and Hindi films also offer a brilliant way of getting to know the language and the culture it expresses. Most importantly of all, you will find some 400 million Hindi-speakers waiting to talk to you: start speaking Hindi today!

Dictionaries: Rupert Snell's *Beginner's Hindi Dictionary* is designed for learners and gives a lot of help with sentence formation, while the *Oxford Hindi–English Dictionary* by R.S. McGregor is what you need if you want to start reading Hindi newspapers and magazines, many of which are available on the internet.

The Hindi script and sounds

Although a roman transliteration is provided for all the Hindi in this book, learning to read and write the Devanagari script is extremely worthwhile. Its phonetic basis makes it really easy to learn; and if you're in India, being able to read the Hindi all around you in signs and posters will bring its own reward, even before you start reading more ambitiously. As you begin to learn Devanagari, there's a very useful web-based 'Hindi script tutor' to help you learn the characters and their sounds: <http://www.avashy.com/hindiscripttutor.htm>; this website, devised by Richard Woodward, teaches and tests the script inter-actively, and demonstrates the sounds of Hindi. And for a detailed introduction to Devanagari, see Rupert Snell, *Beginner's Hindi Script* (Hodder & Stoughton, 2000).

The best way to learn the script is to copy out each character several times, pronouncing its sound as you do so. Start with the consonants. Each basic consonant is actually a complete syllable: for example the sign क stands for not just the consonant 'k' but the whole syllable 'ka'; it will sound similar to the first syllable of the word 'cup'. The 'a' vowel is always there unless replaced by some other vowel indicated by a special vowel sign. More on this later: for now, concentrate on copying and learning the consonants.

Write on lined paper, with the top line of the character falling on the printed line, and the rest of the character hanging below.

Aspiration

In the descriptions of the Hindi sounds you'll see many references to 'aspiration' — the amount of breath that escapes from the mouth when a sound is spoken. In English, the initial 'k' of 'kick' is strongly aspirated, the closing 'ck' much less so. In Hindi, such differences are represented by pairs of consonants such as क ka (unaspirated) and ख kha (aspirated). English consonants fall halfway between the two, so you'll have to make a special effort to cut back your aspiration for the one, and increase it for the other! All these things are best dealt with by listening to the recordings, and/or by asking a Hindi-speaker to demonstrate them for you.

On the facing page you'll find all the main characters of the script set out in a table; then each character is set out separately with its handwritten equivalent, and a note on pronunciation. The consonants are dealt with first (as is the tradition), though in dictionary order the vowels precede the consonants.

Devanagari: the basic characters

Independent vowel forms ('vowel characters')

अ a	आ ā	इ i	ई ī
उ u	ऊ ū	ऋ r	
ए e	ऐ ai	ओ o	औ au

Consonants

क ka	খ kha	গ ga	ঘ gha	
চ ca	ছ cha	জ ja	ঝ jha	
ট ta	ঠ tha	ড da	ঢ dha	ণ pa
ত ta	ঠ tha	দ da	ঢ dha	ন na
প pa	ঠ pha	ব ba	ঢ bha	ম ma
য ya	ৰ ra	ল la	ৱ va	
শ śa	শ sa	স sa	হ ha	

Dependent vowel forms ('vowel signs', based on क as an example)

ক ka	কা kā	কি ki	কী kī
কু ku	কু kū	কৃ kr̥	
কে ke	কে kai	কো ko	কৌ kau

The consonants

क	<i>ka</i>	As in ‘skin’; minimum aspiration.
कः	<i>qa</i>	Further back in the throat than undotted क (many speakers say ‘ka’ for both).
ख	<i>kha</i>	Aspirated version of क <i>ka</i> .
खः	<i>kha</i>	Like the ‘ch’ in Scottish ‘loch’.
ग	<i>ga</i>	As in ‘gift’.
गः	<i>ga</i>	A more guttural version of the above.
घ	<i>gha</i>	Aspirated version of गः; like the ‘g h’ in ‘dog-house’. A <i>single</i> sound.
च	<i>ca</i>	As in ‘cheap’, but with the tongue positioned as for the ‘ty’ sound in ‘tube’.
छ	<i>cha</i>	Aspirated form of the above.
ज	<i>ja</i>	As in ‘jeep’.
जः	<i>za</i>	As in ‘zip’.
झ	<i>jha</i>	Aspirated form of ज <i>ja</i> .

The next seven consonants are ‘retroflex’: the tongue curls back to the palate (front part of the roof of the mouth), making a hard sound.

ट	<i>ta</i>	As in ‘try’, but harder.
ठ	<i>tha</i>	Aspirated version of the above.
ड	<i>da</i>	As in ‘dry’, but harder.
डः	<i>ra</i>	The tongue flicks past (rather than resting on) the retroflex position.
ढ	<i>dha</i>	Aspirated version of ड <i>da</i> .

ढ *r̥ha* Aspirated version of ड *ra*.

ण *na* An ‘n’ sound in the retroflex position.

The next five consonants are ‘dental’: the tongue touches the upper teeth, making a soft sound.

त *ta* As the first ‘t’ in ‘at the’, very soft.

थ *tha* Aspirated version of the above.

द *da* As in ‘breadth’, very soft.

ध *dha* Aspirated version of the above.

न *na* As in ‘anthology’.

‘SONI DENTAL CHAMBER:
[FALSE-] TEETH AND
SPECTACLE-MAKER’

Ironically, the English word ‘dental’ is spelt with retroflex ड *d* and ठ *t* in this signboard, whereas the Hindi word दाँत *dāt* ‘tooth’ has two dentals!



Now we come to ‘labials’, consonants produced with the lips.

प *pa* Much less aspiration than in ‘pin’.

फ *pha* Aspirated version of the above.

ब *ba* As in ‘bun’.

भ *bha* Aspirated version of the above.

म *ma* As in ‘moon’.

Now for a sequence of four characters called ‘semi-vowels’:

य *ya* As in ‘yes’.

र *ra* As in ‘roll’ — but lightly rolled!

ल *la* As in ‘lullaby’, but softer, more dental.

व *va* Neither a buzzy sound as in ‘visa’, nor as rounded as in ‘we’, but halfway between.

We’re nearly done. Here are three ‘sibilants’:

श *śa* As ‘sh’ in ‘ship’; pronounced ‘s’ in some regional accents.

ष *ṣa* Strictly speaking a ‘cerebral’ (in which the tongue touches a high point in the roof of the mouth); but usually pronounced ‘sh’, the same as the previous character, श *śa*. It occurs in loanwords from Sanskrit only.

स *sa* As in ‘sip’.

And finally an aspirate:

ह *ha* As in ‘help’.

You’ll have noticed that some characters have ‘dotted’ versions: these are for sounds which go beyond the range of Sanskrit, the classical language for which the script was first devised. They are क *qa*, ख *kha*, ग *ga*, ज *za*, and फ *fa* (typically for words borrowed from Arabic and Persian) and र *ra*, ठ *rha* (late developers in the long history of Indian languages). These characters are not distinguished in dictionary order from their undotted equivalents. The showing of dots in print is often rather haphazard — but not in this book!

Remember that each consonant contains an inherent ‘a’ vowel as part of the deal. But it’s important to notice that this ‘inherent vowel’ is *not* pronounced at the end of a word: thus the word for ‘all’, सब, reads *sab* (not ‘*saba*’), and the word for ‘simple’, सरल, reads *saral* (not ‘*sarala*’). Armed with this information you can now read and write these words:



कब *kab* when?

जब *jab* when

तब *tab* then

पर *par* but; on

फल *phal* fruit

मन *man* mind

सब *sab* all

हम *ham* we, us

कलम *qalam* pen

गरम *garam* warm

तरफ *taraf* direction

नमक *namak* salt

महल *mahal* palace

शहर *śahar* town

सड़क *sarak* street

सरल *'saral* simple

In the words महल *mahal* and शहर *śahar*, the ह *ha* has the effect of ‘lightening’ the adjacent vowels, making them sound more like the ‘e’ in ‘mend’ than the ‘u’ in ‘mundane’ (this will vary somewhat from speaker to speaker). Elsewhere, Hindi is remarkably free of such contextual changes: the Hindi script is a ‘what you see is what you get’ system.

► The vowels

Now we move on to look at vowels. Each vowel has two different forms: one is the ‘vowel sign’, used after a consonant; the other is the ‘vowel character’, used in other positions. First, vowel signs.

A vowel sign is used when a vowel follows a consonant. It’s a small mark that is added to the consonant, and it replaces the ‘a’ that is otherwise present as the inherent vowel. The examples below show the vowel ‘e’ added to the consonants क *ka*, ख *kha*, ग *ga* and घ *gha*.

के

ke

खे

khe

गे

ge

घे

ghe

Here now is the full range of such vowel signs, based on क —

का

kā

A long vowel, as in ‘calm’.

कि

ki

A short vowel, as in ‘kipper’.

की

kī

A long version of the above, as in ‘keep’.

कु

ku

Short, as in ‘put’.

कू	<i>kū</i>	A long version of the above, as in ‘food’.
कृ	<i>kṛ</i>	A very short ‘ri’ sound, as in ‘thrill’. It only occurs in Sanskrit loanwords.
के	<i>ke</i>	Like the French é in ‘été’; <i>not</i> a rounded sound as in English ‘payday’.
कै	<i>kai</i>	Similar to the vowel in ‘cap’, but flatter.
को	<i>ko</i>	A pure ‘o’, less rounded than in ‘cold’.
कौ	<i>kau</i>	Similar to the vowel in ‘hot’.

And here’s some more reading and writing practice:

▶ कान	<i>kān</i>	ear	पानी	<i>pāni</i>	water
कृपा	<i>kṛpā</i>	kindness	भारत	<i>bhārat</i>	India
खड़ा	<i>kharā</i>	standing	मकान	<i>makān</i>	house
चाय	<i>cāy</i>	tea	वाराणसी	<i>vārāṇasī</i>	Varanasi
तोता	<i>totā</i>	parrot	सितार	<i>sitār</i>	sitar
दुकान	<i>dukān</i>	shop	सौ	<i>sau</i>	hundred
दूर	<i>dūr</i>	far	है	<i>hai</i>	is

At this point you should practise writing out these vowel signs attached to *all* the consonants until they become really familiar.

These vowel signs can only be used when they have a consonant sign to cling to. In other positions, such as at the beginning of a word, the vowel is written with a vowel *character*. The first in the list is the ‘inherent’ vowel:

अ	<i>a</i>	अब	<i>ab</i>	now
आ	<i>ā</i>	आज	<i>āj</i>	today
इ	<i>i</i>	इधर	<i>idhar</i>	over here
ई	<i>ī</i>	ईरान	<i>īrān</i>	Iran

उ	<i>u</i>	उधर	<i>udhar</i>	over there
ऊ	<i>ū</i>	ऊपर	<i>ūpar</i>	up
ऋ	<i>r̥</i>	ऋण	<i>r̥ṇ</i>	debt
ए	<i>e</i>	एक	<i>ek</i>	one
ऐ	<i>ai</i>	ऐसा	<i>aisā</i>	such
ओ	<i>o</i>	ओर	<i>or</i>	direction
औ	<i>au</i>	और	<i>aur</i>	and

And here are three words in which vowel characters appear as the second of two sequential vowels (i.e. neither at the beginning of a word nor after a consonant):

कई *kai* ‘several’ — ई *i* follows the syllable क *ka*;
 उबाऊ *ubāū* ‘boring’ — ऊ *ū* follows the syllable बा *ba*;
 बनाओ *banāo* ‘make’ — ओ *o* follows the syllable ना *na*.

▶ Conjunct characters

When two consonant sounds come together without an intervening vowel, we have to cancel or ‘kill off’ the inherent vowel of the first consonant. For example, in the word ‘Hindi’ there is no ‘a’ between the ‘n’ and the ‘d’, so a shortened form of the first consonant, न, is physically joined to the second consonant, द, giving हिन्दी *hindī*.

क + य	=	क्य	क्या	<i>kyā</i>	what?
च + च	=	च्च	बच्चा	<i>baccā</i>	child
च + छ	=	छ	अच्छा	<i>acchā</i>	good
ल + ल	=	ल्ल	बिल्ली	<i>billi</i>	cat
स + त	=	स्त	हिन्दुस्तानी	<i>hindustānī</i>	Indian

Conjuncts beginning with द *da* can be hard to recognize:

द + द	=	द्द	रद्द	<i>radd</i>	cancelled
द + म	=	द्म	पद्म	<i>padma</i>	lotus

द + य	=	य	विद्या	<i>vidyā</i> knowledge
द + व	=	द्व	द्वार	<i>dvār</i> gateway

When र is the first character of a compound it turns into a little curl (called रेफ *reph*) above the second character:

र + क	=	क्	फ़र्क	<i>farq</i> difference
र + थ	=	थ्	अर्थ	<i>arth</i> meaning
र + द	=	द्	दर्द	<i>dard</i> pain
र + मा	=	म्	शर्मा	<i>śarmā</i> Sharma
र + थी	=	थ्	विद्यार्थी	<i>vidyārthī</i> student

The *reph* comes at the very end of the syllable in words like शर्मा *śarmā* (where it's above the vowel sign त) and like विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* (where it's above the vowel sign न).

When र is the *second* character of a compound it turns into a little slanting line, tucked into a convenient nook of the first character:

ग + र	=	ग्र	सिग्रेट	<i>sigret</i> cigarette
द + र	=	द्र	द्रोही	<i>drohi</i> hostile
प + र	=	प्र	प्रदेश	<i>pradeś</i> state, region

See what happens when no nook is available:

ट + र	=	ट्र	ट्रेन	<i>tren</i> train
ड + र	=	ड्र	ड्रामा	<i>drāmā</i> drama

Some conjuncts stack vertically:

ट + ट	=	टृ	छुट्टी	<i>chutti</i> holiday
ट + ठ	=	ठृ	चिट्ठी	<i>cittī</i> letter

Most conjuncts are easy to read, but there are some in which the conjunct has limited resemblance to its component parts, and these have to be learnt as new characters in their own right:

क + त	=	क्त	भक्ति	<i>bhakti</i> devotion
क + ष	=	क्ष	रक्षा	<i>rakṣā</i> protection

त + त	=	त्त	कुत्ता	<i>kuttā</i> dog
त + र	=	त्र	मित्र	<i>mitr</i> friend
द + भ	=	द्भ	अद्भुत	<i>adbhut</i> wondrous
श + र	=	श्र	श्री	<i>śri</i> Mr
ह + म	=	ह्म	ब्रह्मा	<i>Brahmā</i> Brahma (a deity)

The rare character ज् *jñā* is a conjunct of ज with ञ् *ñā*, a nasal consonant (like the first 'n' in 'onion') that is not shown in our table because it never occurs alone; ज् *jñā* is usually pronounced 'gy'.

When pronouncing doubled consonants, just 'hold' the sound momentarily, as in distinguishing 'night train' from 'night rain'. Practise with कुत्ता *kuttā* 'dog', बिल्ली *billi* 'cat', बच्चा *baccā* 'child'.

Nasals

A nasalized vowel is produced by diverting part of the breath through the nose: speak while pinching your nose to hear what it sounds like! Nasalization is marked with a sign called *candrabindu*, 'moon-dot':

हाँ	<i>hā̄</i>	yes
कहाँ	<i>kahā̄</i>	where?
यहाँ	<i>yahā̄</i>	here

If there's a vowel sign above the top line, there won't be room for the moon (*candra*), so the dot (*bindu*) is used alone:

नहीं	<i>nahī̄</i>	no
कहीं	<i>kahī̄</i>	somewhere
यहीं	<i>yahī̄</i>	right here

Nasalizing a vowel can change the meaning, as with है *hai* 'is' and हैं *hai* 'are'. Similarly, while यहीं *yahī* means 'right here', यही *yahi* means 'this one, this very one' — a completely different word!

Our little dot has a second function also (here with a new name — 'anusvār'); it can be used to indicate an 'n' or 'm' when such a letter is the first element of a conjunct:

अंडा	=	अण्डा	<i>anḍā</i>	egg
हिंदी	=	हिन्दी	<i>hindī</i>	Hindi
लंबा	=	लम्बा	<i>lambā</i>	long, tall

Other signs

The word दुःख *duḥkh* ‘sorrow’ includes the colon-like sign called ‘visarga’; this rare sign indicates a lightly pronounced ‘h’ sound.

In situations where it’s not possible or convenient to write or print a conjunct, an inherent vowel can be cancelled by hanging a little line called ‘virām’ below it: चड्डी *caddī* ‘underpants’.

The ‘full stop’ is a standing line, as seen from Unit 1 onwards. Most other punctuation follows English usage.

Here are the numerals from 0 to 9:

० १ २ ३ ४ ५ ६ ७ ८ ९

Loanwords from English

When writing non-Indian words, transcribe the sounds, *not* the spelling; thus ‘cycle’ (bicycle) is written साइकिल *sāikil*. English ‘t’ and ‘d’ usually become retroflex: ‘doctor’ is डाक्टर *dāktar*.

Sometimes a little ‘moon’ sign is used to designate the Hindi pronunciation of an English ‘o’ like the first vowel in ‘chocolate’ — चॉकलेट. It doesn’t have a standard transliteration in the roman script, and the sound isn’t really affected: most people say चाकलेट *cāklet*, with the standard long ‘ā’ vowel.

Silent ‘inherent vowels’

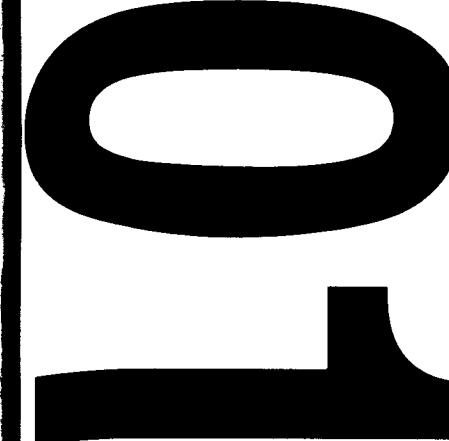
The inherent vowel ‘a’ is silent at the end of a word in Hindi — though not in Sanskrit, Hindi’s classical ancestor. Thus the name राम is pronounced ‘Rām’ in Hindi, ‘Rāma’ in Sanskrit.

At the end of a word whose last syllable is a conjunct character, the inherent vowel is pronounced lightly in order to make the conjunct easier to say: अवश्य *avaśya* ‘certainly’, जन्म *janma* ‘birth’.

Sometimes an inherent vowel is silent in the middle of a word, even though the spelling involves no conjunct. Here is a general (if imperfect) pair of rules:

In a word of three or more syllables that ends with a vowel other than the inherent vowel, the penultimate inherent vowel is not pronounced. Thus समझ *samajh*, but समझा *samjhā* (because it ends in long ā); रहन *rahan*, but रहना *rahnā* (likewise).

In a word that has three syllables in which the third is a long vowel and the second is the inherent vowel, the inherent vowel is not pronounced. Thus सोमवार *somvār* ‘Monday’, लिखता *likhtā* ‘write, writing’.



greetings
namaste
नमस्ते

In this unit you will learn

- how to say who you are, greet people and say goodbye
- how to ask questions about things and people

Language points

- the verb ‘to be’
- basic sentence construction
- question formation

1 Saying hello

The universal greeting in Hindi is the word नमस्ते *namaste*, which means both ‘hello, good morning’ etc. and also ‘goodbye’. It comes from India’s classical language of Sanskrit, where it means ‘Salutation to you’. Though this literal meaning is now remote (like the ‘God be with you’ that underlies the English ‘goodbye’), it is part of the elaborate code of respect that runs through the Hindi language.

To communicate well in Hindi, good clear pronunciation is as important as grammar, and the word नमस्ते *namaste* gives an ideal chance to practise right from the start. Your tongue should touch your upper teeth as you say the n and the t; and in the last syllable, aim for the é of French ‘étér’ — the vowel is not the rounded ‘ay’ sound heard in English ‘stay’.

In formal contexts the word नमस्ते *namaste* is accompanied by a gesture in which the palms are put together (though many people are more likely to offer a handshake these days). It’s considered polite to say नमस्ते *namaste* to an older or senior person first, before he or she says it to you. Sometimes you will hear नमस्कार *namaskār* (in which the ‘s’ may be pronounced ‘sh’); this means the same thing.

नमस्ते *namaste* — you’re speaking Hindi already!



2 Who and how people are

Here we meet Raju and Geeta, a married couple from Agra; later we’ll meet their children Manoj (boy, 16), Meena (girl, 10), and Ram (boy, 8), and their dog Moti (male, age unknown).

‘I am’ is मैं हूँ *mai hū*, and ‘I am not’ is मैं नहीं हूँ *mai nahī hū*. Notice how the verb हूँ *hū* ‘am’ comes at the end of the sentence.

मैं राजू हूँ।

mai Rājū hū. I am Raju.

मैं ठीक हूँ।

mai thik hū. I am OK.

मैं बीमार नहीं हूँ।

mai bīmār nahī hū. I am not ill.

मैं गीता हूँ।

mai Gitā hū. I am Geeta.

मैं हिन्दुस्तानी हूँ।

mai hindustānī hū. I am Indian.

मैं अंग्रेज नहीं हूँ।

mai āngrez nahī hū. I am not English.

My and mine

The word मेरा *merā* means both ‘my’ and ‘mine’; है *hai* means ‘is’.

मेरा नाम राजू है।

merā nām Rājū hai. My name is Raju.

मैं अध्यापक हूँ।

mai adhyāpak hū. I’m a teacher.

गीता डाक्टर है।

Gitā dākṭar hai. Geeta is a doctor.

सीता नर्स है।

Sītā nars hai. Sita is a nurse.

Yes/no questions

A statement is turned into a question by simply adding the question-word क्या *kyā* at the beginning of the sentence; क्या *kyā* isn’t translatable here: it just turns what follows into a question. There’s no change in the word order: just add क्या *kyā* to make a question.

क्या मैं अध्यापक हूँ?

kyā mai adhyāpak hū? Am I a teacher?

क्या गीता डाक्टर है?

kyā Gitā dākṭar hai? Is Geeta a doctor?

क्या सीता नर्स है?

kyā Sītā nars hai? Is Sita a nurse?

Because these questions can all be answered either जी हाँ *jī hā* ‘yes’ or जी नहीं *jī nahī* ‘no’, we’ll call them ‘yes/no’ questions. Here are two more, with their answers:

क्या राजू ठीक है?

kyā Rājū thik hai? Is Raju OK?

जी हौं, राजू ठीक है।

ji hā, Rājū thīk hai. Yes, Raju is OK.

क्या गीता बीमार है?

kyā Gitā bimār hai? Is Geeta ill?

जी नहीं, गीता बीमार नहीं है।

ji nahī, Gitā bimār nahī hai. No, Geeta isn't ill.

► You

In order to begin real conversations, we need to add the word आप *āp* 'you' and the verb हैं *hai* 'are' — आप हैं *āp hai* 'you are'. Notice the difference between है *hai* 'is' and हैं *hai* 'are': the second is nasalized (a nasal sound is produced when some of the breath comes through the nose rather than through the mouth).

Now we're really talking:

क्या आप गीता हैं?

kyā āp Gitā hāi? Are you Geeta?

जी हौं, मैं गीता हूँ।

ji hā, mai Gitā hū. Yes, I am Geeta.

क्या आप डाक्टर हैं?

kyā āp dāktar hāi? Are you a doctor?

जी हौं, मैं डाक्टर हूँ।

ji hā, mai dāktar hū. Yes, I'm a doctor.

क्या मैं बीमार हूँ?

kyā mai bimār hū? Am I ill?

जी नहीं, आप बीमार नहीं हैं।

ji nahī, āp bimār nahī hai. No, you're not ill.

क्या मैं ठीक हूँ?

kyā mai thīk hū? Am I all right?

जी हौं, आप बिलकुल ठीक हैं!

ji hā, āp bilkul thīk hai! Yes, you're quite all right!

Did you know?

In the tally of world languages, only English, Chinese and Spanish have more speakers than Hindi.

► Practise what you've learnt

Practise these questions by speaking them out loud (and answering them) until you're completely at home with the format. Stay with this pattern until new words and phrases have been introduced.

क्या आप अंग्रेज हैं?

kyā āp āgrez hāi? Are you English?

क्या आप डाक्टर हैं?

kyā āp dāktar hāi? Are you a doctor?

क्या आप अध्यापक हैं?

kyā āp adhyāpak hāi? Are you a teacher?

क्या आप विद्यार्थी हैं?

kyā āp vidyārthī hāi? Are you a student?

क्या आप ठीक हैं?

kyā āp thīk hāi? Are you OK?

क्या आप बीमार हैं?

kyā āp bimār hāi? Are you ill?

क्या आप खुश हैं?

kyā āp khus hāi? Are you happy?

क्या आप नाराज हैं?

kyā āp nārāz hāi? Are you angry?

You may have noticed that Hindi doesn't have a word for 'a' (though sometimes the word एक *ek* — the number 'one' — serves this purpose). There isn't a word for 'the' either.

► 3 This and that; he, she, and it

So far we've seen the pronouns मैं *mai* 'I', and आप *āp* 'you'. Now we move on to the two words that mean, 'this, that, he, she, it'.

यह *yah* (often pronounced 'ye') means 'this', and वह *vah* (often pronounced 'vo') means 'that'.

यह लड़का राम है।

yah larkā Rām hai. This boy is Ram.

यह लड़की मीना है।

yah larkī Minā hai. This girl is Meena.

वह लड़का नाराज़ है, लेकिन ...
vah lārkā nārāz hai, lekin... That boy is angry, but...

वह लड़की खुश है ।
vah lārkī khuś hai. that girl is happy.

यह *yah* and वह *vah* also mean ‘he, she, it’. If the person referred to is near at hand (‘this person here’), use यह *yah*; otherwise, use वह *vah*. Only use यह *yah* when indicating quite specifically ‘this person/thing here’: when referring to ‘he, she, it’ generally, वह *vah* is better.

राम ठीक नहीं है । वह बीमार है ।

Rām thik nahī̄ hai. vah bīmār hai. Ram isn’t well. He’s ill.



यह मोती है । *yah Moti hai.*

यह कुत्ता है । *yah kuttā hai.*

यह खुश है । *yah khuś hai.*

यह मेरा है । *yah merā hai.*

There’s no ‘he/she’ gender distinction in the Hindi pronoun. Later on you’ll see that gender is distinguished by some verb endings.

In the plural, यह *yah* becomes ये *ye* (‘these, they’), and वह *vah* becomes वे *ve* (‘those, they’). And remember है *hai* ‘is’ and हैं *hai* ‘are’.

यह आदमी अँग्रेज़ है ।

yah ādmī āgrez hai. This man’s English.

ये लोग अँग्रेज़ हैं ।

ye log āgrez hai. These people are English.

वह आदमी अँग्रेज़ है ।

vah ādmī āgrez hai. That man’s English.

वे लोग अँग्रेज़ हैं ।

ve log āgrez hai. Those people are English.

► 4 More questions

We saw just now that क्या *kyā* turns a statement into a question, without changing the word order: आप ठीक हैं *āp thik hai* ‘You are OK’ becomes क्या आप ठीक हैं? *kyā āp thik hai?* ‘Are you OK?’.

But in a second meaning, क्या *kyā* has the sense ‘what?’ Similarly कौन *kaun* means ‘who?’

क्या

kyā what?

यह क्या है ?

yah kyā hai? What is this?

वह क्या है ?

vah kyā hai? What is that?

कौन

kaun who?

यह कौन है ?

yah kaun hai? Who is this?

वह कौन है ?

vah kaun hai? Who is that?

Notice how a reply copies the word-order of the question, the answer-word simply replacing the question-word. In the following pair of sentences, कौन *kaun* ‘who?’ is replaced by the answer मेरा दोस्त *merā dost* ‘my friend’.

वह कौन है ?

vah kaun hai? Who is he?

वह मेरा दोस्त है ।

vah merā dost hai. He is my friend.

Our conversation possibilities are growing rapidly:

आप कौन हैं ?

āp kaun hāi? Who are you?

मैं राजू हूँ ।

mai Rājū hū. I am Raju.

यह कौन है ?

yah kaun hai? Who is this?

यह मीना है ।

yah Mīnā hai. This is Meena.

वह क्या है ?
yah kyā hai?

What is that?
yah kyā hai?

वह सितार है ।
yah sitār hai.

That is a sitar.
yah sitār hai.

वह कौन है ?
yah kaun hai?

Who is that?
yah kaun hai?

वह मनोज है ।
yah Manoj hai.

That is Manoj.
yah Manoj hai.

मनोज कौन है ?
Manoj kaun hai?

Who is Manoj?
Manoj kaun hai?

मनोज मेरा भाई है ।
Manoj merā bhāī hai.

Manoj is my brother.
Manoj merā bhāī hai.

► What's this?

Here's a chance for you to practise a very useful question-and-answer pattern — 'What's this?' 'It's a...'



यह क्या है ? yah kyā hai?
यह किताब है । yah kitāb hai.



यह क्या है ? yah kyā hai?
यह क़लम है । yah qalam hai.



यह क्या है ? yah kyā hai?
यह रेडियो है । yah rediyo hai.



यह क्या है ? yah kyā hai?
यह कुरसी है । yah kursī hai.



यह क्या है ? yah kyā hai?
यह मेज़ है । yah mez hai.



यह क्या है ? yah kyā hai?
यह मकान है । yah makān hai.



यह क्या है ? yah kyā hai?
यह कुत्ता है । yah kuttā hai.



यह क्या है ? yah kyā hai?
यह बिल्ली है । yah billi hai.

Remember that when क्या kyā comes at the beginning of the sentence, it turns a following statement into a question. When you've answered the following questions, make up more questions and answers of your own, using any everyday words from the glossary. (NB: you'll find answers to all numbered questions either after the questions or at the back of the book.)

1 क्या मोती बिल्ली है ?

kyā Moti billi hai?

2 क्या गीता डाक्टर है ?

kyā Gītā dāktar hai?

3 क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?

kyā āp dāktar hai?

4 क्या राजू और गीता हिन्दुस्तानी हैं ?

kyā Rājū aur Gītā hindustānī hai?

5 क्या हिंदी आसान है ?

kyā hindī āsān hai?

Raju meets his new neighbour, Javed

You'll see a new pronoun here: उसका uskā 'his, her/hers, its'.

राजू	नमस्ते । मैं राजू हूँ । आप कौन हैं ?
जावेद	नमस्ते । मेरा नाम जावेद है ।
राजू	क्या आप ठीक हैं ?
जावेद	जी हाँ, शुक्रिया, मैं ठीक हूँ ।
राजू	वह लड़की कौन है ?
जावेद	उसका नाम बानो है ।
राजू	आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ?
जावेद	मेरा पूरा नाम जावेद खाँ है ।

Rājū namaste. māi Rājū hū. āp kaun hai?

Jāved namaste. merā nām Jāved hai.

Rājū kyā āp thik hai?

Jāved jī hā, śukriyā, māi thik hū.

Rājū vah laṛkī kaun hai?

Jāved uskā nām Bāno hai.

Rājū āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?

Jāved merā pūrā nām Jāved Khā hai.

Raju Hello. I am Raju. Who are you?

Javed Hello. My name is Javed.

Raju Are you OK?

Javed Yes, thank you, I am OK.

Raju Who is that girl?

Javed Her name is Bano.

Raju What is your full name?

Javed My full name is Javed Khan.

Exercise 1a Translate:

Javed What is this?

Manoj This is my radio.

Javed Who is that boy?

Manoj He is my brother.

Javed What's his name?

Manoj His name is Ram.

Javed Who is that girl?

Manoj Her name is Meena.

Javed Is she ill?

Manoj No, she isn't ill. She's OK.

Exercise 1b Answer the questions about the people described below. (New words: शादी-शुदा sādī-śudā 'married', दोनों donō 'both'.)



सुरेश खन्ना	उमा देवी	विनोद कुमार
Suresh Khanna	Uma Devi	Vinod Kumar
student	teacher	doctor
Indian	Indian	American
not married	not married	married
not happy	happy	happy

- १ क्या सुरेश शादी-शुदा है ? kyā Sureś sādī-śudā hai?
- २ क्या वह हिन्दुस्तानी है ? kyā vah hindustānī hai?
- ३ क्या वह अध्यापक है ? kyā vah adhyāpak hai?
- ४ उसका पूरा नाम क्या है ? uskā pūrā nām kyā hai?
- ५ क्या उमा हिन्दुस्तानी है ? kyā Umā hindustānī hai?
- ६ क्या वह डाक्टर है ? kyā vah dāktar hai?
- ७ क्या वह शादी-शुदा है ? kyā vah sādī-śudā hai?
- ८ क्या वह सुखी है ? kyā vah sukhi hai?
- ९ क्या विनोद अंग्रेज है ? kyā Vinod āgrez hai?

- १० क्या वह अध्यापक है ? *kyā vah adhyāpak hai?*
- ११ उसका पूरा नाम क्या है ? *uskā pūrā nām kyā hai?*
- १२ क्या वह शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā vah sādi-śudā hai?*
- १३ क्या विनोद और सुरेश दोनों हिन्दुस्तानी हैं ?
kyā Vinod aur Sureś donō hindustānī hai?
- १४ क्या उमा और विनोद दोनों शादी-शुदा हैं ?
kyā Umā aur Vinod donō sādi-śudā hai?
- १५ क्या सुरेश और उमा दोनों अध्यापक हैं ?
kyā Sureś aur Umā donō adhyāpak hai?

Glossary

The words in this glossary are on the recording at the end of the Introduction (track 1).

अँग्रेज़ *āgrēz* m., f. English person

अध्यापक *adhyāpak* m. teacher

अमरीकन *amrikan* American

आदमी *ādmī* m. man

आप *āp* you

आपका *āpkā* your, yours

आसान *āsān* easy

इसका *iskā* his, her/hers, its

उसका *uskā* his, her/hers, its

एक *ek* a; one

और *aur* and

औरत *aurat* f. woman

फ़लम *qalam* m./f. pen

किताब *kitāb* f. book

कुत्ता *kuttā* m. dog

कुरसी *kursī* f. chair

कौन *kaun* who?

क्या *kyā* what?; and question-marker

खुश *khus* pleased, happy

जी नहीं *jī nahī* no

जी हाँ *jī hā* yes

ठीक *thik* OK, all right

डाक्टर *dāktar* m. doctor

दोनों *donō* both

दोस्त *dost* m., f. friend

नमस्कार *namaskār* hello,
goodbye

नमस्ते *namaste* hello, goodbye

नर्स *nars* m., f. nurse

नहीं *nahī* not, no

नाम *nām* m. name

नाराज़ *nārāz* angry, displeased

पूरा *pūrā* full, complete

बिलकुल *bilkul* quite, completely

बिल्ली *billi* f. cat

बीमार *bīmār* ill, sick

बेटा *betā* m. son

भाई *bhāī* m. brother

मकान *makān* m. house

मेज़ *mez* f. table

मेरा *merā* my, mine

मैं *mai* I

यह *yah* he, she, it, this

ये *ye* they, these

रेडियो *rediyō* m. radio

लड़का *lārkā* m. boy

लड़की *larki* f. girl

लेकिन *lekin* but

लोग *log* m. pl. people

वह *vah* he, she, it, that

विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m. student

वे *ve* they, those

शादी-शुदा *sādi-śudā* married

शुक्रिया *śukriyā* thank you

सुखी *sukhī* happy

सितार *sitār* m. sitar

हाँ *hā* yes

हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi

हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustānī* Indian

हूँ *hū* am

हैं *hai* are

है *hai* is

2

hamārā परिवार

our family

In this unit you will learn

- about masculines and feminines
- about formal and informal ways of speaking to people

Language points

- agreement of number and gender
- cardinal and ordinal numbers

1 Gender matters

We saw earlier that लड़का *larkā* means ‘boy’ and लड़की *larkī* means ‘girl’. This contrast between -ा in the masculine and -ी in the feminine appears in many nouns, adjectives, etc. — in fact it’s a characteristic feature of Hindi. See how both adjective and noun change in the following:

मनोज बड़ा लड़का है।

Manoj barā larkā hai. Manoj is a big boy.

मीना बड़ी लड़की है।

Minā barī larkī hai. Meena is a big girl.

Masculine बड़ा *barā* becomes feminine बड़ी *barī*. Watch again:

मनोज लंबा और पतला है।

Manoj lambā aur patlā hai. Manoj is tall and thin.

मीना लंबी और पतली है।

Minā lambī aur patli hai. Meena is tall and thin.

राम छोटा है।

Rām choṭā hai. Ram is little.

क्या राम अच्छा लड़का है?

kyā Rām acchā larkā hai? Is Ram a good boy?

मोती मोटा नहीं है।

Motī motā nahī hai. Moti isn’t fat.

क्या मनोज पतला है?

kyā Manoj patlā hai? Is Manoj thin?

क्या मीना लंबी है?

kyā Minā lambī hai? Is Meena tall?

Similarly, मेरा *merā* ‘my, mine’ becomes मेरी *merī* when describing a feminine noun:

यह लड़का मेरा छोटा भाई है।

yah larkā merā choṭā bhāī hai. This boy is my little brother.

यह लड़की मेरी छोटी बहिन है।

yah larkī merī choṭī bahin hai. This girl is my little sister.

मेरा बेटा ठीक है लेकिन मेरी बेटी बीमार है।

merā betā thik hai lekin meri betī bimār hai. My son is well but my daughter is sick.

The speaker of the three sentences above could be either male or female: the gender of मेरा/मेरी *merā/merī* depends on the thing or person possessed, *not* the possessor. It behaves just like any other adjective. Similarly आपका *āpkā* becomes आपकी *āpkī* in the feminine:

आपका बेटा काफ़ी लंबा है।

āpkā betā kāfī lambā hai. Your son is quite tall.

आपकी बेटी बहुत सुंदर है।

āpkī betī bahut sundar hai. Your daughter is very beautiful.

Practise what you've learnt

Think of a neighbour and answer these questions about him or her:

A male neighbour	A female neighbour
क्या आपका पड़ोसी लंबा है ? <i>kyā āpkā parosī lambā hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन लंबी है ? <i>kyā āpkī parosin lambī hai?</i>
क्या आपका पड़ोसी पतला है ? <i>kyā āpkā parosī patlā hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन पतली है ? <i>kyā āpkī parosin patlī hai?</i>
क्या आपका पड़ोसी अँग्रेज़ है ? <i>kyā āpkā parosī āgrez̄ hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन अँग्रेज़ है ? <i>kyā āpkī parosin āgrez̄ hai?</i>
क्या वह नाराज़ है ? <i>kyā vah nārāz̄ hai?</i>	क्या वह नाराज़ है ? <i>kyā vah nārāz̄ hai?</i>
क्या वह बीमार है ? <i>kyā vah bimār hai?</i>	क्या वह बीमार है ? <i>kyā vah bimār hai?</i>
क्या वह सुंदर है ? <i>kyā vah sundar hai?</i>	क्या वह सुंदर है ? <i>kyā vah sundar hai?</i>

All nouns have a gender

You must learn the gender of every new noun you meet — it's not only animate beings that have gender. The words आशा *āśā* 'hope', अलमारी *almārī* 'cupboard' and तस्वीर *tasvir* 'picture' are all feminine, while कमरा *kamrā* 'room', मकान *makān* 'house' and आदमी *ādmī* 'man' are all masculine. Try learning nouns with an appropriate adjective:

बड़ा कमरा, बड़ा आदमी

baṛā kamrā, baṛā ādmī big room, big man

बड़ी तस्वीर, बड़ी किताब

baṛī tasvir, baṛī kitāb big picture, big book

बड़ा कुत्ता, छोटी बिल्ली

baṛā kuttā, choṭī billī big dog, small cat

Some adjectives never change

Only those adjectives that end *-ā* in the masculine change to *-ī* in the feminine. Other adjectives never change, and so are called 'invariable'; ठीक *thik* 'OK' is a good example.

यह किताब ठीक है।

yah kitāb thik hai. This book is OK.

यह कमरा ठीक है।

yah kamrā thik hai. This room is OK.

मनोज ठीक है।

Manoj thik hai. Manoj is OK.

A few adjectives ending in *-ā* are invariable despite this ending. Examples are ज़िन्दा *zindā* 'alive' and शादी-शुदा *sādī-sudā* 'married'. A few adjectives ending in *-ī*, such as खाली *khālī* 'vacant, empty, free', are also invariable.

क्या बिल्ली ज़िन्दा है ?

kyā billī zindā hai? Is the cat alive?

गीता शादी-शुदा है।

Gītā sādī-sudā hai. Geeta is married.

यह कमरा खाली है।

yah kamrā khālī hai. This room is free.

Did you know?

Though India's linguistic diversity has made it difficult for Hindi (or any other language) to gain the status of a true 'national language', Hindi is spoken by some 350 million people in the subcontinent — the 1991 census gives the figure of 337,272,114 (source: www.censusindia.net).

Role play

In this role play, your name is Geeta Sharma and you are married to Raju Sharma; you have a brother, Rakesh, and a sister, Sita — she's unwell, but everyone else is OK. Answer these questions:

- १ क्या आप गीता हैं ? *kyā āp Gitā hai?*
- २ आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ? *āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?*
- ३ क्या आप शादी-शुदा हैं ? *kyā āp sādī-śudā hai?*
- ४ राकेश कौन है ? *Rākesh kaun hai?*
- ५ सीता कौन है ? *Sītā kaun hai?*
- ६ क्या आपकी बहिन ठीक है ? *kyā āpkī bahin thik hai?*
- ७ क्या आपका भाई बीमार है ? *kyā āpkā bhāī bimār hai?*
- ८ क्या आप बीमार हैं ? *kyā āp bimār hai?*

2 Number

English usually makes nouns singular plural by adding an 's', as in 'one book, two books'. In Hindi it's a bit more complicated, because masculine and feminine nouns behave differently. We'll look at masculine nouns first.

Two types of masculine noun

Most masculine nouns ending *-ā* in the singular change to *-e* in the plural. The same happens with most adjectives ending *-ā*.

बड़ा कमरा	बड़े कमरे
<i>barā kamrā</i> big room	<i>baṛē kamre</i> big rooms

Other masculine nouns don't change at all in the plural — they behave like the English word 'sheep'. In the following, though the noun आदमी *ādmī* doesn't change, its status as singular or plural is revealed by the adjective changing from singular *-ā* to plural *-e*:

बड़ा आदमी	बड़े आदमी
<i>barā ādmī</i> big man	<i>baṛē ādmī</i> big men

You'll sometimes find that neither the adjective *nor* the noun is of the changing type. As with the numerically ambiguous English phrase 'fat sheep', you can only tell the number from the context:

आसान काम

āsān kām easy work / easy jobs

साफ़ मकान

sāf makān clean house / clean houses

A handful of nouns ending in *-ā* belong to this 'non-changing' group: पिता *pitā* 'father', चाचा *cācā* 'uncle', राजा *rājā* 'king', नेता *netā* 'leader, politician.

मेरे पिता और चाचा दोनों नेता हैं ।

mere pitā aur cācā donō netā hai. My father and uncle are both politicians.

Two types of feminine noun

Feminine nouns ending *-ī* (like लड़की *laṛkī* 'girl') or *-i* (शक्ति *śakti* 'power') change this ending to *-iyā* in the plural, but feminine adjectives stay the same in the plural:

छोटी लड़की	छोटी लड़कियाँ
<i>choṭī laṛkī</i> little girl	<i>choṭī laṛkiyā</i> little girls

Other feminine nouns are made plural by adding *-e*.

एक मेज़	दो मेज़े
<i>ek mez</i> one table	<i>do mezē</i> two tables
एक औरत	तीन औरतें
<i>ek aurat</i> one woman	<i>tīn auratē</i> three women
एक मोटी महिला	चार मोटी महिलाएँ
<i>ek moṭī mahilā</i> one fat lady	<i>cār moṭī mahilāē</i> four fat ladies
मेरी बड़ी बहिन	मेरी बड़ी बहिनें
<i>merī baṛī bahin</i> my big sister	<i>merī baṛī bahinē</i> my big sisters

An adjective that refers to mixed genders is masculine, as in लंबे *lambe* below:

मनोज और मीना दोनों लंबे हैं ।

Manoj aur Mīnā donō lambe hai. Manoj and Meena are both tall. (Manoj is male, Meena female: the adjective लंबे *lambe* is masculine plural.)

Fill the gap!

Fill the gap with the appropriate word(s). Answers below.

- १ ये औरतें बहुत हैं।
ye auratē bahut hai. These women are very tall.
- २ बहुत मोटे हैं।
..... bahut moṭe hai. Those boys are very fat.
- ३ आपका दोस्त।
āpkā dost Your friend is very thin.
- ४ सीता है ?
Sītā hai? Who is Sita?
- ५ मोती ठीक है ?
..... Moti thik hai? Is Moti OK?

Answers: 1 लंबी *lambī*; 2 वे लड़के *ve larke*; 3 बहुत पतला है *bahut patlā hai*; 4 कौन *kaun*; 5 क्या *kyā*.

Practising some plurals

Making nouns plural is an essential skill: practise singular/plural contrasts out loud, pronouncing every word as clearly as you can, and you'll feel the music of the language as you learn it.

एक आदमी	दो आदमी
<i>ek ādmī</i> one man	<i>do ādmī</i> two men
एक लड़का	दो लड़के
<i>ek larķā</i> one boy	<i>do larke</i> two boys
एक लड़की	दो लड़कियाँ
<i>ek larķī</i> one girl	<i>do larķiyā̄</i> two girls
एक मेज़	दो मेज़ें
<i>ek mezē</i> one table	<i>do mezē</i> two tables

Do this with a variety of different nouns and you'll soon get the hang of it — a certain amount of parrot-like repetition is essential when learning a new language! Throw in an adjective too —

एक बड़ा आदमी
ek baṛā ādmī
one big man

दस बड़े आदमी
das baṛē ādmī
ten big men etc.

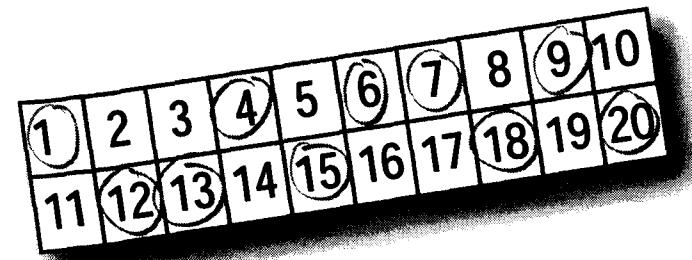
Some numbers

Talking of numbers — you should learn to count! Learn the numbers from 1 to 20 in groups of five as they're set out below. (You'll find a full list of numbers in Unit 12.6.) Hindi uses both the Arabic set of numerals (1 2 3 etc.) and the Devanagari set (१ २ ३ etc.).

१	1	एक <i>ek</i>	११	11	ग्यारह <i>gyārah</i>
२	2	दो <i>do</i>	१२	12	बारह <i>bārah</i>
३	3	तीन <i>tīn</i>	१३	13	तेरह <i>terah</i>
४	4	चार <i>cār</i>	१४	14	चौदह <i>caudah</i>
५	5	पाँच <i>pāč</i>	१५	15	पंद्रह <i>pandrah</i>
६	6	छह <i>chah</i>	१६	16	सोलह <i>solah</i>
७	7	सात <i>sāt</i>	१७	17	सत्रह <i>saträh</i>
८	8	आठ <i>āṭh</i>	१८	18	अठारह <i>aṭhārah</i>
९	9	नौ <i>nau</i>	१९	19	उन्नीस <i>unnīs</i>
१०	10	दस <i>das</i>	२०	20	बीस <i>bīs</i>

Bingo

If you have people you can practise with, have a game of bingo: everyone selects ten numbers of their choice (between 1 and 20) as shown below, then the caller calls out random numbers in Hindi between 1 and 20 until the winner declares a victory. No cheating!



► Ordinal numbers: first, second, third

Ordinal numbers are made by adding *-vā* to the cardinal number, as in पाँचवाँ *pācvā* fifth; but 'first', 'second', 'third', 'fourth', 'sixth' and 'ninth' are irregular:

पहला *pahlā* first

छठा *chaṭhā* sixth

दूसरा *dūsrā* second, other

सातवाँ *sātvā* seventh

तीसरा *tisrā* third

आठवाँ *āṭhvā* eighth

चौथा *cauthā* fourth

नवाँ *navā* ninth

पाँचवाँ *pācvā* fifth

दसवाँ *dasvā* tenth

The ordinal numbers agree as adjectives: दसवाँ कमरा *dasvā kamrā* 'tenth room', दसवाँ तस्वीर *dasvī tasvīr* 'tenth picture'.

► Ordinal numbers quiz

Answer the questions about these five fine fellows:

गणेश Ganesh



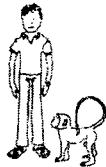
सुरेश Suresh



महेश Mahesh



दिनेश Dinesh



राजेश Rajesh



१ क्या पहला लड़का मोटा है ? *kyā pahlā larkā motā hai?*

२ पहला लड़का कौन है ? *pahlā larkā kaun hai?*

३ क्या तीसरा लड़का खुश है ? *kyā tisrā larkā khuś hai?*

४ पाँचवाँ लड़का कौन है ? *pācvā larkā kaun hai?*

- ५ क्या चौथा लड़का पतला है ? *kyā cauthā larkā patlā hai?*
- ६ चौथा लड़का कौन है ? *cauthā larkā kaun hai?*
- ७ क्या दूसरा लड़का महेश है ? *kyā dūsrā larkā Maheś hai?*

3 Getting familiar

We've already seen that आप *āp* means 'you' and आप हैं *āp hai* means 'you are'. But in an informal context (talking to a friend, or with someone perceived by the speaker to be in some way close or socially 'junior') the pronoun तुम *tum* 'you' is used instead. तुम *tum* has its own verb form: तुम हो *tum ho* 'you are'.

तुम कौन हो ?

tum kaun ho? Who are you?

क्या तुम राम हो ?

kyā tum Rām ho? Are you Ram?

When addressing someone as तुम *tum*, the word for 'your' is तुम्हारा *tumhārā*. Remember that such words must agree with the person or thing 'possessed'.

तुम्हारा भाई

tumhārā bhāī your brother

तुम्हारी बहिन

tumhārī bahin your sister

The important point here is that तुम *tum* is much more familiar and informal than आप *āp*. Used in the wrong context, तुम *tum* and तुम्हारा *tumhārā* could sound presumptuous or offensive, so you have to tread carefully here.

Even greater familiarity is shown by yet another pronoun, तू *tū* 'you', whose verb is है *hai* (the same as for यह *yah* and वह *vah*): तू है *tū hai* 'you are'. This is very intimate and is restricted to the closest of relationships, such as with partners, small children — and God!

राजू, तू मेरी जान है !

Rājū, tū merī jān hai! Raju, you are my darling!

गीता, तू मेरी जान है !

Gitā, tū merī jān hai! Geeta, you are my darling!

We won't be seeing much of तू *tū* in this book. Its intimacy restricts its usage; and if you know a Hindi-speaker well enough to use it, he or she will happily teach you all you need to know! Used in the wrong context, it can be insultingly blunt. All its verb forms (except the commands — see 4.1) are the same as for यह *yah* and वह *vah*.

Here then is the full range of 'you' words, with their verbs:

आप हैं
āp hai

you are (formal and polite)

तुम हो
tum ho

you are (familiar and casual)

तू है
tū hai

you are (intimate or blunt)

Grammatically, तू *tū* is singular, and both आप *āp* and तुम *tum* are plural — whether addressing one person or more than one.

Did you know?

English used to have a similar singular/plural distinction, but the singular pronouns 'thou (thou art), thee, thy, thine' have been dropped — which is why even a single person is now addressed by the plural 'you are', rather than 'you is'.

How are you?

This is a good moment to introduce another new word, the very important कैसा *kaisā*, 'how?', as in 'how are you?'. (Later we'll see that it can also mean 'what kind of?')

राजू, आप कैसे हैं ?
Rājū, āp kaise hai?

Raju, how are you?

गीता, आप कैसी हैं ?
Gitā, āp kaisī hai?

Geeta, how are you?

आपका भाई कैसा है ?
āpkā bhāī kaisā hai?

How is your brother?

आपकी बहिन कैसी है ?
āpkī bahin kaisī hai?

How is your sister?

आपके माता-पिता कैसे हैं ?
āpke mātā-pitā kaise hai?

How are your parents?

राम, तुम कैसे हो ?
Rām, tum kaise ho?

Ram, how are you?

मीना, तुम कैसी हो ?
Mīnā, tum kaisī ho?

Meena, how are you?

4 Getting formal

As we have seen in the आप–तुम–तू *āp–tum–tū* distinction, Hindi has a hierarchy of formality: calling someone आप *āp* shows respect, and sets them 'above' people referred to as तुम *tum*, who in turn have higher status than those addressed as तू *tū*.

You may be familiar with similar systems in languages like French, with its distinction between 'vous' and 'tu' in the second person ('you'). But in Hindi, the system extends to the third person: 'he/she' can be expressed with the plural pronouns ये *ye* and वे *ve* instead of यह *yah* and वह *vah*. In effect, it's like referring to an individual person as 'they' rather than as 'he' or 'she'. The bad news is that verbs and adjectives must be plural to match!

As there's no difference between this 'honorific' plural and a numerical plural, some statements could be ambiguous:

वे अच्छे आदमी हैं !
ve acche ādmī hai!

He is a good man. / They are good men.

मेरे भाई लंबे हैं !
mere bhāī lambē hai!

My brother is tall. / My brothers are tall.

But this ambiguity only occurs in the masculine. In the feminine, only *numerically* plural nouns show plural forms. Compare the following:

ये लंबी महिला कौन है ?
ye lambī mahilā kaun hai?

Who is this tall lady?

(Here the pronoun ये *ye* and verb है *hai* are honorific plural, but the noun महिला *mahilā* stays singular.)

ये लंबी महिलाएँ कौन हैं ?
ye lambī mahilāe kaun haī?

Who are these tall ladies?

(Here ये *ye*, महिलाएँ *mahilāe* and हैं *haī* are all plural.)

Raju ji, Geeta ji

Respect can also be shown by adding जी *jī* to a name — written as one word or two (गीताजी *Gitājī*, or गीता जी *Gitā ji*). It's used with first names of both genders, or with surnames for males; also with titles and relationship terms (e.g. पिता जी *pitā ji* 'father'). It's sometimes a bit like 'Mr' or 'Mrs', but manages to combine respect and warmth more successfully than these rather stuffy English equivalents.

ये सीता जी हैं।

ye Sītā jī hāi. This is Sita ji.

शर्मा जी अच्छे अध्यापक हैं।

Śarmā jī acche adhyāpak hāi. Sharma ji is a good teacher.

Used alone, जी *jī* can be used as a polite way of addressing someone: नमस्ते जी ! *namaste jī!* English has no single equivalent.

We and our

Finally: 'we' and 'us' is हम *ham*, and 'our, ours' is हमारा *hamārā*.

हम आपके पड़ोसी हैं।

ham āpke parosī hāi. We're your neighbours.

मोती हमारा कुत्ता है।

Motī hamārā kuttā hāi. Moti is our dog.

मोती हमारा है।

Motī hamārā hāi. Moti is ours.

Javed asks Raju about his family

जावेद राजू जी, मनोज कौन है ?

राजू मनोज हमारा बड़ा बेटा है।

जावेद अच्छा । मीना और राम कौन हैं ?

राजू मीना हमारी बेटी है और राम हमारा दूसरा बेटा है।

जावेद और गीता जी आपकी पत्नी हैं ?

राजू जी हाँ, गीता मेरी पत्नी है।

जावेद क्या आपके भाई डाक्टर हैं ?

राजू जी नहीं । वे अध्यापक हैं।

जावेद वे कैसे अध्यापक हैं ?

राजू वे बहुत अच्छे अध्यापक हैं।

Jāved *Rājū jī, Manoj kaun hai?*

Rājū *Manoj hamārā baṛā betā hai.*

Jāved *acchā. Mīnā aur Rām kaun hāi?*

Rājū *Minā hamārī betī hai aur Rām hamārā dūsrā betā hai.*

Jāved *aur Gitā jī āpkī patnī hāi?*

Rājū *jī hā, Gitā merī patnī hāi.*

Jāved *kyā āpke bhāī dākṭar hāi?*

Rājū *jī nahī. ve adhyāpak hāi.*

Jāved *ve kaise adhyāpak hāi?*

Rājū *ve bahut acche adhyāpak hāi.*

Javed Raju ji, who is Manoj?

Raju Manoj is our elder ('big') son.

Javed Right. Who are Meena and Ram?

Raju Meena is our daughter and Ram is our second son.

Javed And Geeta ji is your wife?

Raju Yes, Geeta is my wife.

Javed Is your brother a doctor?

Raju No, he's a teacher.

Javed What kind of teacher is he? [i.e. 'is he good?']

Raju He's a very good teacher.

Exercise 2a Translate these sentences into Hindi.

(NB: 'There are' is हैं *hāi*; 'only' is सिर्फ *sirf*.)

1 My name is Manoj. Raju and Geeta Sharma are my parents.

2 Meena is my little sister and Ram is my little brother.

3 Moti is our dog. He's very cute.

4 This is Meena. She is OK. She is little.

5 Our house isn't very big. There are only five rooms.

6 That boy is my friend; his name is Pratap [प्रताप *Pratāp*].

7 Javed sahab is our neighbour. [Use honorific plural.]

Exercise 2b Here are some sentences with singular subjects. Make them all numerically plural. (Make sure that all verbs, pronouns and adjectives agree!)

- ८ यह लड़का बहुत प्यारा है। *yah larkā bahut pyārā hai.*
- ९ यह कुत्ता हमारा नहीं है। *yah kuttā hamārā nahī̄ hai.*
- १० वह लड़का कौन है? *vah larkā kaun hai?*
- ११ यह आदमी कौन है? *yah ādmī kaun hai?*
- १२ मेरा दोस्त पंजाबी है। *merā dost panjābī hai.*
- १३ क्या यह कुत्ता आपका है? *kyā yah kuttā āpkā hai?*
- १४ वह औरत कौन है? *vah aurat kaun hai?*
- १५ हमारा बेटा अच्छा लड़का है। *hamārā betā acchā larkā hai.*
- १६ मेरी बेटी बीमार है। *merī betī bimār hai.*
- १७ क्या यह किताब महँगी है? *kyā yah kitāb mahāgī hai?*
- १८ यह मेज़ गंदी है। *yah mez gandī hai.*

Exercise 2c Change the sentences from आप *āp* to तुम *tum*, or vice versa, making sure that all the verb agreements (तुम हो *tum ho*, आप हैं *āp hai* etc.) work properly.

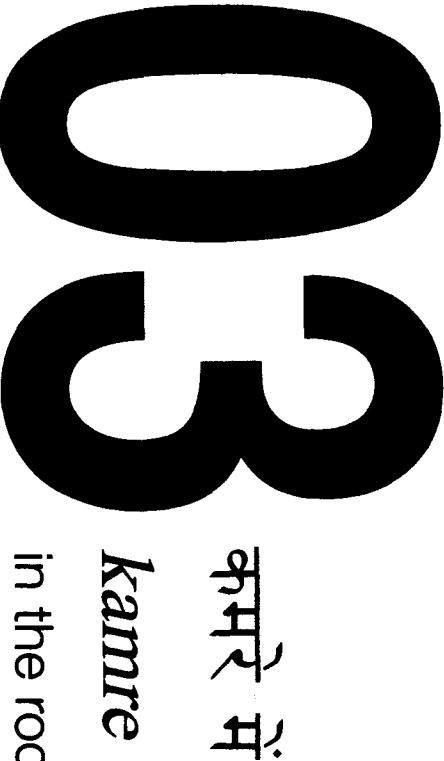
- १९ तुम कौन हो? *tum kaun ho?*
- २० तुम्हारा नाम क्या है? *tumhārā nām kyā hai?*
- २१ तुम्हारे माता-पिता बहुत अच्छे लोग हैं। *tumhāre mātā-pitā bahut acche log hai.*
- २२ तुम्हारा भाई सुंदर नहीं है। *tumhārā bhāī sundar nahī̄ hai.*
- २३ तुम दोनों लड़के लंबे हो। *tum donō larkē lambe ho.*
- २४ तुम कैसे हो? *tum kaise ho?*
- २५ आपका नाम क्या है? *āpkā nām kyā hai?*
- २६ क्या आप ठीक हैं? *kyā āp thiik hai?*
- २७ आप नाराज़ नहीं हैं? *āp nārāz nahī̄ hai?*
- २८ आप कैसी हैं? *āp kaisi hai?*

Finally, go through all the sentences in sentences 1–28, underlining the subject of the verb; and make sure you can understand why each verb is singular or plural.

Glossary

(NB: Cardinal numbers up to 10 (and ordinals up to ‘sixth’) are included here. Higher cardinal numbers are given in Unit 12.6.)

अच्छा <i>acchā</i>	good, nice	दो <i>do</i>	two
झलमारी <i>almārī</i>	f. cupboard	नेता <i>netā</i>	m. leader, politician
आठ <i>āth</i>	eight	नौ <i>nau</i>	nine
आशा <i>āsā</i>	f. hope	पड़ोसी <i>parosī</i>	m., पड़ोसिन <i>parosin</i> f. neighbour
औरत <i>aurat</i>	f. woman	पतला <i>patlā</i>	thin
कमरा <i>kamrā</i>	m. room	पत्नी <i>patnī</i>	f. wife
काफ़ी <i>kāfī</i>	quite, very; enough	पहला <i>pahlā</i>	first
काम <i>kām</i>	m. work; job, task	पाँच <i>pāc</i>	five; पाँचवां <i>pācvā</i> fifth
कैसा <i>kaisā</i>	how?	पिता <i>pitā</i>	m. father
खाली <i>khālī</i>	empty, free, vacant	प्यारा <i>pyārā</i>	dear, sweet, cute
गंदा <i>gandā</i>	dirty	बड़ा <i>baṛā</i>	big
चाचा <i>cācā</i>	m. uncle (father's younger brother)	बहिन <i>bahin</i>	f. sister
चार <i>cār</i>	four	बहुत <i>bahut</i>	very
चौथा <i>cauthā</i>	fourth	बेटी <i>betī</i>	f. daughter
छठा <i>chaṭhā</i>	sixth	महँगा <i>mahāgā</i>	expensive
छह <i>chah</i>	six	महिला <i>mahilā</i>	f. lady
छोटा <i>choṭā</i>	small	माता <i>mātā</i>	f. mother
ज़रूर <i>zarūr</i>	of course	माता-पिता <i>mātā-pitā</i>	m. pl. parents
जान <i>jān</i>	f. life, soul	मोटा <i>motā</i>	fat
ज़िंदा <i>zindā</i> (invariable -ā ending)	alive	राजा <i>rājā</i>	m. king, raja
जी <i>jī</i>	word of respect used after names etc. and as a short form of जी हाँ <i>jī hā̄</i> ‘yes’	लंबा <i>lambā</i>	tall
तस्वीर <i>tasvīr</i>	f. picture	शक्ति <i>sakti</i>	f. power
तीन <i>tīn</i>	three	सात <i>sāt</i>	seven
तीसरा <i>tīsrā</i>	third	साफ़ <i>sāf</i>	clean, clear
तुम <i>tum</i>	you (familiar)	साहब <i>sāhab</i>	sahib
तुम्हारा <i>tumhārā</i>	your, yours	सिर्फ़ <i>sirf</i>	only
तू <i>tū</i>	you (intimate)	सुंदर <i>sundar</i>	beautiful, handsome
दस <i>das</i>	ten	हम <i>ham</i>	we, us
दूसरा <i>dūsrā</i>	second; other	हमारा <i>hamārā</i>	our, ours
		हो <i>ho</i>	are (with तुम <i>tum</i>)



In this unit you will learn

- to say where people and things are
- to describe things
- to talk about ownership

Language points

- postpositions and case
- word order

► 1 Some more questions

You'll have noticed that question-words in Hindi begin with a 'k' — क्या *kyā*, कौन *kaun* etc. A further selection of such words will give us much more to talk about. We've already met कैसा *kaisā*, used in asking 'how' someone is; but it also means 'what kind of?' And कितना *kitnā* means 'how much?'

कैसा मकान ?

kaisā makān? what kind of house?

यह कैसा मकान है ?

yah kaisā makān hai? What kind of house is this?

कितना पानी ?

kitnā pāni? how much water?

कितना पानी है ?

kitnā pāni hai? How much water is there?

Both कैसा *kaisā* and कितना *kitnā* inflect (OK, change their endings!) like adjectives: कैसा—कैसे—कैसी *kaisā—kaise—kaisī*, कितना—कितने—कितनी *kitnā—kitne—kitnī*.

यह कैसा कमरा है ?

yah kaisā kamrā hai? What kind of room is this?

यह कैसी किताब है ?

ye kaisī kitāb hai? What kind of book is this?

ये कैसे कमरे हैं ?

ye kaise kamre hai? What kind of rooms are these?

कितने कमरे हैं ?

kitne kamre hai? How many rooms are there?

कितनी दुकानें हैं ?

kitnī dukānē hai? How many shops are there?

कितना पैसा है ?

kitnā paisā hai? How much money is there?

कितने लोग हैं ?

kitne log hai? How many people are there?

कितना समय है ?

kitnā samay hai? How much time is there?

What's this like?

When कैसा *kaisā* comes after the noun, it means ‘what is something like?’ Remember that it’s also the usual way of asking about someone’s health — such a commonly used expression that we’ll look at some more examples:

यह कमरा कैसा है ?

yah kamrā kaisā hai? What’s this room like?

मनोज कैसा है ?

Manoj kaisā hai? How is Manoj?

माता जी कैसी हैं ?

mātā ji kaisī hai? How is Mother?

राम, तुम कैसे हो ?

Rām, tum kaise ho? Ram, how are you?

शर्मा जी, आप कैसे हैं ?

Sarmā ji, āp kaise hai? Sharma ji, how are you?

गीता जी, आप कैसी हैं ?

Gitā ji, āp kaisī hai? Geeta ji, how are you?

Some questions for you

Answer the questions about the picture, using words from the list:

बूढ़ा *būrhā*

elderly

पुराना *purānā*

old (of things)

कुल *milākar*

kul milākar

in total

चूहा *cūhā* m.

mouse, rat

तोता *totā* m.

parrot



१ कितने आदमी हैं ? *kitne ādmī hai?*

२ यह कैसा आदमी है ? *yah kaisā ādmī hai?*

३ मेज़ कैसी है ? *mez kaisī hai?*

४ कितनी लड़कियाँ हैं ? *kitnī lākhiyā̄ hai?*

५ कुल मिलाकर कितने लोग हैं ? *kul milākar kitne log hai?*

६ क्या दोनों लड़कियाँ लंबी हैं ? *kyā donō lākhiyā̄ lambī hai?*

७ कितने चूहे हैं ? *kitne cūhe hai?*

८ कितनी कुरसियाँ हैं ? *kitnī kursiyā̄ hai?*

९ क्या चूहे बहुत बड़े हैं ? *kyā cūhe bahut bare hai?*

१० कितने तोते हैं ? *kitne tote hai?*

2 Where? On the table

The word कहाँ *kahā̄* means ‘where?’ In order to say where something is, we need the words for ‘on, in’ and so on. Here’s a little list:

पर *par* on, at

में *mē* in

से *se* from, with, by

तक *tak* up to, until

को *ko* to (and other meanings)

And here are some phrases:

मेज पर *mez par* on the table

कुरसी पर *kursi par* on the chair

घर पर *ghar par* at home

घर में *ghar mē* in the house

दिल्ली में *dilli mē* in Delhi

भारत में *bhārat mē* in India

आज तक *āj tak* until today

As you can see, the words पर *par*, में *mē* etc. come after the noun. Because of this they’re called *postpositions* rather than *prepositions*.

► Practise what you've learnt

Answer these questions, using the postposition में *mē* 'in'.

दिल्ली कहाँ है ? *dillī kahā hai?*

काठमांडु कहाँ है ? *kāthmāndu kahā hai?*

कराची कहाँ है ? *karāci kahā hai?*

मुम्बई कहाँ है ? *mumbaī kahā hai?*

लंदन कहाँ है ? *landan kahā hai?*

आप कहाँ हैं ? *āp kahā hai?*

Your answers should be दिल्ली भारत में है *dillī bhārat mē hai* etc.; and my answer to the last one is मैं लंदन में हूँ *mai landan mē hūँ*.

At home, at school, at work

पर *par* usually means 'on', but it means 'at' in phrases like घर पर *ghar par* 'at home'.

आज मनोज घर पर नहीं है।

āj Manoj ghar par nahī̄ hai. Manoj isn't at home today.

राम स्कूल पर नहीं है।

Rām skūl par nahī̄ hai. Ram isn't at school.

मेरे दोस्त काम पर हैं।

mere dost kām par hāi. My friends are at work.

शर्मा जी काम पर है।

Śarmā jī kām par hāi. Sharma ji is at work.

Word order

Look very closely at the difference between these two sentences:

मेज पर पंखा है।

mez par pankhā hai. There's a fan on the table.

पंखा मेज पर है।

pankhā mez par hāi. The fan is on the table.

You'll see that the main piece of new information comes *just before the verb*. Another way of looking at these sentences is to see them as the answers to particular questions, with the new information simply slotting into the space that had been occupied by the question word:

मेज पर क्या है ?

mez par kyā hāi? What is on the table?

मेज पर पंखा है।

mez par pankhā hāi. There's a fan on the table.

पंखा कहाँ है ?

pankhā kahā hāi? Where is the fan?

पंखा मेज पर है।

pankhā mez par hāi. The fan is on the table.

Where's the cat?

Answer the questions about the picture:

१ बिल्ली कहाँ है ? *billī kahā hāi?*

२ कुत्ता कहाँ है ? *kuttā kahā hāi?*

३ तस्वीर में कितनी कुरसियाँ हैं ? *tasvīr mē kitnī kursiyā hāi?*

४ तस्वीर में कितनी बिल्लियाँ हैं ? *tasvīr mē kitnī billiyā hāi?*

५ छोटी कुरसी पर क्या है ? *choṭī kursī par kyā hāi?*

६ बड़ी कुरसी पर क्या है ? *baṛī kursī par kyā hāi?*

७ मेज पर क्या है ? *mez par kyā hāi?*

८ क्या कुत्ता और बिल्ली प्यारे हैं? *kyā kuttā aur billī pyāre hāi?*



► Do you have...

One postposition that you'll often need is के पास *ke pās*. We'll meet it more fully later, but we need it *now*. Its first meaning is 'near':

हमारी दुकान स्टेशन के पास है।

hamārī dukān stēshān ke pās hai. Our shop is near the station.

But के पास *ke pās* can also indicate *ownership* of goods and chattels (or even time) — it's used in the meaning of 'to have':

मनोज के पास नया रेडियो है।

Manoj ke pās naya rediyo hai. Manoj has a new radio.

राम के पास कई नई किताबें हैं।

Rām ke pās kai nai kitābē hai. Ram has several new books.

मीना के पास कुछ नए कपड़े हैं।

Minā ke pās kuch nae kapre hai. Meena has some new clothes.

राजू के पास कम्प्यूटर नहीं है।

Rājū ke pās kampyūtar nahī hai. Raju doesn't have a computer.

पिताजी के पास समय नहीं है।

pitājī ke pās samay nahī hai. Father doesn't have time.

आपके पास कितना पैसा है?

āpke pās kitnā paisā hai? How much money do you have?

When के पास *ke pās* is used with मेरे *mere*, तुम्हारे *tumhāre* or हमारे *hamāre*, the के *ke* is dropped:

मेरे पास समय नहीं है।

mere pās samay nahī hai. I don't have time.

तुम्हारे पास क्या है?

tumhāre pās kyā hai? What have you got?

हमारे पास कुछ नहीं है।

hamāre pās kuch nahī hai. We have nothing.

Although के पास *ke pās* is used widely for a variety of possessions, it's not usually used with relatives ('I have a son' etc.); we'll come to a way of saying this in Unit 6.1. Meanwhile, a spirit of idle curiosity makes me ask you some questions:

क्या आप के पास ... *kyā āp ke pās...*

... साइकिल है? *sāikil hai?*

... बहुत पैसे हैं? *bahut paise hai?*

... नया रेडियो है? *nayā rediyo hai?*

... नए हिन्दुस्तानी कपड़े हैं? *nae hindustānī kapre hai?*

... नई गाड़ी है? *nai gāṛī hai?*

3 Case

In the English phrase 'he speaks to him', the two pronouns can't be exchanged: 'him speaks to he' isn't impressive English! This is an example of a difference of 'case' — a system that shows how words relate to each other in a sentence. Stand by for a really important piece of grammar here.

Hindi has two main cases — the 'oblique', always used before postpositions, and the 'direct', used elsewhere.

In the following sentences, the underlined words are postpositions, and the **bold** words are oblique, because they're followed by those postpositions.

हम लोग घर में हैं।

ham log ghar mē hai. We ['we people'] are in the house.

दिल्ली भारत में है।

dilli bhārat mē hai. Delhi is in India.

क्या आप लंदन से हैं?

kyā āp landan se hai? Are you from London?

शर्मजी दुकान पर हैं।

śarmājī dukān par hai. Sharma ji is at the shop.

In the first example, में *mē* 'in' affects only घर *ghar* 'house', giving the sense 'in the house' — it doesn't affect हम लोग *ham log* 'we' because this is the subject, and not part of the location. The same principle applies with the other examples.

Why say that these words are oblique, when they haven't changed their form at all? Because in the singular, only *some* nouns change in the oblique. Masculine -ā endings are the culprits here: they change to -e, as shown in the following list.

कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
कमरे में	<i>kamre mē</i>	in the room
लड़का	<i>larkā</i>	boy
लड़के से	<i>larkē se</i>	by the boy
आगरा	<i>āgrā</i>	Agra
आगे तक	<i>āgre tak</i>	as far as Agra

Masculine -ā adjectives describing oblique nouns change similarly:

छोटा कमरा	<i>choṭā kamrā</i>	small room
छोटे कमरे में	<i>choṭe kamre mē</i>	in a/the small room
मोटा लड़का	<i>moṭā larkā</i>	fat boy
मोटे लड़के से	<i>moṭe larkē se</i>	by the fat boy
मेरा बगीचा	<i>merā bagīcā</i>	my garden
मेरे बगीचे में	<i>mere bagice mē</i>	in my garden

An -ā adjective changes like this with *all* types of masculine noun. So although घर *ghar* ‘house’ does not end in -ā and therefore cannot change visibly in the oblique, -ā adjectives qualifying it must change all the same:

बड़े घर में	<i>bare ghar mē</i>	in the big house
छोटे मकान में	<i>choṭe makān mē</i>	in the little house

Feminine nouns and adjectives are easier to deal with — they don’t change at all in the oblique singular:

छोटी मेज पर	<i>choṭī mez par</i>	on the little table
मेरी बहिन को	<i>merī bahin ko</i>	to my sister

Plural nouns in the oblique case

In the oblique plural, all nouns take the ending -ō as shown:

मेज	<i>mez</i>	table
मेजों पर	<i>mezō par</i>	on tables
कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
कमरों में	<i>kamrō mē</i>	in rooms

लड़का	<i>larkā</i>	boy
लड़कों को	<i>larkō ko</i>	to boys
कुत्ता	<i>kuttā</i>	dog
कुत्तों को	<i>kuttō ko</i>	to dogs

... and masculine -ā adjectives keep their *usual* oblique -e ending:

कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
छोटे कमरों में	<i>choṭe kamrō mē</i>	in small rooms

लड़का	<i>larkā</i>	boy
बड़े लड़कों को	<i>baṛe larkō ko</i>	to big boys

हमारा कुत्ता	<i>hamārā kuttā</i>	our dog
हमारे कुत्तों को	<i>hamārē kuttō ko</i>	to our dogs

Nouns of either gender that end in -i change this to iy before adding the -ō ending. So they end -iyō.

आदमी	<i>ādmī</i>	man
आदमियों से	<i>ādmiyō se</i>	from men

लड़की	<i>larkī</i>	girl
लड़कियों से	<i>larkiyō</i>	from girls

Well, after all that grammar you probably feel the need to sit or even lie down for a bit, so...

Sitting and lying

‘Sitting’ is बैठा *baiṭhā* and ‘standing’ is खड़ा *kharā*; ‘lying’ is पड़ा *parā* for an inanimate object (e.g. a book lying on the table), but लेटा *letā* for a person who is ‘lying down’. These words need to agree with their nouns, like adjectives:

मनोज कमरे में बैठा है।

Manoj kamre mē baiṭhā hai. Manoj is sitting in the room.

गीता बगीचे में खड़ी है।

Gitā bagice mē kharī hai. Geeta is standing in the garden.

आपके कपड़े करसी पर पड़े हैं।

दोनों लड़कियाँ फर्श पर लेटी हैं।

donō larkiyā farś par letī hāi. The two girls are lying on the floor.

House for rent

A Hindi-speaking friend has seen an advertisement in an English newspaper and needs your help in understanding it. Read the advertisement and then answer her questions.



New house for rent in Agra. 2 large & 2 small rooms, all well ventilated (windows in all rooms, ceiling fans in large rooms). Small garden with trees. Rent Rs. 5000.

- १ घर कहाँ है ?
ghar kahā hai?
- २ क्या वह बहुत पुराना है ?
kyā vah bahut purānā hai?
- ३ कितने कमरे हैं ?
kitne kamre hāi?
- ४ क्या सब कमरों में खिड़कियाँ हैं ?
kyā sab kamrō mē khirkiyā hāi?
- ५ क्या पंखे भी हैं ?
kyā pankhe bhī hāi?
- ६ बाहर क्या है ?
bāhar kyā hāi?
- ७ क्या दुकानें दूर हैं ?
kyā dukānē dūr hāi?
- ८ किराया कितना है ?
kirāyā kitnā hāi?

► Geeta's story

Geeta is telling us about her husband and her home.

मेरा नाम गीता है – श्रीमती गीता शर्मा। मैं वाराणसी से हूँ। मेरे पति श्री राजकुमार शर्मा हैं। वे दिल्ली से हैं। राजू अध्यापक हैं। यह हमारा घर है। हमारा घर आगरे में है। घर में एक बड़ा कमरा और चार छोटे कमरे हैं। यह हमारा बड़ा कमरा है। कमरे में एक बड़ी मेज़ है। मेज़ पर मेरा कम्प्यूटर है। एक पंखा भी है। फर्श पर कुछ किताबें पड़ी हैं। बगीचे में दो-तीन लंबे पेढ़ हैं।

merā nām Gitā hāi – śrimatī Gitā Šarmā, maī vārāṇasi se hū. mere pati śrī Rājkumār Šarmā hāi. ve dillī se hāi. Rājū adhyāpak hāi. yah hamārā ghar hāi. hamārā ghar āgre mē hāi. ghar mē ek baṛā kamrā aur cār choṭe kamre hāi. yah hamārā baṛā kamrā hāi. kamre mē ek baṛī mez hāi. mez par merā kampyūṭar hāi. ek pankhā bhī hāi. farś par kuch kitābē paṛī hāi. bagice mē do-tīn lambe peṛ hāi.

My name is Geeta — Mrs Geeta Sharma. I'm from Varanasi. My husband is Mr Rajkumar Sharma. He's from Delhi. Raju is a teacher. This is our house. Our house is in Agra. In the house there's one big room and four small rooms. This is our big room. In the room there's one big table. On the table is my computer. There's a fan too. Some books are lying on the floor. In the garden there are two or three tall trees.

► Two tasks for you

Underline all the words in the oblique case in Geeta's statement, then answer these questions:

- १ गीता कहाँ से है ? *Gitā kahā se hāi?*
- २ क्या गीता शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā Gitā śādī-śudā hāi?*
- ३ क्या राजू दिल्ली से है ? *kyā Rājū dillī se hāi?*
- ४ क्या राजू डाक्टर है ? *kyā Rājū dāktar hāi?*
- ५ क्या यह घर दिल्ली में है ? *kyā yah ghar dillī mē hāi?*
- ६ घर में कितने कमरे हैं ? *ghar mē kitne kamre hāi?*
- ७ बड़े कमरे में क्या है ? *baṛē kamre mē kyā hāi?*

- ८ कम्प्यूटर कहाँ है ? *kampyūṭar kahā̄ hai?*
 ९ किताबें कहाँ हैं ? *kitābē kahā̄ hai?*
 १० बगीचे में क्या है ? *bagīce mē kyā̄ hai?*

A word that hates to be misplaced

The little word *भी bhi* ‘also, too’ is simple enough in itself, but it’s incredibly fussy about where it goes in the sentence — it insists on following the word it emphasizes. Look closely at the difference between these two statements, both of which could be translated as ‘this cloth is cheap too’, leaving the emphasis ambiguous in English:

यह कपड़ा भी सस्ता है ।

yah kaprā bhī sastā hai. This cloth too is cheap [i.e. as well as the other cloth we were just looking at].

यह कपड़ा सस्ता भी है ।

yah kaprā sastā bhī hai. This cloth is cheap too [i.e. in addition to its other advantages — colour, texture, or whatever].

At school

- | | |
|---------|---|
| अध्यापक | राम, तुम्हारी किताबें कहाँ हैं ? |
| राम | जी, मेरी किताबें यहाँ मेज पर पड़ी हैं । |
| अध्यापक | तुम्हारी कुरसी पर क्या पड़ा है ? |
| राम | जी, मेरी कुरसी पर मेरे कलम हैं । |
| अध्यापक | तुम्हारे हाथों में क्या है ? |
| राम | मेरे हाथों में कुछ नहीं है । |
| अध्यापक | आज तुम्हारी बहिन मीना कहाँ है ? |
| राम | जी, वह घर पर है । वह बीमार है । |

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| <i>adhyāpak</i> | <i>Rām, tumhārī kitābē kahā̄ hai?</i> |
| <i>Rām</i> | <i>jī, merī kitābē yahā̄ mez par paṛī hai.</i> |
| <i>adhyāpak</i> | <i>tumhārī kursī par kyā̄ paṛā̄ hai?</i> |
| <i>Rām</i> | <i>jī, merī kursī par mere qalam hai.</i> |
| <i>adhyāpak</i> | <i>tumhāre hāthō̄ mē kyā̄ hai?</i> |
| <i>Rām</i> | <i>mere hāthō̄ mē kuch nahī̄ hai.</i> |

<i>adhyāpak</i>	<i>āj tumhārī bahin Mīnā kahā̄ hai?</i>
<i>Rām</i>	<i>jī, vah ghar par hai. vah bīmār hai.</i>
Teacher	Ram, where are your books?
Ram	Sir, my books are lying here on the table.
Teacher	What's lying on your chair?
Ram	Sir, my pens are on my chair.
Teacher	What's in your hands?
Ram	There's nothing in my hands.
Teacher	Where is your sister Meena today?
Ram	Sir, she's at home. She's unwell.

At home

राजू	गीता, मनोज कहाँ है ?
गीता	वह स्कूल पर है ।
राजू	और राम कहाँ है ?
गीता	वह भी स्कूल पर है ।
राजू	अच्छा ! और मीना ?
गीता	मीना बगीचे में बैठी है ।
राजू	मेरा भाई कहाँ है ?
गीता	मालूम नहीं !
<i>Rājū</i>	<i>Gitā, Manoj kahā̄ hai?</i>
<i>Gitā</i>	<i>vah skūl par hai.</i>
<i>Rājū</i>	<i>aur Rām kahā̄ hai?</i>
<i>Gitā</i>	<i>vah bhī skūl par hai.</i>
<i>Rājū</i>	<i>acchā! aur Mīnā?</i>
<i>Gitā</i>	<i>Mīnā bagīce mē baiṭhī hai.</i>
<i>Rājū</i>	<i>merā bhāī kahā̄ hai?</i>
<i>Gitā</i>	<i>mālūm nahī!</i>

Raju	Geeta, where's Manoj?
Geeta	He's at school.
Raju	And where's Ram?
Geeta	He's at school too.
Raju	I see! And Meena?

Geeta Meena's sitting in the garden.
 Raju Where's my brother?
 Geeta Don't know!

Exercise 3a Translate into Hindi:

- 1 My books are lying on the table.
- 2 Your brother is sitting in the garden.
- 3 I am standing in the big room.
- 4 Your books are in the little cupboard.
- 5 His house is not far from here.
- 6 How many people are there in your family?
- 7 How much money does your husband have?
- 8 How is your wife today? And how are you?
- 9 The children aren't at home, they're at school.
- 10 Is this little girl your sister?

 **Exercise 3b** Role play. You are Geeta Sharma (a doctor, remember), at home in Agra with your husband and children; they're in the garden and your husband's indoors. Answer these questions for a local government survey. (Say 'no' to 19, 'yes' to 23.)

- ११ आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ?
āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?
- १२ क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?
kyā āp dākṭar hai?
- १३ क्या आपके पति भी डाक्टर हैं ?
kyā āpke pati bhī dākṭar hai?
- १४ क्या आपके पति घर पर हैं ?
kyā āpke pati ghar par hā?
- १५ क्या आप लोग दिल्ली से हैं ?
kyā āp log dillī se hā?
- १६ आपके मकान में कितने कमरे हैं ?
āpke makān mē kitne kamre hā?
- १७ आपके परिवार में कितने बच्चे हैं ?
āpke parivār mē kitne bacce hā?

- १८ क्या आपका छोटा लड़का आज स्कूल पर है ?
kyā āpkā chotā lāṛkā āj skūl par hā?
- १९ क्या उसका स्कूल यहाँ से दूर है ?
kyā uskā skūl yahā se dūr hā?
- २० आपके दूसरे बच्चे कहाँ हैं ?
āpke dūsre bacce kahā hā?
- २१ क्या वह कुत्ता भी आपका है ?
kyā vah kutā bhī āpkā hā?
- २२ बहुत प्यारा है ! उसका नाम क्या है ?
bahut pyārā hā! uskā nām kyā hā?
- २३ क्या आपके पास गाड़ी है ?
kyā āpke pās gāṛī hā?
- २४ क्या आपके पास कम्प्यूटर है ?
kyā āpke pās kampyūṭar hā?

धन्यवाद ! बहुत धन्यवाद ! *dhanyavād! bahut dhanyavād!*

Glossary

अस्पताल <i>aspatāl</i> m. hospital	के पास <i>ke pās</i> near; in the possession of
आज <i>āj</i> today; आजकल <i>ājkal</i> nowadays, these days	को <i>ko</i> to
कई <i>kai</i> several	खड़ा <i>khaṛā</i> standing
कपड़ा <i>kapṛā</i> m. cloth, garment	खिड़की <i>khirkī</i> f. window
कम्प्यूटर <i>kampyūṭar</i> m. computer	गाड़ी <i>gāṛī</i> f. car; train, vehicle
कराची <i>karāčī</i> f. Karachi	घर <i>ghar</i> m. house, home
काठमांडु <i>kāṭhmanḍu</i> m.	चूहा <i>cūhā</i> m. mouse, rat
कहाँ <i>kahā</i> where?	छुट्टी <i>chuṭṭī</i> f. holiday; free time, time off
कितना <i>kitnā</i> how much/many?	तक <i>tak</i> up to, until, as far as
किराया <i>kirāyā</i> m. rent; fare	तोता <i>totā</i> m. parrot
कुछ <i>kuch</i> some; something; कुछ और <i>kuch aur</i> some more;	दफ्तर <i>daftār</i> m. office
कुछ नहीं <i>kuch nahī</i> nothing	दुकान <i>dukān</i> f. shop
कुल मिलाकर <i>kul milākar</i> in total, all together	दूर <i>dūr</i> far, distant
	धन्यवाद <i>dhanyavād</i> thank you

नया *nayā* (f. नई *naī*; m. pl. नए *nae*) new
 नेपाल *nepāl* m. Nepal
 पंखा *pankhā* m. fan
 पड़ा *paṛā* lying
 पति *pati* m. husband
 पर *par* on (and 'at' in 'at home' etc.)
 परिवार *parivār* m. family
 पाकिस्तान *pākistān* m. Pakistan
 पानी *pāni* m. water
 पास *pās*, पास में *pās mē* nearby
 पुराना *purānā* old (only for inanimates)
 पेह *peṛ* m. tree
 पैसा *paisā* m. money
 फर्श *farś* m. floor
 फूल *phūl* m. flower
 बगीचा *bagicā* m. garden
 बाहर *bāhar* outside
 बूढ़ा *bürhā* elderly, old (only for animates)
 बैठा *baithā* seated, sitting
 भारत *bhārat* m. India

भी *bhī* also; even
 मालूम नहीं *mälūm nahī'* [I] don't know
 मुंबई *mumbāi* f. Mumbai, Bombay
 में *mē* in
 यहाँ *yahā'* here
 या *yā* or
 लन्दन *landan* m. London
 लेटा *letā* lying, lying down
 रास्ता *rāstā* m. road
 वहाँ *vahā'* there
 वाराणसी *vārāṇasi* f. Varanasi, Banaras
 श्री *śrī* Mr; श्रीमती *śrimati* Mrs
 सब *sab* all
 समय *samay* m. time
 सस्ता *sastā* cheap
 साइकिल *sākil* f. bicycle
 से *se* from
 सोमवार *somvār* m. Monday
 स्कूल *skūl* m. school
 हजार *hazār* m. thousand
 हाथ *hāth* m. hand

ताय पीजिए
 cāy
 have some tea

04

pīje

In this unit you will learn

- how to make requests and give commands
- how to describe everyday events and habits

Language points

- imperative verbs
- imperfective present tense

1 Giving orders and making requests

Giving orders and making requests is easy in Hindi: but what you say depends on whom you're speaking to, because the imperative (command-giving) verb has different forms for तू *tū*, तुम *tum* and आप *āp* people. We're going to concentrate on the तुम *tum* and आप *āp* forms here. First, we have to define a couple of terms.

Dictionaries list verbs in their 'infinitive' form: बैठना *baithnā* 'to sit'. Take away the -ना -nā ending and you are left with बैठ *baith*, which is the basic building-block of the verb; it's called the 'verb stem'. Remember these terms, because we'll be using them quite often.

For commands to someone you call तुम *tum*, just add -o to the stem: बैठो *baitho* 'sit', etc.

For commands to someone you call आप *āp*, add -ie to the stem: बैठिए *baithie* 'speak', etc. Because this is inherently polite, it more or less implies the sense 'please'.

As in English, the pronoun is optional: you can say either तुम बैठो *tum baitho* 'you sit', or just बैठो *baitho* 'sit'.

Spend some time getting to know these very common commands:

INFINITIVE	तुम <i>tum</i>	आप <i>āp</i>
बैठना	बैठो	बैठिए
<i>baithnā</i> to sit	<i>baitho</i> sit	<i>baithie</i> please sit
बोलना	बोलो	बोलिए
<i>bolnā</i> to speak	<i>bolo</i> speak	<i>bolie</i> please speak
जाना	जाओ	जाइए
<i>jānā</i> to go	<i>jāo</i> go	<i>jāie</i> please go
आना	आओ	आइए
<i>ānā</i> to come	<i>āo</i> come	<i>āie</i> please come
कहना	कहो	कहिए
<i>kahnā</i> to say	<i>kaho</i> say	<i>kahie</i> please say
खाना	खाओ	खाइए
<i>khānā</i> to eat	<i>khāo</i> eat	<i>khāie</i> please eat

Four of the commonest verbs are irregular (wouldn't you just know it?):

करना करो कीजिए

करना	करो	कीजिए
<i>karnā</i> to do	<i>karo</i> do	<i>kijie</i> please do
देना	दो	दीजिए
<i>denā</i> to give	<i>do</i> give	<i>dijie</i> please give
लेना	लो	लीजिए
<i>lenā</i> to take	<i>lo</i> take	<i>lijie</i> please take
पीना	पियो	पीजिए
<i>pīnā</i> to drink	<i>piyo</i> drink	<i>pījie</i> please drink

Commands to someone you call तू *tū* just use the verb stem — बैठ *baith*, बोल *bol*, जा *jā*, आ *ā*, कह *kah*, खा *khā*, कर *kar*, दे *de*, ले *le*, पी *pī*. As their shortness suggests, these तू *tū* commands are very blunt (or, if you prefer, sharp!) — 'Speak!' 'Sit!'; used out of context, they could easily give offence. Care needed here!

Commands are made negative by न *na* or मत *mat* 'don't'. The latter is blunter.

यहाँ न बैठिए !

yahā na baithie. Please don't sit here.

कुछ मत बोलो !

kuch mat bolo! Don't say anything!

► Practise what you've learnt

Here are some आप *āp* commands for you to change into तुम *tum* commands. You'll find the new verbs in the glossary.

- मत जाइए ! आइए, बैठिए ! *mat jāie! āie, baithie*.
- बताइए, आप कैसे हैं ? *batāie, āp kaise hai?*
- समोसा खाइए, पानी पीजिए ! *samosā khāie, pānī pījie*.
- यह दूसरा समोसा भी लीजिए ! *yah dūsrā samosā bhī lijie*.
- मोती को समोसा न दीजिए ! *Motī ko samosā na dijie*.
- और खाइए ! *aur khāie!* ['Have some more!']
- खाली प्लेट मेज पर रखिए ! *khāli pleṭ mez par rakhie*.
- अरे ! सिग्रेट न पीजिए ! *are! sigret na pījie*!
- और चाय लीजिए ! *aur cāy lijie*. ['Have some more tea.']

हिन्दी में बोलिए ।

hindī mē bolie. Please speak in Hindi.

हिन्दी में बोलिएगा ।

hindī mē boliegā. Be so kind as to speak in Hindi.

This sentence adds *-gā* to the command: बोलिए *bolie* becomes बोलिएगा *boliegā*. This gives a particularly polite command.

मैं नहीं समझा ।

mai nahī samjhā. I don't/didn't understand. (male speaker)

मैं नहीं समझी ।

mai nahī samjhī. I don't/didn't understand. (female speaker)

These sentences use the past tense, introduced in Unit 10.1.

2 Telling, saying, speaking, asking

When using verbs like 'to tell' and 'to ask', you may want to specify the person being spoken to. Most 'saying, asking' verbs make this link with *से se*, and here's a list of the common ones that do so:

कहना *kahnā* to say, tell

बोलना *bolnā* to speak

बात करना *bāt karnā* to converse

पूछना *pūchnā* to ask

माँगना *māgnā* to ask for, demand

मिलना *milnā* to meet

राम से कहो ।

Rām se kaho. Tell Ram.

राम से बात करो, मनोज से नहीं ।

Rām se bāt karo, Manoj se nahī. Talk to Ram, not to Manoj.

मनोज से न पूछो, राम से पूछो ।

Manoj se na pūcho, Rām se pūcho. Don't ask Manoj, ask Ram.

राम से पैसा माँगो ।

Rām se paisā māgo. Ask Ram for money.

राम से मिलो ।

Rām se milo. Meet Ram.

The infinitive as a command

The infinitive too can be used as a command: हिन्दी में बोलना ! *hindī mē bolnā!* 'Speak in Hindi!'. Such commands are often meant to be obeyed at some time in the future, or generally at all times, rather than immediately.

झूठ मत बोलना ।

jhūṭ mat bolnā. Don't tell lies.

घर में सिग्रेट न पीना ।

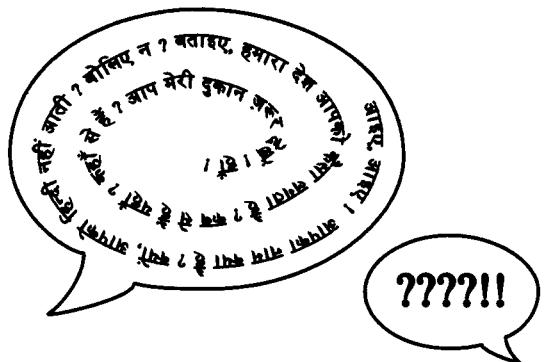
ghar mē sigret na pīnā. Don't smoke in the house.

आगरे से खत भेजना ।

āgra se khat bhejnā. Send [me] a letter from Agra.

Some conversational gambits

When you're learning Hindi you may find that people speak quite fast — you'll need to ask them to repeat things or to speak slowly etc. This section gives you some useful phrases to help you out!



फिर से पूछिए ।

phir se pūchiae. Please ask [me] again.

फिर से कहिए ।

phir se kahiae. Please tell [me] again, say [it] again.

ज़ोर से बोलिए ।

zor se bolie. Please speak loudly.

धीरे धीरे बोलिए ।

dhire dhire bolie. Please speak slowly.

But the verb बताना *batānā* ‘to tell’ uses को *ko* —

राम को बताओ ! *Rām ko batāo.* Tell Ram.

Practise what you've learnt

Using both तुम *tum* and आप *āp* forms, make up some requests and commands from the following lists. Make some of your examples negative by using न *na* or मत *mat*. Here's an example:

यह किताब ध्यान से पढ़िए

yah kitāb dhyān se parhie. Read this book carefully.

OBJECTS

समोसा *samosā* m. samosa

किताब *kitāb* f. book

हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi

पानी *pānī* m. water

खाना *khānā* m. food

और चाय *aur cāy* f. more tea

घर *ghar* home

मेरी बात *merī bāt* f. what I say, my words

यह *yah* this

ये *ye* these

ADVERBS

अब *ab* now

अभी *abhī* right now

जल्दी से *jaldī se* quickly

ज़ोर से *zor se* loudly

धीरे धीरे *dhire dhire* slowly

यहाँ *yahā* here

यहाँ *yahī* right here

ध्यान से *dhyān se* carefully

फिर से *phir se* again

VERBS

कहना *kahnā* to say

खाना *khānā* to eat

चलाना *calānā* to drive (vehicle)

जाना *jānā* to go

देखना *dekhnā* to see, look at

पढ़ना *parhnā* to read

पीना *pīnā* to drink

पूछना *pūchnā* to ask

बताना *batānā* to tell

बात करना *bāt karnā* to talk, converse

बैठना *baithnā* to sit

बोलना *bolnā* to speak

रखना *rakhnā* to put, to keep

सीखना *sikhnā* to learn

सुनना *sunnā* to listen

Did you know?

Like all the major languages of northern India, Hindi derives from Sanskrit, India's classical language. Sanskrit is a member of the Indo-European language family that includes Greek, Latin and the modern languages of Western Europe. So Hindi is a distant cousin of English, French, German etc.

► 3 Routine events

We now take a big step forward by learning how to to describe present-tense events and actions — starting with the verb बोलना *bolnā* ‘to speak’ and समझना *samajhnā* ‘to understand’:

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ ।

mai hindī bolta hū. I speak Hindi. [male speaker]

मैं हिन्दी समझता हूँ ।

mai hindī samajhata hū. I understand Hindi. [male speaker]

This is a present tense that describes actions that are done regularly or habitually. It is called the ‘imperfective’, and it consists of two parts. First, the word describing the action is बोलता *bolta*, which consists of the stem बोल *bol* plus the ending -ता *-tā*.

बोल + ता = बोलता *bol + tā = bolta*

समझ + ता = समझता *samajh + tā = samajhata*

The second part is the verb 'to be' — here हूँ *hū* — already familiar to us from मैं हूँ *mai hū* 'I am'. Its purpose here is to show that the verb is in the present tense ('I speak', rather than 'I used to speak').

As you might expect, बोलता *boltā* changes to बोलते *bolte* in the masculine plural, and to बोलती *boltī* in the feminine; the part of the verb 'to be' also changes with the subject — वे बोलती हैं *ve boltī hai* etc.

मैं हिन्दी बोलती हूँ।

mai hindī boltī hū. I speak Hindi. [female]

तुम हिन्दी बोलते हो।

tum hindī bolte ho. You speak Hindi. [male]

तुम हिन्दी बोलती हो।

tum hindī boltī ho. You speak Hindi. [female]

वह हिन्दी बोलता है।

vah hindī boltā hai. He speaks Hindi.

वह हिन्दी बोलती है।

vah hindī boltī hai. She speaks Hindi.

हम / आप / वे हिन्दी बोलते हैं।

ham/āp/ve hindī bolte hai. We/you/they speak Hindi. [male]

हम / आप / वे हिन्दी बोलती हैं।

ham/āp/ve hindī boltī hai. We/you/they speak Hindi. [female]

► Where do you live? What do you do?

Let's look at examples of this tense using other verbs:

आप कहाँ रहती हैं?

āp kahā̄ rahti hai? Where do you live?

मैं दिल्ली में रहती हूँ।

mai dillī mai rahti hū. I live in Delhi.

आप क्या काम करती हैं?

āp kyā kām kartī hai? What work do you do?

मैं संगीतकार हूँ; सितार बजाती हूँ।

mai sangitkār hū; sitār bajātī hū. I'm a musician; I play the sitar.

क्या आपके पति भी सितार बजाते हैं?

kyā āpke pati bhī sitār bajāte hai? Does your husband play the sitar too?

जी नहीं, वे अंग्रेजी पढ़ते हैं।

jī nahī, ve āgrezī parhāte hai. No, he teaches English.

आपकी बेटी क्या करती है?

āpkī betī kyā kartī hai? What does your daughter do?

वह अभी छोटी है। वह स्कूल जाती है।

vah abhi chotī hai. vah skūl jātī hai. She's still young; she goes to school.

What's this called?

The verb कहना *kahnā* 'to say' is useful in asking what something is called — a frequent event when learning a new language! Point to something and say:

इसको क्या कहते हैं?

isko kyā kahte hai? What's this called?

You'll get answers like:

इसको किताब कहते हैं।

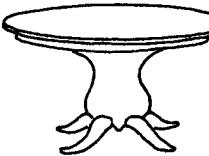
isko kitāb kahte hai.



This is called a book.

इसको मेज कहते हैं।

isko mez kahte hai.



This is called a table.

The question literally means 'What do [they] call this?', leaving the 'they' unexpressed because it's an impersonal kind of question. (The word इसको *isko* 'this' will be explained in Unit 5.)

► Find the matching pairs of sentences

Each sentence numbered 1–7 matches up with one from the sequence A–G. Find the matching pairs. Answers below.

- 1 मनोज और राम सिनेमा जाते हैं।
Manoj aur Rām sinemā jātē hai.
 - 2 शर्मा जी अध्यापक हैं।
Śarmā jī adhyāpak hai.
 - 3 राम स्कूल जाता है।
Rām skūl jātā hai.
 - 4 कभी कभी मनोज और मीना चाय बनाते हैं।
kabhī kabhī Manoj aur Mīnā cāy banātē hai.
 - 5 गीता बहुत अच्छा खाना बनाती है।
Gītā bahut acchā khānā banātī hai.
 - 6 मीना बगीचे में बैठती है।
Mīnā bagīcē mē baiṭhtī hai.
 - 7 तुम हमेशा हम से पैसा माँगते हो।
tum hameśā ham se paisā māṅgte ho.
-
- A लेकिन वह बहुत ध्यान से नहीं पढ़ता।
lekin vah bahut dhyān se nahī̄ parhtā.
 - B लेकिन हम को कुछ नहीं देते हो।
lekin ham ko kuch nahī̄ dete ho.
 - C वे हिन्दी पढ़ते हैं।
ve hindī parhātē hai.
 - D वे हिन्दी फ़िल्में देखते हैं।
ve hindī filmē dekhte hai.
 - E पर मनोज नहीं बनाता, सिर्फ़ खाता है।
par Manoj nahī̄ banātā, sirf khātā hai!
 - F वे काफ़ी भी बनाते हैं।
ve kāfī bhī banātē hai.
 - G वह वहाँ बिल्ली से बात करती है।
vah vahā̄ billī se bāt kartī hai.

Answers: 1D, 2C, 3A, 4F, 5E, 6G, 7B.

Language about language

Because the tense introduced in this chapter describes events that haven't been completed, it's called the 'imperfective' present. The form बोलता *bolta* is called the 'imperfective participle'.

The verb 'to be' (हूँ *hū*, है *hai* etc.) as used here is called the 'auxiliary', because it helps complete the meaning of the verb by specifying its timeframe. (English uses auxiliaries too: 'will' in the future tense 'I will go' is an example.)

Negative verbs

A final point here: the auxiliary can be dropped when the verb is in the negative — it's often optional, as shown by the brackets:

क्या तुम गोश्त खाते हो ?

kyā tum gośt khātē ho? Do you eat meat?

नहीं, मैं गोश्त नहीं खाता (हूँ)।

nahī̄, māi gośt nahī̄ khātā (hū̄). No, I don't eat meat.

क्या वे शराब पीते हैं ?

kyā ve śarāb pītē hai? Do they drink alcohol?

नहीं, वे शराब नहीं पीते (है)।

nahī̄, ve śarāb nahī̄ pītē (hai). No, they don't drink alcohol.

► Javed and Raju get to know each other

जावेद राजू जी, आप एक कालेज में पढ़ाते हैं, न ?

राजू जी हाँ, मैं इतिहास पढ़ाता हूँ।

जावेद और आपकी पत्नी ? क्या वे भी काम करती हैं ?

राजू हाँ ज़रूर, हम दोनों काम करते हैं।

जावेद वे क्या काम करती हैं ?

राजू वे अस्पताल में काम करती हैं। डाक्टर हैं।

Jāved Rājū jī, āp ek kālej mē parhātē hai, na?

Rājū jī hā̄, māi itihās parhātā hū̄.

Jāved aur āpkī patni? kyā ve bhī kām kartī hai?

Rājū hā̄ zarūr, ham donō kām karte hai.

Jāved ve kyā kām kartī hai?

Rājū ve aspatāl mē kām kartī hai. dākṭar hai.

- Javed** Raju ji, you teach in a college, don't you?
Raju Yes, I teach history.
Javed And your wife? Does she work too?
Raju Yes, of course, we both work.
Javed What work does she do?
Raju She works in a hospital. She's a doctor.

Notice that a pronoun can be dropped when its reference is clear from what's come before: डाक्टर हैं *dak्तar hāi* [she] is a doctor. Look out for further examples of this in the second and third line below:

- जावेद** यह बताइए राजू जी, आप गोश्त खाते हैं ?
राजू जी हाँ, कभी कभी खाता हूँ। और आप ?
जावेद मैं भी खाता हूँ। लेकिन शराब नहीं पीता ।
राजू आप शराब नहीं पीते ? मैं पीता हूँ, लेकिन बहुत कम ।
जावेद क्या गीता जी भी पीती हैं ?
राजू जी नहीं, वे नहीं पीतीं ।

- Javed** *yah batāie Rājū ji, āp gośt khāte hāi?*
Rajū *jī hā, kabhi kabhi khātā hū. aur āp?*
Javed *mai bhi khātā hū. lekin śarāb nahī pītā.*
Rajū *āp śarāb nahī pīte? mai pītā hū, lekin bahut kam.*
Javed *kyā Gitā jī bhi pītī hai?*
Rajū *jī nahī, ve nahī pītī.*

- Javed** Tell me this, Raju ji, do you eat meat?
Raju Yes, sometimes I do ['I eat']. And you?
Javed I do too. But I don't drink alcohol.
Raju You don't drink? I do, but very little.
Javed Does Geeta drink too?
Raju No, she doesn't drink.

वे नहीं पीतीं *ve nahī pītī* — when पीती हैं *pītī hāi* becomes negative it can drop the auxiliary हैं *hāi*, leaving just वे नहीं पीतीं *ve nahī pītī*. The nasal from the dropped हैं *hāi* has been made homeless by this, so it jumps onto the participle पीती *pītī* ! This only happens with the feminine plural, and only in this tense.

Now look back at the list of verbs in section 4.1 and make up sentences from as many as you can, with yourself as subject (e.g.

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindī boltā hū*). Then do the same with other subjects such as 'she' or 'they'. Be sure to say your sentences *out loud*, with conviction; this will help you get used to this very important tense.

Exercise 4a Translate, using first तुम *tum* commands and then आप *āp* commands:

- 1 Don't drink alcohol in the house.
- 2 Listen carefully.
- 3 Send this letter to Manoj.
- 4 Go home.
- 5 Tell me his name.
- 6 Eat these two samosas.
- 7 Play the sitar.
- 8 Ask my neighbour.
- 9 Give this money to my wife.
- 10 Don't drive the car today.
- 11 Speak slowly.

Exercise 4b Fill the gap with the right postposition, then translate:

- १२ राम.....पूछिए । *Rām.....pūchie.*
- १३ बच्चों.....मत बताना । *baccō.....mat batānā.*
- १४ चाचा जी.....हिन्दी बोलो । *cācā ji.....hindī bolo.*
- १५ मनोज.....बात कीजिए । *Manoj.....bāt kījye.*
- १६ गीता.....पैसा माँगना । *Gitā.....paisā māgnā.*

Exercise 4c Translate all the variations shown in these sentences:

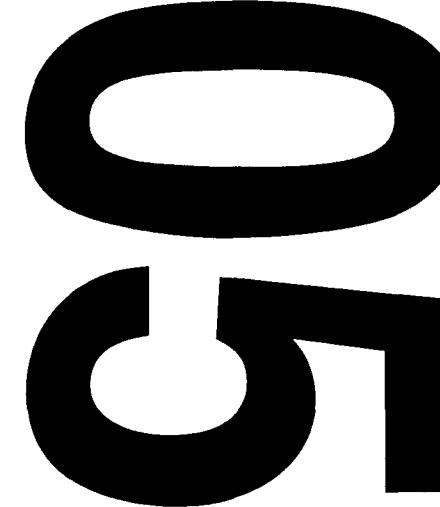
- 17 My brother/sister lives in Delhi.
- 18 I/we understand Hindi.
- 19 The boy/girl drives the car very fast.
- 20 My husband/wife speaks Hindi.
- 21 Who [male/female] speaks English?

Glossary

अभी *abhī* right now; still
 अरे *are* hey! oh!
 आना *ānā* to come
 और *aur* more
 इतिहास *itihās* m. history
 कभी *kabhī* ever; कभी कभी *kabhī kabhī*
 kabhī sometimes
 कम *kam* little, less
 करना *karnā* to do
 कहना *kahnā* to say
 काफ़ी *kāfi* f. coffee
 काम *kām* work; काम करना *kām karnā* to work
 कालेज *kālej* m. college
 खत *khat* m. letter
 (correspondence)
 खाना¹ *khānā* m. food
 खाना² *khānā* to eat
 गाना¹ *gānā* m. song, singing
 गाना² *gānā* to sing
 गोश्त *gośt* m. meat
 चलाना *calānā* to drive
 चाय *cāy* f. tea
 जाना *jānā* to go
 ज़ोर से *zor se* with force, loudly
 झूठ *jhūṭh* m. a lie
 तबला *tablā* m. tabla (drum)
 देखना *dekhnā* to look, to see
 देना *denā* to give
 धीरे धीरे *dhire dhire* slowly
 ध्यान *dhyān* m. attention; ध्यान से *dhyān se* attentively
 न *na* don't; not
 पढ़ना *parhnā* to read, to study

पढ़ाना *parhānā* to teach
 पीना *pīnā* to drink; to smoke
 पूछना *pūchnā* to ask
 प्लेट *plet* f. plate
 फिर *phir*; फिर से *phir se* again
 फ़िल्म *film* f. film
 बजाना *bajānā* to play (music)
 बताना *batānā* to tell
 बनाना *banānā* to make
 बात *bāt* f. thing said, idea; बात करना *bāt karnā* to talk,
 converse
 बैठना *baiṭhnā* to sit
 बोलना *bolnā* to speak
 भेजना *bhejnā* to send
 मत *mat* don't
 माँगना *māgnā* to ask for,
 demand
 मिलना *milnā* to meet
 यहीं *yahī* right here
 रखना *rakhnā* to put, place, keep
 लेना *lenā* to take
 शराब *śarāb* f. alcoholic drink,
 liquor
 संगीत *sāngīt* m. music
 संगीतकार *sāngītkār* m. musician
 समझना *samajhnā* to understand
 समोसा *samosā* m. samosa
 सिग्रेट *sigret* m. cigarette
 सिनेमा *sinemā* m. cinema
 सीखना *sikhnā* to learn
 सुनना *sunnā* to hear, to listen
 हमेशा *hameśā* always

what do you want?



आपको क्या चाहिए ?

kyā

In this unit you will learn
 • to talk about likes and needs
 • expressions for 'to get' and
 'to know'

Language points

- oblique-case expressions
- imperfective of 'to be'

1 Obliques again

Just when you thought you'd got things straight, we go oblique again! This time it's with the pronouns. To say 'to me', 'from her' etc., we need to use a postposition, which means that the pronoun must become oblique. (Look back to Unit 3 if you're uncertain about the use of obliques.)

The good news is that हम *ham*, आप *ap* and तुम *tum* don't change at all in the oblique:

हम को	<i>ham ko</i>	to us
आप को	<i>ap ko</i>	to you
तुम को	<i>tum ko</i>	to you

The bad news is that the others do change — like this:

DIRECT	OBLIQUE + को ko
मैं <i>mai</i>	मुझ को <i>mujh ko</i> to me
तू <i>tū</i>	तुझ को <i>tujh ko</i> to you
यह <i>yah</i>	इस को <i>is ko</i> to him, her, it, this
वह <i>vah</i>	उस को <i>us ko</i> to him, her, it, that
ये <i>ye</i>	इन को <i>in ko</i> to them, these
वे <i>ve</i>	उन को <i>un ko</i> to them, those
कौन <i>kaun</i>	किस को <i>kis ko</i> to whom (singular)
कौन <i>kaun</i>	किन को <i>kin ko</i> to whom (plural)

उस को ये चीजें दीजिए।

us ko ye cizē dījie. Please give these things to him/her.

उन को मेरा पैसा दो।

un ko merā paisā do. Give my money to them.

मुझ को बताइए।

mujh ko batāie. Please tell me.

तुम मुझ को कुछ नहीं देती हो।

tum mujh ko kuch nahī̄ detī ho. You give me nothing.

Pronoun + postposition are usually written together as one word (उसको *usko*), though on the page opposite they were written as two (उस को *us ko*), to show you more clearly what's going on.

► Geeta talks to her children

Geeta is getting Manoj and Ram to help in the house. First, some new words:

कौनसा *kaunsā* which?

साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean

जो *jo* which, who

अखबार *akhbār* m. newspaper



मनोज बेटा, ये किताबें तुम अलमारी में रखो। कौनसी किताबें ? हाँ ये, जो मेरी मेज पर पड़ी हैं। मीना कहाँ है ? उसको बुलाओ। अच्छा मीनू, तुम यहाँ हो ? तुम यह कमरा साफ़ करो। राम, तुम पिताजी से पूछो कि अखबार कहाँ है। उनसे कहो कि चाचाजी बैठे हैं।

Manoj betā, ye kitābē tum almārī mē rakho. kaunsī kitābē? hā ye, jo merī mez par paṛī hai. Minā kahā hai? usko bulāo. acchā Minū, tum yahā ho? tum yah kamrā sāf karo. Rām, tum pitājī se pūchho ki akhbār kahā hai. unse kaho ki cācājī baithe hai.

Manoj, son, put these books in the cupboard. Which books? Yes these, which are lying on my table. Where's Meena? Call her. Oh, Meena, you're here? You clean this room. Ram, ask father where the newspaper is. Tell him that Uncle is sitting [waiting].

Did you know?

At the level of everyday conversation, Hindi and Urdu are virtually identical — though Urdu is written in the Persian script (modified to represent Indian retroflex consonants). All the grammar taught in this book, and nearly all the vocabulary used here, is 'Urdu' as much as it is 'Hindi'.

2 What do you like, what do you want?

► Liking things

In English, we can say 'I like London'; the subject of this is 'I'. But we could also say 'London appeals to me', which makes 'London' the subject. Hindi has many such constructions. They work like this:

मुझको दिल्ली पसंद है।

mujhko dilli pasand hai. I like Delhi.

हमको दिल्ली पसंद है।

hamko dilli pasand hai. We like Delhi.

These sentences translate literally as 'Delhi is pleasing to me/us'; the word दिल्ली *dilli* is the subject of the verb है *hai* 'is', with the 'me/us' expressed in the oblique. Here are some more examples.

क्या राम को यह जगह पसंद है?

kyā Rām ko yah jagah pasand hai? Does Ram like this place?

हमको वह आदमी पसंद नहीं है।

hamko vah ādmī pasand nahī̄ hai. We don't like that man.

मेरे दोस्त को ये तस्वीरें पसंद नहीं हैं।

mere dost ko ye tasvirē pasand nahī̄ hai. My friend doesn't like these pictures.

IMPORTANT! GRAMMATICAL HEALTH WARNING

Constructions using को *ko* can
damage your grammar

Take care: as you learn more Hindi you will see that this switch from English 'I' to Hindi मुझ को *mujh ko* 'to me' is very common. The focus of 'I' sentences is the person who experiences, but मुझको *mujhko* sentences have the *experience itself* as the focus. We can call these 'मुझको *mujhko*' constructions.

► Needing and wanting things

Another मुझको *mujhko* construction expresses 'I need' or 'I want', using the word चाहिए *cāhie* — literally 'is wanted'. There's no है *hai* used with चाहिए *cāhie*.

तुमको क्या चाहिए?

tumko kyā cāhie? What do you want/need?

मुझको काफ़ी चाहिए।

mujhko kāfī cāhie. I want/need coffee.

हमको भी काफ़ी चाहिए।

hamko bhi kāfī cāhie. We want/need coffee too.

किसको चाय चाहिए?

kisko cāy cāhie? Who wants/needs tea?

राजू को चाय चाहिए।

Rājū ko cāy cāhie. Raju wants/needs tea.

Remember that किस *kis* is the oblique of कौन *kaun* 'who?', as in किसको *kisko* 'to whom?'.

► Knowing things

A similar construction means 'I know', using the word मालूम *mālūm* — literally 'known'. A difference from the चाहिए *cāhie* construction is that है *hai* is used here (though it can be dropped in the negative).

मुझको मालूम है।

mujhko mālūm hai. I know.

मुझको नहीं मालूम / मुझको मालूम नहीं।

mujhko nahī̄ mālūm / mujhko mālūm nahī̄. I don't know.

किसको मालूम है?

kisko mālūm hai? Who knows?

उनको मालूम है कि मुझको चाबी चाहिए।

unko mālūm hai ki mujhko cābī cāhie. They know that I want/need a key.

हमको मालूम है कि तुम यहाँ हो।

hamko mālūm hai ki tum yahā̄ ho. We know that you're here.

मुझको मालूम है कि तुम कहाँ हो।

mujhko mālūm hai ki tum kahā̄ ho. I know where you are.

उनको मालूम है कि मुझको क्या चाहिए।

unko mālūm hai ki mujhko kyā cāhie. They know what I want.

► Pratap goes shopping

Pratap, a visitor from England, is shopping in Delhi. He's forgotten the Hindi for some of the things he needs, but luckily for him, the shopkeeper knows some English and is able to help him out. We join them in the middle of their conversation.

प्रताप मुझको टोर्च भी चाहिए ।

दुकानदार “टोर्च” नहीं, “टार्च” ! यह लीजिए । और ?

प्रताप मुझको ... क्या कहते हैं उस को ? ... एक छोटी किताब ... मैं कुछ लिखना चाहता हूँ ...

दुकानदार अच्छा, आपको कापी चाहिए ।

प्रताप हाँ, कापी ! एक क़लम भी दीजिए ।

दुकानदार कैसा क़लम चाहिए ?

प्रताप काला नहीं ... ब्लू ...

दुकानदार यह लीजिए, नीला क़लम । और ?

प्रताप मुझको वह चीज़ भी चाहिए ...

दुकानदार कौनसी चीज़ ? यह डिब्बा ?

प्रताप नहीं नहीं, वह लाल चीज़ जो डिब्बे पर पड़ी है ।

दुकानदार अच्छा, चाकू ! आपको चाकू चाहिए । लीजिए ।

Pratāp mujhko torc bhī cāhie.

dukāndār ‘torc’ nahī, ‘tārc’! yah lijie. aur?

Pratāp mujhko... kyā kahte haī us ko?... ek choṭī kitāb... mai kuch likhnā cāhtā hū...

dukāndār acchā, āp ko kāpī cāhie.

Pratāp hā, kāpī! ek qalam bhī dijie.

dukāndār kaisā qalam cāhie?

Pratāp kālā nahī... blū...

dukāndār yah lijie, nilā qalam. aur?

Pratāp mujhko vah cīz bhī cāhie...

dukāndār kaunsī cīz? yah dibbā?

Pratāp nahī nahī, vah lāl cīz jo dibbe par parī hai.

dukāndār acchā, cāqū! āp ko cāqū cāhie. lijie.

Pratap I need a torch too.
Shopkeeper Not ‘*torc*’, ‘*tārc*’! What else?
Pratap I... what’s it called... a little book... I want to write something.

Shopkeeper Oh, you need an exercise book.
Pratap Yes, an exercise book! Give me a pen too.

Shopkeeper What kind of pen do you want?
Pratap Not black... ‘blue’...

Shopkeeper Here you are, a blue pen. What else?
Pratap I need that thing too...

Shopkeeper Which thing? This box?
Pratap No no, that red thing that’s lying on the box.

Shopkeeper Oh, a penknife! You need a penknife. Here you are.

► 3 Availability — ‘to get, to find’

Besides meaning ‘to meet’, मिलना *milnā* also means ‘to be available’, and is the normal way to express the meaning ‘to get, to find, to receive’. The subject here is not the person who gets or receives something, but the thing that’s available or received.

इस दुकान में अच्छे जूते मिलते हैं ।

is dukān mē acche jūte milte hāi. You can get good shoes in this shop. (Good shoes are available in this shop.)



दिल्ली में सब कुछ मिलता है ।

dillī mē sab kuch miltā hai.

You can get everything in Delhi.

हाथी भी मिलते हैं !

hāthī bhī milte hāi!

You can even find elephants!

Notice that the sense of ‘you’ in ‘you can get’ is dropped, because the situation’s an impersonal one, describing *general* availability.

सस्ते कपड़े कहाँ मिलते हैं ?

saste kapre kahā milte hāi? Where can you get cheap clothes?

अच्छी साड़ियाँ कहाँ मिलती हैं ?

acchī sāriyā kahā milti hāi? Where can you get good saris?

Practise what you've learnt

Match up items with locations, as in this example:

समोसे ढाबे में मिलते हैं।

samose dhābe mē milte hāi. Samosas are available in a café.

WHAT'S AVAILABLE

समोसे *samose* m. pl. samosas

सस्ता खाना *sastā khānā* m. cheap food

डाक टिकटे *dāk tikatē* f. pl. stamps

ताज़ा फल *tāzā phal* m. fresh fruit

अच्छा खाना *acchā khānā* m. good food

सिग्रेट *sigret* m. pl. cigarette

सुंदर कपड़े *sundar kapre* m. pl. lovely clothes

अच्छे कमरे *acche kamre* m. pl. good rooms

WHERE TO FIND IT/ THEM

डाक घर *dāk ghar* m. post office

मेरा कमरा *merā kamrā* m. my room

छोटी दुकान *chotī dukān* f. small shop

यहाँ *yahā̄* here

ढाबा *dhābā* m. roadside cafe

भारत *bhārat* m. India

यह होटल *yah hotal* m. this hotel/restaurant

वह दुकान *vah dukān* f. that shop

The general and the particular

Look closely at these two sentences:

बनारसी साड़ियाँ बहुत अच्छी होती हैं।

banārasi sāriyā bahut acchī hotī hāi. Banarasi saris are very good.

ये साड़ियाँ बहुत अच्छी हैं।

ye sāriyā bahut acchī hāi. These saris are very good.

The participle होता *hotā* (from होना *honā* 'to be') is used in a statement that relates to a whole class of things: it's a *general* statement. Thus the first sentence above is about *all* saris from Banaras (a centre of fine sari making), while the second one is a *specific* one about a *particular* selection of saris.

4 Revision!

By now you should be reasonably confident in making basic sentences, using the verb 'to be' (है *hai* etc.) and the habitual tense of other verbs (मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindī boltā hū̄*). The distinction between आप *āp* and तुम *tum* should be second nature, especially in making requests, and you should be able to make words agree with their subjects in number, gender and case. You can locate things using postpositions like में *mē* and पर *par*, and should always remember that nouns and pronouns that 'carry' postpositions must be in the oblique (कमरे में *kamre mē*, उस पर *us par*). You should be able to express 'need' using चाहिए *cāhie*, and मिलना *milnā* as 'to get' should be familiar too. You know that many constructions follow the format of 'X is pleasing to me' ('mujhko constructions') rather than 'I like X'. Look back now at anything you're unsure of.

Some hints on learning

- Listen to the recording until its dialogues and phrases are coming out of your ears! Try to catch the *music* of the language.
- Read *aloud*; and when reading longish sentences, break them up into smaller units, repeating each part until you're familiar with both its meaning and its construction.
- Read sentences *critically*: put yourself into the position of a teacher, explaining how each phrase is built up and why words are in the order and form in which you find them.
- If you have someone to practise with, act out the dialogues.
- You'll learn words and constructions much more thoroughly by using them yourself rather than just reading them passively. Write a Hindi diary, starting by noting 'habitual' things that you do every day, then gradually extending your range as new tenses are introduced; or write some dialogues of your own.

Raju visits a hotel

This section brings a revision dialogue in two parts. Visiting a small town for a teachers' conference, Raju tries his luck at the local hotel. There's no new grammar, but here are some useful new words:

कोई *koi* some, any, a

अच्छा-सा *acchā-sā* goodish, decent

दिखाना *dikhānā* to show

दिन *din* m. day
के लिए *ke lie* for

यानी <i>yānī</i> that is to say	ऐसा <i>aisā</i> such, of this kind
शुक्रवार <i>śukravār</i> m. Friday	किराया <i>kirāyā</i> m. rent; fare
फोन <i>fon</i> m. phone	सौ <i>sau</i> m. hundred
शहर <i>śahar</i> m. town	रुपया <i>rupayā</i> m. rupee

शंकर आइए साहब, आपको क्या चाहिए ?
 राजू मुझको कमरा चाहिए । कोई अच्छा-सा कमरा दिखाइए ।
 शंकर बहुत अच्छा । आपको कैसा कमरा चाहिए ?
 राजू मुझको बड़ा कमरा चाहिए ।
 शंकर बहुत अच्छा । कितने दिनों के लिए चाहिए ?
 राजू चार दिनों के लिए, यानी शुक्रवार तक ।
 शंकर बहुत अच्छा । आज से शुक्रवार तक हमारा एक बहुत अच्छा कमरा खाली है ।
 राजू क्या कमरे में फोन है ? फोन चाहिए ।
 शंकर जी हाँ, है । बहुत अच्छा कमरा है । इस शहर में ऐसे कमरे मुश्किल से मिलते हैं ।
 राजू किराया कितना है ?
 शंकर सिर्फ सात सौ रुपये ।
 राजू कमरा दिखाइए ।
 शंकर बहुत अच्छा साहब । आइए, मैं कमरा दिखाता हूँ ।

Sankar *āie sāhab, āpko kyā cāhie?*
Rajū *mujhko kamrā cāhie. koi acchā-sā kamrā dikhāie.*
Sankar *bahut acchā. āpko kaisā kamrā cāhie?*
Rajū *mujhko barā kamrā cāhie.*
Sankar *bahut acchā. kitne dinō ke lie cāhie?*
Rajū *cār dinō ke lie, yānī śukravār tak.*
Sankar *bahut acchā. āj se śukravār tak hamārā ek bahut acchā kamrā khāli hai.*
Rajū *kyā kamre mē fon hai? fon cahie.*
Sankar *jī hā, hai. bahut acchā kamrā hai. is śahar mē aise kamre muśkil se milte hai.*

Rajū *kirāyā kitnā hai?*
Sankar *sirf sāt sau rupaye.*
Rajū *kamrā dikhāie.*
Sankar *bahut acchā sāhab. āie, mai kamrā dikhātā hū.*
Shankar Please come [in], sir, what do you want?
Raju I need a room. Show me some decent room.
Shankar Very good. What kind of room do you want?
Raju I want a big room.
Shankar Very good. How many days do you want it for?
Raju For four days — that is, until Friday.
Shankar Very good. We have a very good room vacant from today until Friday.
Raju Is there a phone in the room? There needs to be a phone.
Shankar Yes, there is. It's a very good room. Such rooms are hard to find in this town.
Raju How much is the rent?
Shankar Only seven hundred rupees.
Raju Show me the room.
Shankar Very good, sir. Come, I'll show [you] the room.

(In this last line, Shankar's sentence मैं कमरा दिखाता हूँ *mai kamrā dikhātā hū* shows how the present tense can refer to something just about to be done.)

All seems to be going fine so far, and Shankar is obviously eager to please. But it's when he shows Raju the room that the problems start. Do you notice a change in tone in the way Raju addresses Shankar? (Look out for the pronouns.) But before we move on to the second part, some more new words:

ऊपर <i>ūpar</i> up, upstairs	धूमना <i>ghūmnā</i> to turn, revolve
दरवाजा <i>darvāzā</i> m. door	लाइट <i>lāit</i> f. electricity, electrical power
खोलना <i>kholnā</i> to open	बिजली <i>bijli</i> f. electricity
करवाना <i>karvānā</i> to get done, caused to be done (by someone else)	शुभ <i>śubh</i> good, auspicious (mainly used in the formula शुभ नाम <i>śubh nām</i> 'good name')
काम करना <i>kām karnā</i> to work, to function	कोई दूसरा <i>koi dūsrā</i> another, some other one
चालू करना <i>cālū karnā</i> to turn on, make work	

The encounter continues:

(दोनों आदमी ऊपर जाते हैं। शंकर एक दरवाजा खोलता है।)

शंकर आइए जी।

राजू यह कमरा साफ नहीं है।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा साहब। मैं कमरा अभी साफ़ करवाता हूँ।

राजू क्या यह पुराना पंखा काम करता है?

शंकर जी हाँ, पंखा काम करता है। बहुत अच्छा पंखा है। आजकल ऐसे पंखे नहीं मिलते हैं।

राजू चालू करो।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा साहब।

(शंकर स्विच को “ऑन” करता है [turns on the switch] लेकिन पंखा धूमता नहीं।)

राजू पंखा धूमता नहीं।

शंकर जी हाँ, क्योंकि लाइट नहीं है — बिजली नहीं है।

राजू तुम्हारा नाम क्या है?

शंकर जी, मुझको शंकर कहते हैं। और आपका शुभ नाम?

राजू मेरा नाम शर्मा है। श्री राजकुमार शर्मा।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा नाम है सर। मुझको आपका नाम बहुत पसंद है।

राजू शंकर, तुम ‘बहुत अच्छा’ बहुत कहते हो। लेकिन यह कमरा बहुत अच्छा नहीं है। मुझ को पसंद नहीं है। कोई दूसरा कमरा दिखाओ।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा शर्मा जी। आइए।

(donों आदमी ऊपर जाते हैं। शंकर एक दरवाजा खोलता है।)

Shankar आई जी।

Rajū यह कमरा साफ नहीं है।

Shankar बहुत अच्छा साहब। मैं कमरा अभी साफ़ करवाता हूँ।

Rajū क्या यह पुराना पंखा काम करता है?

Shankar जी हाँ, पंखा काम करता है। बहुत अच्छा पंखा है। आजकल ऐसे पंखे नहीं मिलते हैं।

Rājū cālū karo.

Šankar bahut acchā sāhab.

(Šankar svic ko ‘ān’ kartā hai [turns on the switch] lekin pankhā ghūmtā nahi.)

Rājū pankhā ghūmtā nahi.

Šankar ji हाँ, kyōki läit nahi hai — bijli nahi hai.

Rājū tumhārā nām kyā hai?

Šankar ji, mujhko Šankar kahte hai. aur āpkā śubh nām?

Rājū merā nām Šarmā hai. Śrī Rājkumār Šarmā.

Šankar bahut acchā nām hai sar. mujhko āpkā nām bahut pasand hai.

Rājū Šankar, tum ‘bahut acchā’ bahut kahte ho. lekin yah kamrā bahut acchā nahi hai. mujhko pasand nahi hai. koī dūsrā kamrā dikhāo.

Šankar bahut acchā Šarmā ji. āie.

(Both men go upstairs. Shankar opens a door.)

Shankar Please come in, sir.

Raju This room isn’t clean.

Šankar Very good, sir. I’ll get the room cleaned at once.

Raju Does this old fan work?

Šankar Yes, the fan works. It’s a very good fan. You can’t get fans like this these days.

Raju Turn it on.

(Shankar switches on the fan, but the fan doesn’t turn.)

Raju The fan doesn’t turn.

Šankar Yes, sir [i.e. he agrees that it doesn’t], because there’s no ‘light’ — no electricity.

Raju What’s your name?

Šankar Sir, I’m called Shankar. And what is your good name?

Raju My name is Sharma. Mr Rajkumar Sharma.

Šankar It’s a very good name, sir. I like your name very much.

Raju Shankar, you say ‘very good’ very much. But this room isn’t very good. Show me some other room.

Šankar Very good, Sharma ji. Please come.

In the first part of the dialogue, Raju had been calling Shankar आप āp (as is apparent from such commands as दिखाइए dikhāiye; but in the second part, he calls Shankar तुम tum — the drop in honorific level indicating his declining patience!

Quantities

Expressing quantities or amounts in Hindi is simplicity itself:

एक किलो चावल
ek kilo cāval one kilo of rice

दो चम्मच चीनी
do cammac cīnī two spoons of sugar

तीन कप चाय
tin kap cāy three cups of tea

There's no 'of' between the amount and the measured substance.

Exercise 5a You're doing some shopping in the market. Reply to the shopkeeper's questions:

- १ आइ ! आज आपकी तबियत कैसी है ?
āie! āj āpki tabiyat kaisī hai?
- २ घर में सब लोग ठीक हैं ?
ghar mē sab log thik hā?
- ३ आपको क्या चाहिए ?
āpko kyā cāhie ?
- ४ कितना चाहिए ?
kitnā cāhie ?
- ५ आपको और क्या चाहिए ?
āpko aur kyā cāhie ?
- ६ साबुन वगैरह चाहिए?
sābun vagairah cāhie ?
- ७ चाय, कॉफी, बिस्कुट...?
cāy, kāfī, biskut...?
- ८ आपका घर कहाँ है ?
āpka ghar kahā̄ hai ?
- ९ क्या ये चीजें भी आपकी हैं ?
kyā ye cīzē bhī āpki hā?
- १० आपकी गाड़ी बहुत दूर खड़ी है ?
āpki gārī bahut dūr khārī hai ?

Exercise 5b Translate into Hindi:

- 11 I need three samosas.
They don't like this house, they like the small house.
- 12 I don't like this room, show me another room.
- 13 Where do you live? We live in Old Delhi.
- 14 Your house isn't very far from my house. Come tomorrow.
- 15 I know that [कि *ki*] my teacher doesn't live here.
- 16 I know where your teacher lives.
- 17 Houses in Delhi are quite expensive.
- 18 Grandfather speaks very beautiful Hindi.
- 19 We don't want these black shoes.

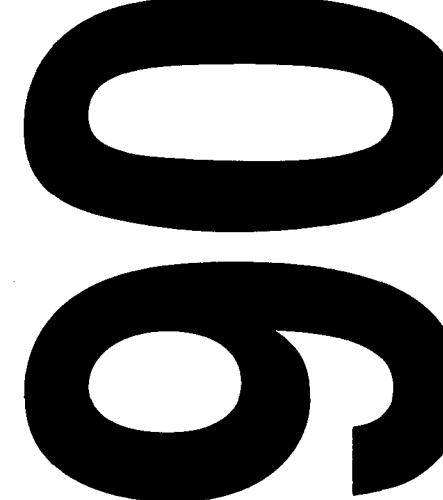
Glossary

आधा <i>ādhā</i> m. half	क्यों <i>kyō</i> why?
ऊपर <i>ūpar</i> up, upstairs	क्योंकि <i>kyōki</i> because
ऐसा <i>aisā</i> such, of this kind	खोलना <i>kholnā</i> to open
कमीज़ <i>qamiz</i> f. shirt	घूमना <i>ghūmnā</i> to turn, revolve
किलो <i>kilo</i> m. kilo, kilogram	चम्मच <i>cammac</i> m. spoon
करवाना <i>karvānā</i> to get done (by someone else), to cause to be done	चाकू <i>cāqū</i> m. knife, penknife
कल <i>kal</i> yesterday; tomorrow	चाबी <i>cābī</i> f. key
काम करना <i>kām karnā</i> to work, to function	चालू करना <i>cālū karnā</i> to turn on
काला <i>kālā</i> black	चावल <i>cāval</i> m. rice
कि <i>ki</i> that (conjunction)	चाहना <i>cāhnā</i> to want, wish
किराया <i>kirāyā</i> m. rent; fare	चाहिए <i>cāhie</i> (is) wanted, needed
कुरता <i>kurtā</i> m. kurta	चीज़ <i>cīz</i> f. thing
के लिए <i>ke lie</i> for	चीनी <i>cīnī</i> f. sugar
कोई <i>koī</i> some, any, a; कोई दूसरा <i>koī dūsrā</i> some other, another	जगह <i>jagah</i> f. place
कौनसा <i>kaunsā</i> which?	जुकाम <i>zukām</i> m. head cold
	जूता <i>jutā</i> m. shoe
	जो <i>jo</i> who, which; the one who/which
	टार्च <i>tārc</i> m. torch, flashlight

टिकिया *tikiyā* f. cake (of soap)
 डाक *dāk* f. post; डाक घर *dāk ghar* m. post office; डाक की
 टिकट *dāk kī tikat* f. stamp
 डिब्बा *dibbā* m. box
 डाढ़ा *dhābā* m. roadside cafe
 तबियत *tabiyat* f. health,
 disposition
 ताज़ा *tāzā* m. fresh
 तो to so, then
 दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m. door
 दिखाना *dikhānā* to show
 दिन *din* m. day
 नीला *nīlā* blue
 पढ़ना *paṛhnā* to read; to study
 पर *par* but
 पसंद *pasand* pleasing (यह मुझको
 पसंद है *yah mujhko pasand*
hai I like this)
 फल *phal* m. fruit
 फलबाज़ा *phalvālā* m. fruitseller
 फोन *fon* m. phone; फोन करना
 fon karnā to phone
 बिजली *bijli* f. electricity
 बिस्कूट *biskut* m. biscuit
 बुखार *bukhār* m. fever
 मालूम *mālūm* (is) known

मिलना *milnā* to meet, to be
 available
 मुश्किल *muśkil* difficult; मुश्किल
 से *muśkil se* barely, hardly
 यानी *yāni* in other words, that
 is to say
 रहना *rahnā* to live, to stay
 रुपया *rupayā* m. rupee
 लाइट *lāit* f. light, electric
 power
 साल *lāl* red
 वगैरह *vagairah* etc., and so on
 शहर *śahar* m. town, city
 शायद *sāyad* maybe, perhaps
 साबून *sābun* m. soap
 शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday
 शुभ *śubh* good, auspicious
 सब कुछ *sab kuch* everything
 -सा -sā '-ish' (suffix that
 qualifies an adjective, as in
 बड़ा-सा *baṛā-sā* 'biggish')
 साड़ी *sārī* f. sari
 साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean
 सौ *sau* m. hundred
 हाथी *hāthī* m. elephant
 होटल *hotäl* m. hotel, restaurant,
 café

आप क्या काम करते हैं?
 ?



what work do you do?

- In this unit you will learn
- how to talk about relationships
 - how to ask about people's ages
 - how to say 'I can' and 'let me'

Language points

- possessives
- verb stem and infinitive

1 Possession and 'to have'

You already know that मेरा *merā* means 'my, mine', आपका *āpkā* means 'your, yours', उसका *uskā* means 'his, her/hers, its', and हमारा *hamārā* means 'our, ours'. So much for showing possession with pronouns; now we need to see how possession works with names and nouns, as in 'Ram's friend' or 'my son's name'.

The phrase राम का कुत्ता *Rām kā kuttā* means 'Ram's dog'; मीना का कुत्ता *Mīnā kā kuttā* means 'Meena's dog'. So the little word का *kā* works like the apostrophe 's' in English. Some more examples:

मनोज का दोस्त	<i>Manoj kā dost</i>	Manoj's friend
गीता का पति	<i>Gītā kā pati</i>	Geeta's husband
राजू का बेटा	<i>Rājū kā betā</i>	Raju's son

This is a very important feature of the language and you should practise it thoroughly! Make some phrases of your own from the items provided:

डाक्टर	<i>dāktar</i>
पिता जी	<i>pītā jī</i>
पड़ोसी	<i>parosī</i>
विद्यार्थी	<i>vidyārthī</i>
मेरी पत्नी	<i>merī patnī</i>



कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>
भाई	<i>bhāī</i>
चाचा	<i>cācā</i>
नाम	<i>nām</i>
पैसा	<i>paisā</i>

You'll have made phrases like मेरी पत्नी का पैसा *merī patnī kā paisā* 'my wife's money'. Great! Now look carefully at these phrases:

लड़के का दोस्त	<i>lārkē kā dost</i>	the boy's friend
लड़के की बहिन	<i>lārkē kī bahin</i>	the boy's sister
लड़के के माँ-बाप	<i>lārkē ke mā̄-bāp</i>	the boy's parents

Two things have happened: लड़का *lārkā* has become oblique, and का *kā* has changed like an adjective to agree with the following word.

So का *kā* is a postposition that works like an adjective! This didn't show up earlier (in राम का कुत्ता *Rām kā kuttā* etc.) because non-inflecting masculine words had been cunningly chosen there. But

from now on we'll have to keep an eye on this का *kā* business. For practice, make up phrases from the following lists, remembering to use oblique versions of words from the left-hand column, and to make का *kā* agree with the word chosen from the right-hand column:

वह आदमी *vah ādmī*

चाबी *cabi*

मेरा दोस्त *merā dost*

बहिन *bhāī*

यह लड़का *yah lārkā*

दो भाई *do bhāī*

फलबाला *phalvālā*

माता *mātā*

उसका बेटा *uskā betā*

कपड़े *kapre*

ये लोग *ye log*

गाड़ी *gārī*

का/की/के
kā kī ke

Do you have brothers and sisters?

Some time back we saw that Hindi doesn't have a verb 'to have', and that ownership of goods and chattels is indicated by के पास *ke pās*:

उसके पास दो चाबियाँ हैं।

uske pās do cābiyā̄ hai. He/she has two keys.

But look at the following and notice the difference:

उसके दो भाई हैं।

uske do bhāī hai. He/she has two brothers.

उसकी दो बहिनें हैं।

uski do bahinē hai. He/she has two sisters.

Yes, describing the 'ownership' or relatives involves का *kā* (or a pronoun like मेरा *merā*, or आपका *āpkā*) rather than के पास *ke pās*. The same applies for parts of the body:



रावण के दस सिर हैं।

Rāvaṇ ke das sir hāī.

Rāvaṇ has ten heads.

मेरा एक भाई है। उसके दो मकान हैं।

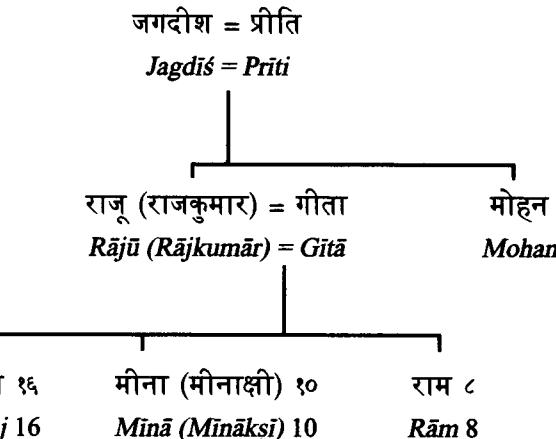
merā ek bhāī hai. uske do makān hai. I have one brother. He has two houses.

मेरी कोई बहिन नहीं।

merī koi bahin nahi. I don't have any sister(s).

2 The Sharma family

Now let's spend some quality time with the Sharmas. Here's their family tree, to remind you of the family relationships.



You have to sort out who's who. Test yourself by covering up the answers on the right of the page, then check your answers.

मनोज का छोटा भाई कौन है ?

Manoj kā chotā bhāī kaun hai?

राम और मनोज की बहिन कौन है ?

Rām aur Manoj ki bahin kaun hai?

बच्चों की माँ का नाम क्या है ?

baccō ki mā̄ kā nām kyā hai?

बच्चों के बाप का नाम क्या है ?

baccō ke bāp kā nām kyā hai?

राम

Rām

मीना

Mīnā

गीता

Geeta

राजू

Rājū

राजू और गीता की बेटी का नाम क्या है ?

Rājū aur Geeta ki betī kā nām kyā hai?

बच्चों के दादा का नाम क्या है ?

baccō ke dādā kā nām kyā hai?

बच्चों की दादी का नाम क्या है ?

baccō ki dādī kā nām kyā hai?

मीना का पूरा नाम क्या है ?

Mīnā kā pūrā nām kyā hai?

बच्चों के चाचा का नाम क्या है ?

baccō ke cācā kā nām kyā hai?

राजू के पिता का नाम क्या है ?

Rājū ke pitā kā nām kyā hai?

And a final question:

राजू के बच्चों के कुत्ते का नाम क्या है ?

Rājū ke baccō ke kutte kā nām kyā hai?

मीना

Mīnā

जगदीश

Jagdiś

प्रीति

Prīti

मीनाक्षी शर्मा

Minākṣī Śarmā

मोहन

Mohan

जगदीश

Jagdiś

मोती

Motī

► How old are you?

Another use of का-के-की *kā-ke-kī* is to give people's ages. It's used with the word साल *sāl* m. 'year':

मनोज सोलह साल का है।

Manoj solah sāl kā hai. Manoj is sixteen ('is of 16 years').

मीना दस साल की है।

Minā das sāl ki hai. Meena is ten.

गीता कितने साल की है ?

Geeta kitne sāl ki hai? How old is Geeta?

राम कितने साल का है ?

Rām kitne sāl kā hai? How old is Ram?

राम आठ साल का है।

Rām āṭh sāl kā hai. Ram is eight.

The word for 'age' is उम्र *umra* (f.), often pronounced 'umar'.

आपकी कितनी उम्र है ?

āpkī kitni umra hai? How old are you?

Someone is here

The word कोई *koi* 'any' also means 'anyone' or 'someone' (and कोई नहीं *koi nahi* means 'no one'). कोई *koi* can also refer to inanimates, as in कोई दुकान *koi dukān* 'some shop (or other)'. Its oblique form is किसी *kisi*, as in किसी का बेटा *kisi kā betā* 'someone's son'.

Don't confuse किसी *kisi* with किस *kis*, which is the oblique of कौन *kaun* and of क्या *kyā*: किसको *kisko* 'to whom/what?', किसका भाई *kiskā bhāī* 'whose brother?'

कोई है ?

koi hai? Anyone there?

घर में कोई नहीं है ।

ghar mē koi nahi hai. There's nobody in the house.

किसी के घर में कोई चूहा रहता था ।

kisi ke ghar mē koi cūhā rahatā thā. In somebody's house there lived a certain mouse.

Here's a very useful little phrase:

कोई बात नहीं ।

koi bāt nahi. Never mind, it doesn't matter, don't mention it.

Used with a number, कोई *koi* means 'about', just as 'some' does in English:

कोई बारह गाड़ियाँ

koi bārah gāriyā some twelve cars

As we've already seen, कुछ *kuch* means 'some' (कुछ पैसा *kuch paisā* some money) or 'something'. It doesn't change in the oblique.

क्या मेज पर कुछ है ?

kyā mez par kuch hai? Is there something on the table?

हमको कुछ दूध चाहिए ।

hamko kuch dūdh cāhie. We need some milk.

घर में कुछ नहीं है ।

ghar mē kuch nahi hai. There's nothing in the house.

कछ लोगों के पास कछ नहीं है ।

Manoj introduces Pratap to his father

मनोज प्रताप, मेरे पिताजी से मिलो ॥

प्रताप नमस्ते जी ।

राजू हलो प्रताप, क्या हाल है ?²

प्रताप ठीक है, शुक्रिया ।

राजू तुम्हारी उम्र कितनी है प्रताप ?

प्रताप मैं इक्कीस साल का हूँ ।

राजू तुम्हारे कितने भाई और बहिनें हैं ?

प्रताप मेरा एक भाई है, मेरी कोई बहिन नहीं है ।

Manoj *Pratāp, mere pitājī se milo.*¹

Pratāp *namaste jī.*

Rajū *halo Pratāp, kyā hāl hai?*²

Pratāp *thik hai, śukriyā.*

Rajū *tumhārī umr kitni hai Pratāp?*

Pratāp *maī ikkīs sāl kā hū.*

Rajū *tumhāre kitne bhāī aur bahinē hai?*

Pratāp *merā ek bhāī hai, merī koi bahin nahi hai.*

Manoj Pratap, meet my father.

Pratap Hello ji.

Raju Hello, Pratap, how's things?

Pratap Fine, thank you.

Raju How old are you, Pratap?

Pratap I'm twenty-one.

Raju How many brothers and sisters do you have?

Pratap I have one brother, I don't have any sister(s).

¹ मिलना *milnā* 'to meet' uses the linking word से *se* 'with' — पिताजी से मिलो *pitājī se milo* 'Meet (with) Father'.

² क्या हाल है? *kyā hāl hai?* 'How's things?' (lit. 'what's the condition?')

This is a very common way of asking how someone is — a more colloquial equivalent to तुम कैसे हो? *tum kaise ho?* 'How are you?'

► Some questions for you

आपके कितने भाई हैं ?
āpke kitne bhāī hāī?

आपकी कितनी बहिनें हैं ?
āpkī kitnī bahinē hāī?

क्या आपके घर में कोई कुत्ता है ?
kyā āpke ghar mē koi kuttā hāī?

► Practise what you've learnt

We're going to have another look at the present-tense verbs that we met earlier. Match the subject with the activity:

फलवाला

phalvālā fruit-seller

अध्यापिका

adhyāpikā teacher (female)

लेखक

lekhak writer

दर्जी

darzī tailor

विद्यार्थी

vidyārthī student

ट्रेन

tren train

डाक्टर

dāktar doctor

दुकानदार

dukāndār shopkeeper

किताबें लिखता है।

kitābē likhtā hāī.

कालेज में पढ़ता है।

kālej mē par̄htā hāī.

फल बेचता है।

phal bectā hāī.

मरीजों का इलाज करता है।

marizō kā ilāj kartā hāī.

कालेज में पढ़ाती है।

kālej mē par̄hātī hāī.

माल बेचता है।

māl bectā hāī.

कपड़े बनाता है।

kaprē banātā hāī.

तेज़ चलती है।

tez caltī hāī.

आप मेरी हिन्दी समझ सकते हैं ?

āp merī hindī samajh sakte hāī? You can understand my Hindi?

मैं यह काम नहीं कर सकता।

mai yah kām nahī kar saktā. I can't do this work.

यह कैसे हो सकता है ?

yah kaise ho sakta hāī? How can this be?

Now turn these 'I do' sentences into 'I can do' sentences, following this example:

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ।

mai hindī boltā hū.

I speak Hindi.

मैं हिन्दी बोल सकता हूँ।

mai hindī bol saktā hū.

I can speak Hindi.

१ हम सिनेमा जाते हैं। *ham sinemā jātē hāī.*

२ चाचा जी घर पर रहते हैं। *cācā ji ghar par rahte hāī.*

३ मैं अध्यापक से पूछता हूँ। *mai adhyāpak se pūchtā hū.*

४ बच्चे बगीचे में खेलते हैं। *bacce bagīcē mē khelte hāī.*

५ मैं अखबार पढ़ती हूँ। *mai akhbār par̄htī hū.*

६ हम बच्चों को सब कुछ बताते हैं। *ham baccō ko sab kuch batātē hāī.*

७ तुम शराब नहीं पीते हो। *tum śarāb nahī pīte ho.*

८ वह कुछ नहीं कहता है। *vah kuch nahī kahtā hāī.*

► There's nobody in the house

Manoj is talking to Pratap. He thinks they're alone!

मनोज एक सिग्रेट पियो प्रताप ! घर में कोई नहीं है।

प्रताप नहीं, मैं सिग्रेट नहीं पीता। तुम पी सकते हो।

मनोज हाँ मैं रोज़ दो-तीन सिग्रेट पीता हूँ।

प्रताप ये सिग्रेट तुम्हारे हैं ?

मनोज नहीं, ये मेरे बाप के हैं।

प्रताप उनके सिग्रेट क्यों पीते हो ?

► 3 You can go

'You can go' is आप जा सकते हैं *āp jā sakte hāī*. This features the special verb **सकना** *saknā* — special because it never stands alone, but always follows the stem of the main verb (here जा *jā* from जाना *jānā* 'to go').

मनोज मेरे पास पैसे नहीं हैं। मैं सिग्रेट नहीं खरीद सकता।
राजू (दूसरे कमरे से) मनोज! ओ मनोज! तुम कहाँ हो?
प्रताप तुम्हारे पिताजी की आवाज़!
 (राजू कमरे में आता है)

राजू अरे, यह क्या? वह तुम्हारे हाथ में क्या है मनोज?
मनोज पिताजी! देखिए, यह प्रताप का सिग्रेट है...
राजू मनोज, बकवास मत कर। प्रताप, तुम जा सकते हो।
मनोज लेकिन... लेकिन...

Manoj ek sigret piyo Pratap! ghar mē koī nahī hai.

Pratap nahī, maī sigret nahī pītā. tum pī sakte ho.

Manoj hā maī roz do-tīn sigret pītā hū.

Pratap ye sigret tumhāre hai?

Manoj nahī, ye mere bāp ke haī.

Pratap unke sigret kyō pīte ho?

Manoj mere pās paise nahī haī. maī sigret nahī kharid saktā.

Rajū (दूसरे कमरे से) Manoj! O Manoj! tum kahā ho?

Pratap tumhāre pītājī ki āvāz!

(Rajū kamre mē ātā hai)

Rajū are, yah kyā? vah tumhāre hāth mē kyā hai Manoj?

Manoj pītājī! dekhie, yah Pratap kā sigret hai.

Rajū Manoj, bakvās mat kar. Pratap, tum jā sakte ho.

Manoj lekin... lekin...

Manoj Have a cigarette, Pratap! there's no one in the house.

Pratap No, I don't smoke. You can.

Manoj Yes, I smoke two or three cigarettes every day.

Pratap These cigarettes are yours?

Manoj No, they're my dad's.

Pratap Why do you smoke his cigarettes?

Manoj I don't have any money. I can't buy cigarettes.

Raju [from another room] Manoj! Oh Manoj! Where are you?

Pratap Your father's voice!

[Raju comes into the room.]

Raju Hey, what's this? What's that in your hand, Manoj?

Manoj Father! Look, this is Pratap's cigarette...
Raju Manoj, don't talk nonsense. Pratap, you can go.
Manoj But... but...

► True or false?

Are these statements right (सही sahi 'correct', सच sac 'true') or wrong (गलत galat)? Answers below.

सही sahi गलत galat

- | | | |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 प्रताप सिग्रेट पीना चाहता है। | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Pratap sigret pīnā cāhtā hai. | | |
| 2 मनोज सोचता है कि राजू घर पर नहीं है। | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Manoj soctā hai ki Rājū ghar par nahī hai. | | |
| 3 मनोज के पास उसके पिता के सिग्रेट हैं। | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Manoj ke pās uske pitā ke sigret haī. | | |
| 4 मनोज हमेशा सच बोलता है। | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Manoj hameśā sac boltā hai. | | |
| 5 राजू के सिग्रेट प्रताप के हाथ में हैं। | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Rājū ke sigret Pratap ke hāth mē haī. | | |
| 6 राजू कहता है कि दोनों लड़के जा सकते हैं। | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Rājū kahtā hai ki donō lārke jā sakte haī. | | |

Answers: Only 2 and 3 are true.

4 Let me go!

'Let me go' is मुझको जाने दो mujhko jāne do. The sense 'to let, to allow' uses the verb देना denā, whose literal meaning is 'to give'; it's like saying 'give me [permission] to go'. As you can see in मुझको जाने दो mujhko jāne do, it's used with the infinitive of the main verb. The infinitive ends -e in this construction (here, the infinitive जाना jānā changes to oblique जाने jāne), and the person who is 'allowed to do' takes को ko.

हम बच्चों को खेलने देते हैं।

ham baccō ko khelne dete haī. We let the kids play.

पर हम उनको सड़क पर खेलने नहीं देते ।
par ham unko sarak par khelne nahī̄ dete.

But we don't let them play on the road.

हमको सोचने दीजिए ।
hamko socne dijie.

Please let us think.

मनोज को बाहर जाने दो ।
Manoj ko bāhar jāne do.

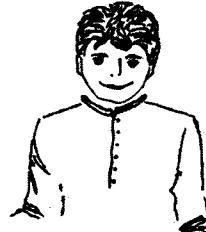
Let Manoj go out.

Manoj has a dream

Manoj is dreaming. In this dream, his mother is talking to his father, trying to persuade him to go easy on Manoj and to let him do all the things he wants to do:

मनोज का सपना ।

गीता — “मनोज के बाप, मनोज को सिग्रेट पीने दो, उसको शराब भी पीने दो । वह बहुत अच्छा लड़का है; वह स्कूल में बहुत ध्यान से पढ़ता है । उसको गाड़ी क्यों नहीं चलाने देते हो ? और हाँ, छुटियों में उसको अमरीका जाने दो !”



Manoj kā sapnā

Gitā — ‘Manoj ke bāp, Manoj ko sigret pīne do, usko śarāb bhi pīne do. vah bahut acchā larkā hai; vah skūl mē bahut dhyān se paṛhtā hai. usko gārī kyō nahī̄ calāne dete ho? aur hā, chuttiyō mē usko amrikā jāne do!’

Manoj's dream

Geeta — ‘Manoj's father, let Manoj smoke, and let him drink too. He's a very good boy; he studies very hard at school. Why don't you let him drive the car? Oh and yes, let him go to America in the holidays! ’

Turning ‘I want to’ into ‘let me’

Here you have to convert the ‘I want to’ sentences into ‘let me’ sentences, following the example:

मैं घर जाना चाहता हूँ ।

mai ghar jānā cāhtā hū̄.

I want to go home.

मुझको घर जाने दीजिए / दो ।

mujhko ghar jāne dijie / do

Let me go home.

१ मैं अमरीका जाना चाहता हूँ ।

mai amrikā jānā cāhtā hū̄.

२ मैं गाड़ी चलाना चाहती हूँ ।

mai gārī calānā cāhtā hū̄.

३ मैं खाना खाना चाहता हूँ ।

mai khānā khānā cāhtā hū̄.

४ मैं काम करना चाहती हूँ ।

mai kām karnā cāhtā hū̄.

५ मैं आपसे बात करना चाहता हूँ ।

mai āpsē bāt karnā cāhtā hū̄.

Continue doing the same with sentences 6–10. These feature people other than ‘I’, as in this example:

वह सोना चाहता है ।

vah sonā cāhtā hai.

He wants to sleep.

उसको सोने दीजिए / दो ।

usko sone dijie / do

Let him sleep.

६ वह सिग्रेट पीना चाहता है ।

vah sigret pīnā cāhtā hai.

७ हम अध्यापक से कुछ कहना चाहते हैं ।

ham adhyāpak se kuch kahnā cāhte hai.

८ वह हिन्दी सीखना चाहती है ।

vah hindī sikhnā cāhti hai.

९ बच्चे समोसे खाना चाहते हैं ।

bacce samose khānā cāhte hai.

१० हम यहाँ रहना चाहते हैं ।

ham yahā̄ rahnā cāhte hai.

Repeating formulas like this is a very efficient way of learning new expressions. Say them over and over again, out loud. And try making up new examples, choosing any new verbs from the glossary.

Exercise 6a Answer these questions about occupations:

- १ फलवाला क्या बेचता है? *phalvālā kyā bectā hai?*
- २ अखबारवाला क्या बेचता है? *akhbārvālā kyā bectā hai?*
- ३ दूधवाला क्या बेचता है? *dūdhvālā kyā bectā hai?*
- ४ अध्यापक क्या करता है? *adhyāpak kyā kartā hai?*
- ५ स्कूल में बच्चे क्या करते हैं? *skūl mē bacce kyā karte hai?*
- ६ घर पर बच्चे क्या करते हैं? *ghar par bacce kyā karte hai?*
- ७ ड्राइवर क्या करता है? *drāivar kyā kartā hai?*
- ८ दुकानदार क्या करता है? *dukāndār kyā kartā hai?*

Exercise 6b Answer these questions addressed to you:

- ९ आप कहाँ रहते हैं / रहती हैं? *āp kahā̄ rāhte haī / rāhti haī?*
- १० आप क्या काम करते हैं / करती हैं? *āp kyā kām kārte haī / kartī haī?*
- ११ क्या आप सितार बजाते हैं / बजाती हैं? *kyā āp sitār bajātē haī / bajātī haī?*
- १२ आप कौनसा अखबार पढ़ते / पढ़ती हैं? *āp kaunsā akhbār pārhtē haī / pārhtī haī?*
- १३ आप कितनी भाषाएँ बोलते हैं / बोलती हैं? *āp kitnī bhāṣāē̄ bolte haī / boltī haī?*

Exercise 6c Translate the following:

- १४ Jagdish reads Manoj's newspaper.
- १५ My two brothers work in a big office.
- १६ My sister drives my brother's car.
- १७ He only speaks Hindi, he doesn't speak English.
- १८ Our teachers teach three languages.
- १९ His children play cricket in the garden.

20 Our parents don't eat meat.

21 Where do you work? Where do you live?

22 What does your younger ('little') brother do?

23 How many languages does your mother speak?

Glossary

अखबार *akhbār* m. newspaper

अखबारवाला *akhbārvālā* m.

newspaper seller

अध्यापिका *adhyāpikā* f. teacher

आवाज़ *āvāz* f. voice; sound

इलाज *ilāj* m. cure, treatment

उम्र *umra, umar* f. age

ओ o oh!

काकी के *kā-kī-ke* (shows possession, like English 's)

कोई *koi* any, some; somebody;

कोई नहीं *koi nahī̄* nobody

किसी *kisī* oblique of कोई *koi*

क्रिकेट *kriket* m. cricket

खरीदना *kharidnā* to buy

खेलना *khelnā* to play (a game)

ट्रेन *tren* f. train

ड्राइवर *drāivar* m. driver

दर्जी *darzī* m. tailor

दादा *dādā* m. grandfather

(father's father)

दादी *dādī* f. grandmother

(father's mother)

दुकानदार *dukāndār* m.

shopkeeper

दूध *dūdh* m. milk

दूधवाला *dūdhvālā* m. milkman

देना *denā* to give; to allow to,

let (with oblique infinitive:

हमको जाने दो *hamko jāne do*

'Let us go')

बकवास *bakvās* f. nonsense, idle chatter

बच्चा *baccā* m. child

बाप *bāp* m. dad

बेचना *bechnā* to sell

भाषा *bhāṣā* f. language

मरीज़ *mariz* m. patient

माँ *mā̄* f. mother; माँ-बाप *mā̄-bāp* m. pl. parents

माल *māl* m. goods, stuff

रोज़ *roz* every day

लिखना *likhnā* to write

लेखक *lekhak* m. writer

सकना *saknā* to be able (with verb stem: तुम जा सकते हो *tum jā sakte ho* 'You can go')

सच *sac* m. truth; adj. true

सड़क *sarak* f. road, street

सपना *sapnā* m. dream; सपना देखना *sapnā dekhnā* to dream, to have a dream

साल *sāl* m. year

सोचना *socnā* to think

सोना *sonā* to sleep

हाल *hāl* m. condition, state (in क्या हाल है? *kyā hāl hai?* 'How's things? How are you?')

the past

भूत-काल *bhūt-kāl*

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about memories and routine events in the past
- how to add nuance to what you say

Language points

- past imperfective tenses
- direct objects
- use of emphatics

► 1 In the past

So far, we've been working in the present all the time. Moving into the past is very easy. It involves these words from the verb 'to be':

was	were
MASCULINE	था <i>thā</i>
FEMININE	थी <i>thī</i>

We can use this tense in two ways. Firstly, here's 'was/were' alone:

कल सोमवार था ।

kal somvār thā. Yesterday was Monday.

कल आप घर पर थे ।

kal āp ghar par the. Yesterday you were at home.

कल वह बीमार थी ।

kal vah bimār thī. Yesterday she was ill.

कल प्रीति जी कहाँ थीं ?

kal Prīti jī kahā thī? Where was Priti ji yesterday?

Unlike है *hai* and हैं *hai*, था-थे-थी-थीं *thā-the-thī-thī* distinguish gender as well as number, so we know that the second sentence above refers to males (or one male, honorific plural), and the third to a female.

The second use is in the 'imperfective' tense used for routine actions, and introduced in section 4.3. Simply changing है *hai* to था *thā* converts present into past — 'I used to...'.

PRESENT

मैं यहाँ रहता हूँ ।

mai yahā̄ rahtā hū̄.

I live here.

PAST

मैं यहाँ रहता था ।

mai yahā̄ rahtā thā.

I used to live here.

दादा जी वाराणसी में रहते थे ।

dādā jī vārāṇasī mē rahte the. Grandpa used to live in Varanasi.

वे एक दुकान में काम करते थे ।

ve ek dukān mē kām karte the. He used to work in a shop.

उनकी बहिनें घर में खेलती थीं ।

unkī bahinē ghar mē khelti thi. His sisters used to play at home.

उनके भाई स्कूल जाते थे ।

unke bhāī skūl jāte the. His brothers used to go to school.

वे बहुत ध्यान से पढ़ते थे ।

ve bahut dhyān se parhte the. They used to study very hard.

► Memories of Varanasi

Jagdish Sharma is in nostalgic mood and has begun writing some memories of his childhood. There are notes to help you follow what he's written, and later there'll be some questions for you to answer.

किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge

सैर *sair* f. trip

जमाना *zamānā* m. period, time

याद *yād* f. memory

कमी *kamī* f. lack, shortage

ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā* cold; ठंडा-सा

आँगन *āṅgan* m. courtyard

ṭhaṇḍā-sā coldish

नदी *nadī* f. river

हवा *havā* f. air, breeze

शाम *sām* f. evening

चलना *calnā* to move, blow, flow

नाव *nāv* f. boat

छत *chat* f. roof

हम लोग¹ वाराणसी में रहते थे । हमारा घर गंगा² के किनारे पर था । बड़ा-सा³ घर था । हम तीन भाई थे, और चार बहिनें । हम तीनों⁴ लड़के स्कूल जाते थे; लड़कियाँ घर पर रहती थीं । उस ज़माने में बहुत कम लड़कियाँ स्कूल जाती थीं । पैसे की कमी थी, और लोग यह सोचते थे कि औरतों की जगह घर में है ।

पिताजी स्कूल में पढ़ाते थे — लेकिन हमारे स्कूल में नहीं । उनका स्कूल हमारे घर से काफ़ी दूर था । वे साइकिल से स्कूल जाते थे । सब लोग उनको “भास्टर जी”⁵ कहते थे । हम उनको “पापा” कहते थे और माताजी को “माँ” कहते थे ।⁶

कितना सुंदर मकान था हमारा ! कोई बड़ी चान नहीं था, लेकिन हम बच्चे लोग आँगन में खूब खेलते थे । कभी कभी हम सड़कों पर या नदी के किनारे पर भी खेलते थे । शाम को हम नदी पर नाव में सैर करते थे । ठंडी-सी हवा चलती थी । रात को हम छत पर सोते थे । मुझको उन दिनों की यादें बहुत आती हैं ।⁷



ham log¹ vārāṇasī mē rahte the. hamārā ghar gangā² ke kināre par thā. baṛā-sa³ ghar thā. ham tīn bhāī the, aur cār bahinē. ham tīnō⁴ larke skūl jāte the; larkiyā ghar par rahti thi. us zamāne mē bahut kam larkiyā skūl jāti thi. paise kī kamī thi, aur log yah sochte the ki auratō kī jagah ghar mē hai.

pitājī skūl mē paṛhāte the — lekin hamāre skūl mē nahī. unkā skūl hamāre ghar se kāfī dūr thā. ve sāikil se skūl jāte the. sab log unko ‘māstar ji’⁵ kahte the. ham unko ‘pāpā’ kahte the aur mātāji ko ‘mā’ kahte the.⁶

kitnā sundar makān thā hamārā! koī bagicā nahī thā, lekin ham bacce log āgan mē khüb khelte the. kabhi kabhi ham sarakō par yā nadi ke kināre par bhī khelte the. sām ko ham nadi par nāv mē sair karte the. ṭhaṇḍi-si havā calti thi. rāt ko ham chat par sote the. mujhko un dinō kī yādē bahut atī hai.⁷

We used to live in Varanasi. Our house was on the bank of the Ganges. It was a biggish house. We were three brothers and four sisters. All three of us boys used to go to school; the girls used to stay at home. In those days very few girls went to school. Money was short, and people used to think that women's place was in the home.

Father taught in a school — but not in our school. His school was quite far from our house. He used to go to school by bicycle. Everyone called him 'Master ji'. We called him 'Papa' and we called mother 'Ma'.

What a beautiful house we had! There wasn't a garden, but we children used to play to our hearts' content in the courtyard. Sometimes we would play on the roads or on the riverbank. In the evening we used to take a ride in a boat on the river. A cool breeze would blow. At night we used to sleep on the roof. I think of those days a lot.

Notes

- 1 हम लोग *ham log* 'we, we people, we guys' — the word लोग *log* can indicate a group; compare बच्चे लोग *bacche log* 'the children, the kids'.
- 2 गंगा *gangā* — like all rivers (and the word for 'river', नदी *nadi*), the Ganges is feminine.
- 3 The suffix -सा -सी -से -sā -sī -se is similar to '-ish' in English: बड़ा-सा घर *baṛā-sā ghar* 'a biggish house', अच्छी-सी गाड़ी *acchi-sī gāṛī* 'quite a good car', अच्छे-से लोग *acche-se log* 'quite decent people'.
- 4 तीनों *tinō* — 'all three'; this is a special 'inclusive' use of the oblique plural. Compare दोनों *donō* 'both', चारों *cārō* 'all four'.
- 5 'Master ji' is a title used for schoolmasters (and for tailors — masters of their craft).
- 6 When a plural subject comprises both males and females, as here, the verb is masculine.
- 7 Literally 'memories of those days come to me a lot' — a typical मुझको *mujhko* expression.

Some question about Jagdish's memories

- १ जगदीश जी किस शहर में रहते थे ?
Jagdiś ji kis śahar mē rahate the?
- २ उनके परिवार में कितने बच्चे थे ?
unke parivār mē kitne bacche the?
- ३ क्या उनकी बहिनें स्कूल जाना नहीं चाहती थीं ?
kyā unkī bahinē skūl jānā nahī cahtī thī?
- ४ जगदीश के पिता का स्कूल कहाँ था ?
Jagdiś ke pitā kā skūl kahā̄ thā?
- ५ क्या जगदीश के पिता जी पैदल स्कूल जाते थे ?
kyā Jagdiś ke pitā ji paidal skūl jātē the?

Did you know?

Modern Hindi has developed within the last 200 years or so on the basis of a dialect called Khari Boli (खड़ी बोली), whose original home is the region around Delhi. Many other dialects are still spoken within the 'Hindi belt' of northern India; two of them, Braj Bhasha (ब्रजभाषा) and Awadhi (अवधी), were important literary languages between about AD 1500 and 1850, and poetry from this period is still well-loved today.

2 Getting specific

The word को *ko* means 'to':

यह खत गीता को दो ।

yah khat Gitā ko do. Give this letter to Geeta.

टिकट मुझको दीजिए ।

tikat mujhko dijie. Please give the ticket to me.

हम बच्चों को पैसे देते हैं ।

ham baccō ko paise dete hā̄. We give money to the children.

In these sentences the 'thing given' (e.g. the letter) is the direct object and the recipient (e.g. Geeta) is the indirect object. It's the recipient who is marked with को *ko*.

Usually, को *ko* isn't needed at all with a direct object. In the following, the direct objects are फल *phal* 'fruit' and पानी *pānī* 'water' respectively:

फल खाओ, पानी पियो ।

phal khāo, pānī piyo. Eat fruit, drink water.

The meaning here is a general one — 'any fruit, any water'. But if a more specific fruit/water is meant, को *ko* is added (and 'the' is used in English):

फल को खाओ, पानी को पियो ।

phal ko khāo, pānī ko piyo. Eat the fruit, drink the water.

The contrast between having को *ko* and not having it isn't always this clearcut: but in general को *ko* tends to be added to an object that's in some way specific or individualized. For this reason, references to people (and other specific creatures such as animals!) normally do take को *ko* —

बच्चों को घर में बुलाओ ।

baccō ko ghar mē bulāo. Call the children inside the house.

मोती को भत मारो !

Motī ko mat māro! Don't hit Moti!

उन लोगों को देखो !

Un logō ko dekho! Look at those people!

Marking an object with *को ko* doesn't necessarily change the meaning much at all. The two sentences यह खत पढ़ो *yah khat parho* and इस खत को पढ़ो *is khat ko parho* both translate as 'read this letter', even though the second version suggests a greater focus on the individual letter (and maybe a closer scrutiny of it also).

3 A shortcut

The word *को ko* is a multi-purpose tool; we saw some of its uses in Unit 5. Whereas English expressions about a person tend to have that person as the grammatical subject (as if individuals were the centre of the universe of experience), Hindi prefers to have the *experience itself* as the subject:

आपको बुखार है ।

āpko bukhār hai. You have a fever.

तुमको जुकाम है ।

tumko zukām hai. You have a cold.

मुझको मालूम है कि आपको क्या चाहिए।

mujhko mālūm hai ki āpko kyā cāhie I know what you need.

किसको मालूम है कि यह क्या है ?

kisko mālūm hai ki yah kyā hai? Who knows what this is?

उनको नए जूते चाहिए ।

unko nae jūte cāhie. They need new shoes.

हमको यह तस्वीर पसंद है ।

hamko yah tasvīr pasand hai. We like this picture.

मुझको लिखने का शौक है ।

mujhko likhne kā śauq hai. I'm fond of writing

उनको संगीत का शौक है ।

unko sangīt kā śauq hai. They are keen on music.

This type of construction, with its heavy reliance on *को ko*, is so common that the 'pronoun + *को ko*' combination has an alternative short form: for example, मुझको *mujhko* has the alternative मुझे *mujhe*. Only आपको *āpko* refuses to be shortened. These pairs of forms are completely interchangeable: it makes no difference at all which member of a pair you choose to use.

मुझको <i>mujhko</i>	=	मुझे <i>mujhe</i>
---------------------	---	-------------------

हमको <i>hamko</i>	=	हमें <i>hamē</i>
-------------------	---	------------------

तुझको <i>tujhko</i>	=	तुझे <i>tujhe</i>
---------------------	---	-------------------

तुमको <i>tumko</i>	=	तुम्हें <i>tumhē</i>
--------------------	---	----------------------

इसको <i>isko</i>	=	इसे <i>ise</i>
------------------	---	----------------

इनको <i>inko</i>	=	इन्हें <i>inhē</i>
------------------	---	--------------------

उसको <i>usko</i>	=	उसे <i>use</i>
------------------	---	----------------

उनको <i>unko</i>	=	उन्हें <i>unhē</i>
------------------	---	--------------------

किसको <i>kisko</i>	=	किसे <i>kise</i>
--------------------	---	------------------

किनको <i>kinko</i>	=	किन्हें <i>kinhē</i>
--------------------	---	----------------------

Remember that *किस kis* (singular) and *किन kin* (plural) are the oblique forms of *कौन kaun* 'who' and *क्या kyā* 'what':

किसे मालूम है कि राम कहाँ है ?

kise mālūm hai ki Rām kahā hai? Who knows where Ram is?

तुम पत्र किन्हें लिखते हो?

tum patr kinhē likhte ho? To whom [plural] do you write letters?

The main point to bear in mind here is that many expressions in Hindi are based on a मुझको *mujhko* pattern rather than a मैं *mai* pattern. You need to develop the skill of using both types of sentences, switching freely between one and the other. For example, these two sentences have the same meaning:

मुझे मालूम है कि वह कौन है ।

mujhe mālūm hai ki vah kaun hai. I know who he is.

मैं जानता हूँ कि वह कौन है ।

mai jāntā hū ki vah kaun hai. I know who he is.

When getting to grips with the मुझको *mujhko* pattern, think of the individual as being subjected to the effects of experiences from the world around him or her:

मुझे हिन्दी आती है।
mujhe hindī ātī hai.

मुझे मालूम है कि तुम कौन हो।
mujhe mālūm hai ki tum kaun ho.



मुझे तुम्हारा चेहरा बहुत पसंद है।
mujhe tumhārā cehrā bahut pasand hai!

मुझे गाने का बहुत शौक है।
mujhe gāne kā bahut śauq hai.

Raju recalls some childhood experiences

While reading this passage, look out for two things in particular: 'used to' verbs describing habitual things in the past, and the numerous constructions using को *ko*.

बचपन में मुझे पत्र लिखने का बहुत शौक था। कभी कभी मैं प्रधान मंत्री को भी पत्र लिखता था। मुझे मालूम नहीं था कि उन्हें मेरे पत्र पसंद थे कि नहीं, क्योंकि वे जवाब नहीं देते थे। एक समय मेरा छोटा भाई कई महीनों तक बीमार था। उसे बहुत बुखार था इसलिए हमें बहुत चिंता थी। मुझको मालूम था कि उसे दवा की ज़रूरत थी लेकिन हमारे पास पैसे कहाँ थे। लोग कहते थे कि प्रधान मंत्री बहुत दयालु आदमी हैं। इस लिए...

आदरणीय प्रधान मंत्री जी।

सादर नमस्ते। मुझे मालूम है कि आपको बहुत काम है लेकिन हमें बहुत चिंता है क्योंकि मेरे छोटे भाई को बुखार है। हमारे पास पैसे नहीं हैं। क्या आप कुछ कर सकते हैं? हमको आप पर पूरा भरोसा है। शुभकामनाओं सहित आपका राजकुमार शर्मा

bacpan mē mujhe patr likhne kā bahut śauq thā. kabī kabī maī pradhān mantri ko bhī patr likhtā thā. mujhe mālūm nahī thā ki unhē mere patr pasand the ki nahī, kyōki ve javāb nahī dete the. ek samay merā chotā bhāī kai mahinō tak bimār thā. use bahut bukhār thā islie hamē bahut cintā thi. mujhko mālūm thā ki use davā kī zarūrat thi lekin hamāre pās paise kahā the. log kahte the ki pradhān mantri bahut dayālu admī hāī. is lie...

ādaraṇīy pradhān mantri jī,
sādar namaste. mujhe mālūm hai ki āpko bahut kām hai lekin hamē bahut cintā hai kyōki mere choṭe bhāī ko bukhār hai. hamāre pās paise nahī hāī. kyā āp kuch kar sakte hāī? hamko āp par pūrā bharosā hai.
śubhkāmnāō sahit
āpkā Rājkumār Śarmā.

In childhood I was very fond of writing letters. Sometimes I would even write letters to the Prime Minister. I didn't know if he liked my letters or not, because he used not to reply. One time my younger brother was ill for several months. He had a high fever and so we were very worried. I knew that he needed medicine but we didn't have the money [literally 'where was the money?']. People used to say that the Prime Minister was a very kindly man. So...

Dear [literally ‘respected’] Prime Minister ji,

Respectful greetings. I know that you have a lot of work but we are very anxious because my younger brother has fever. We don’t have any money. Can you do something? We have full trust in you.

With best wishes, yours, Rajkumar Sharma.

See Unit 8 for the Prime Minister’s reply!

4 Adding emphasis

Three little words can add various kinds of subtle emphasis to a Hindi sentence. We have already met भी *bhī* ‘also, even’, and we saw how fussy it was about its position in the word order (see 3.2). We now add the other two — ही *hī* ‘only’ etc., and तो *to* ‘as for...’. All three follow the words or phrases that they emphasize, but they are *not* postpositions (see 3.2), so they don’t involve any change of case.

Firstly, भी *bhī* means ‘also’, ‘even’, etc.; it gives an *inclusive* emphasis. Look out for the effect of भी *bhī* in these sentences:

अजय पतला है; वह लंबा भी है।

Ajay patlā hai; vah lambā bhī hai. Ajay is thin; he’s *tall* too.

अजय पतला है; विजय भी पतला है।

Ajay patlā hai; Vijay bhī patlā hai. Ajay is thin; *Vijay* is thin too.

In the first sentence, भी *bhī* emphasizes लंबा *lambā*; in the second it emphasizes the name विजय *Vijay*. Where does the emphasis fall in the following?

मुझे बुखार है। मुझे जुकाम भी है।

mujhe bukhār hai. mujhe zukām bhī hai. I’ve got a fever. I’ve got a cold too.

मुझे बुखार है। तुम्हें भी बुखार है।

mujhe bukhār hai. tumhē bhī bukhār hai. I’ve got a fever.

You’ve got a fever too.

Yes, it’s on जुकाम *zukām* and तुम्हें *tumhē* respectively. So you see again how sensitive the position of भी *bhī* is. The same applies with our second emphatic word, ही *hī*, which means ‘only’, or stresses what’s just been said; it gives an *exclusive* emphasis.

मैं चाय ही पीता हूँ।

mai cāy hī pītā hūँ. I only drink tea (nothing but tea).

मैं ही चाय पीता हूँ।

mai hī cāy pītā hūँ. Only I drink tea (or ‘I drink tea’).

यह चाय बहुत ही अच्छी है!

yah cāy bahut hī acchī hai! This tea is *really* good!

Thirdly: तो *to* emphasizes one thing by implying a contrast to another; this *contrastive* emphasis may be ‘explicit’, in the sense that it can name both parts of the contrast:

अजय तो ठीक है, पर विजय थोड़ा पागल है।

Ajay to thik hai, par Vijay thora pāgal hai. Ajay’s OK, but Vijay’s a bit crazy.

...or it may be merely implied, leaving a ‘but...’ hanging in the air:

अजय तो ठीक है।

Ajay to thik hai. Ajay’s OK (implication: ‘but that other guy...’).

कमीज़ तो काफ़ी सुंदर है।

qamīz to kāfī sundar hai. The shirt’s quite nice (implication: ‘but the jacket’s a nightmare!’).

कमीज़ सुंदर तो है।

qamīz sundar to hai. The shirt is quite nice (implication: ‘but have you seen the price ticket?’).

Finally, notice how ही *hī* merges with certain words:

यह <i>yah</i>	यही <i>yahī</i>	this very one, the same one
---------------	-----------------	-----------------------------

इस <i>is</i>	इसी <i>isi</i>	this very one, the same one
--------------	----------------	-----------------------------

वह <i>vah</i>	वही <i>vahī</i>	that very one, the same one
---------------	-----------------	-----------------------------

उस <i>us</i>	उसी <i>usi</i>	that very one, the same one
--------------	----------------	-----------------------------

यहाँ <i>yahāँ</i>	यही <i>yahī</i>	right here, in this very place
-------------------	-----------------	--------------------------------

वहाँ <i>vahāँ</i>	वही <i>vahī</i>	right there, in that very place
-------------------	-----------------	---------------------------------

For now, it’s enough to get a general understanding of how these emphatic words operate: they’ll gradually become more familiar.

Exercise 7a Convert the sentences in Exercise 6c into the past tense (e.g. ‘Jagdish used to read Manoj’s newspaper’) and translate into Hindi.

Exercise 7b Translate the following, bringing out the emphasis given by *तो to* and *ही hī*.

- ११ जगदीश जी के परिवार में लड़के ही स्कूल जाते थे।
Jagdiś ji ke parivār mē larke hī skūl jātē the.
- १२ उनका स्कूल उनके घर से बहुत ही दूर था।
unkā skūl unke ghar se bahut hī dūr thā.
- १३ स्कूल में बच्चे ही नहीं, सब लोग उन्हें “मास्टर जी” कहते थे।
skūl mē bacce hī nahī̄, sab log unhē ‘māst̄ar jī’ kahte the.
- १४ उनकी नौकरी में तनख्वाह तो बहुत अच्छी नहीं थी।
unki naukarī mē tankhyāh to bahut accī nahī̄ thi.
- १५ जगदीश की माँ हिन्दी ही बोलती थीं।
Jagdiś kī mā̄ hindī hī boltī thi.
- १६ उस ज़माने में बच्चे तो बहुत खुश थे।
us zamāne mē bacce to bahut khuś the.
- १७ बगीचा तो नहीं था, लेकिन खेलने की जगहें बहुत थीं।
bagīcā to nahī̄ thā, lekin khelne kī jagahē bahut thi.
- १८ बच्चे लोग तो छत पर ही सोते थे।
bacce log to chat par hī sote the.
- १९ बचपन में तो राजू को पत्र लिखने का शौक था।
bacpan mē to Rājū ko patr likhne kā śauq thā.
- २० प्रधान मंत्री दयालु तो थे लेकिन उन्हें बहुत काम होता था।
pradhān mantri dayālu to the lekin unhē bahut kām hotā thā.

Exercise 7c Write a passage of 100 words or so about childhood memories — yours or imagined ones. Try to use a wide range of vocabulary and constructions; remember that you can always supplement your vocabulary from the glossaries at the back of the book.

Glossary

- अंग्रेजी *āgrezī* f. English (language); and adj.
 आँगन *āgan* m. courtyard
 आदरणीय *ādaraniy* ‘respected’ (used for ‘Dear...’ in formal correspondence)
 इसलिए *islie* so, because of this
 कमी *kamī* f. lack, shortage
 किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge
 खुब *khüb* a lot, freely
 गंगा *gangā* f. Ganges
 गरमी *garmi* f. heat; गरमियाँ *garmiyā* f. pl. summer
 चलना *calnā* to move, blow, flow
 चिंता *cintā* f. anxiety
 चेहरा *cehrā* m. face
 छत *chat* f. roof
 ज़माना *zamānā* m. period, time
 ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need
 जवाब *javāb* m. answer, reply; जवाब देना *javāb denā* to reply
 जानना *jānnā* to know
 ज़िंदगी *zindagi* f. life
 टिकट *tikat* f./m. ticket; stamp
 ठंडा *thaṇḍā* cold
 तनख्वाह *tankhvāh*, तनझाह *tankjhāh* f. pay, wages
 तो *to* as for...
 थोड़ा *thorā* (a) little
 दयालु *dayālu* compassionate, kind
- दवा *davā* f. medicine
 नदी *nadī* f. river
 नाव *nāv* f. boat
 नौकरी *naukarī* f. job, employment
 पत्र *patr* m. letter (correspondence)
 पसंद आना *pasand ānā* to appeal to, to be liked
 पागल *pāgal* mad, crazy
 पापा *pāpā* m. papa, father
 पैदल *paidal* on foot
 प्रधान मंत्री *pradhān mantri* m. prime minister
 बचपन *bacpan* m. childhood
 भरोसा *bharosā* m. trust, reliance
 महीना *mahīnā* m. month
 मारना *mārnā* to hit, beat, strike
 मेहनत *mehnat* f. hard work
 मेहनती *mehnti* hard-working
 याद *yād* f. memory
 शाम *sām* f. evening
 शुभकामना *śubhkāmnā* f. good wish
 शौक *śauq* m. liking, hobby, interest
 सहित *sahit* with (formal)
 सादर *sādar* respectful
 सैर *sair* f. trip
 हवा *havā* f. air, breeze
 ही *hī* only (emphatic)

1 Comparisons: bigger and smaller

English has two main ways of showing comparisons, firstly as in ‘harder’ (using an ‘-er’ comparative word) and secondly as in ‘more difficult’ (using ‘more’ with the ordinary adjective). Hindi prefers this second type. The word for ‘more’ is ज्यादा *zyādā* or और *aur*.

यह होटल ज्यादा/और अच्छा है।

yah hoṭal zyādā/aur acchā hai. This hotel is better.

वह होटल ज्यादा/और महँगा है।

vah hoṭal zyādā/aur mahāgā hai. That hotel is more expensive.

When comparing one thing directly to another, the word से *se* ‘than’ is used, and the ज्यादा/और *zyādā/aur* can be dropped:

दिल्ली आगरे से बड़ी है।

dilli āgṛe se baṛī hai. Delhi is bigger than Agra.

आगरा दिल्ली से छोटा है।

āgrā dilli se chotā hai. Agra is smaller than Delhi.

‘Less’ is कम *kam* —

यह कमरा कम अच्छा है।

yah kamrā kam acchā hai. This room is less good.

यह किताब (उस किताब से) कम अच्छी है।

yah kitāb (us kitāb se) kam acchī hai. This book is less good (than that book).

वह होटल (ताज से) कम महँगा है।

vah hoṭal (tāj se) kam mahāgā hai. That hotel is less pricey (than the Taj).

Superlatives follow the model of सबसे अच्छा *sabse acchā* ‘best of all’:

यही दवा सबसे अच्छी है।

yahī davā sabse acchī hai. This medicine is the best.

मनोज सबसे बड़ा लड़का है।

Manoj sabse baṛā larkā hai. Manoj is the biggest/eldest boy.

राम सबसे छोटा लड़का है।

Rām sabse chotā larkā hai. Ram is the smallest/youngest boy.

k
ज्यादा
अच्छा
महँगा
कम

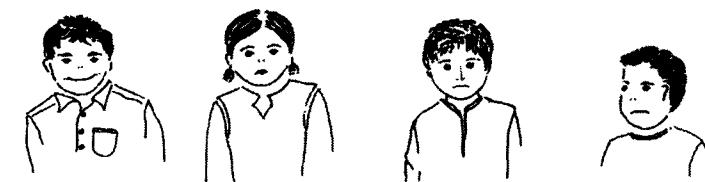
—
a

h

- In this unit you will learn
- how to make comparisons
 - a tense for describing what's going on right now
 - how to say *how* things happen

Language points

- comparatives and superlatives
- continuous tenses
- adverbs and postpositions

शिव m.
*Siv*रीता f.
*Ritā*ओम m.
*Om*शंकर m.
Sankar

- १ क्या ओम शंकर से बड़ा है ?
kyā Om Śankar se barā hai?
- २ कितने बच्चे रीता से छोटे हैं ?
kitne bacce Ritā se choṭe hai?
- ३ सबसे बड़ा लड़का कौन है ?
sabse barā larkā kaun hai?
- ४ सबसे छोटा लड़का कौन है ?
sabse choṭā larkā kaun hai?
- ५ ओम कितने बच्चों से बड़ा है ?
Om kitne baccō se barā hai?
- ६ क्या रीता शिव से बड़ी है ?
kyā Ritā Śiv se barī hai?
- ७ क्या रीता ओम से छोटी है ?
kyā Ritā Om se choṭī hai?
- ८ क्या रीता शंकर से छोटी है ?
kyā Ritā Śankar se choṭī hai?
- ९ आपको किस बच्चे की तस्वीर सबसे ज्यादा पसंद है ?
āpko kis bacce kī tasvīr sabse zyādā pasand hai?

2 Continuous tense: '-ing' verbs

'I speak Hindi' (मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindī bolta hū*) describes something that's done regularly or habitually; but 'I am speaking Hindi' describes something that's going on *at the time*. In Hindi, the '-ing' sense is conveyed like this:

मैं हिन्दी बोल रहा हूँ ।

mai hindī bol rahā hū. I am speaking Hindi.

मैं हिन्दी बोल रहा था ।

mai hindī bol rahā thā. I was speaking Hindi.

This is called the 'continuous' tense. It has three elements:

- A the verb stem बोल *bol* (or सीख *sikh*, कर *kar*, लिख *likh*, कह *kah* etc.) supplies the basic meaning;
- B रहा-रही-रहे *rahā-rahī-rahe* delivers the '-ing' aspect;
- C the auxiliary verb 'to be' (हूँ *hū*, है *hai*, था *thā* etc.) confirms the timeframe, i.e. past or present.

Some more examples:

वह रो रही है ।

vah ro rahī hai. She is crying.

पिताजी क्यों मुस्करा रहे हैं ?

pitājī kyō muskarā rahe hai? Why is Father smiling?

तुम क्यों हँस रहे हो ?

tum kyō hās rahe ho? Why are you laughing?

मेरी बहिन कोई हिन्दी फ़िल्म देख रही थी ।

merī bahin koī hindī film dekh rahī thi. My sister was watching some Hindi film.

क्या तुम तमिल सीख रहे हो ?

kyā tum tamil sikh rahe ho? Are you learning Tamil?

दादी जी गुजराती में कुछ पत्र लिख रही थीं ।

dādī jī gujarātī mē kuch patr likh rahī thi. Grandma was writing some letters in Gujarati.

Geeta phones home

Listen in on a phone conversation between Geeta and Raju with lots of verbs in the continuous tense. Here's the new vocabulary:

सहेली *saheli* f. girl's or woman's female friend
के साथ *ke sāth* with, in the company of
कब *kab* when?
देर *der* f. a while, period of time

रात का खाना *rāt kā khānā* m.
dinner
मदद *madad* f. help
आज रात (को) *āj rāt (ko)* tonight
लाना *lānā* to bring
बाप रे बाप *bāp re bāp* Oh God!

गीता हलो राजू, मैं गीता बोल रही हूँ !
राजू कहाँ से बोल रही हो ?
गीता ताज होटल से ।
राजू तुम क्या कर रही हो वहाँ ?
गीता मैं कुछ सहेलियों के साथ चाय पी रही हूँ !
राजू बच्चे क्या कर रहे हैं ?
गीता वे तो यहाँ बग़ीचे में खेल रहे हैं ।
राजू तो क्या मनोज भी खेल रहा है ?
गीता नहीं, वह किसी लड़की से बात कर रहा है ।
राजू ओहो ! तुम लोग घर कब आ रहे हो ?
गीता हम अभी आ रहे हैं, थोड़ी देर में । क्यों ?
राजू क्योंकि मैं रात का खाना बना रहा हूँ । मुझे मदद चाहिए ।
गीता क्यों ? आज रात को कोई आ रहा है ?
राजू हाँ, जावेद आ रहा है । उसके कुछ दोस्त⁴ भी आ रहे हैं ।
गीता बाप रे बाप ! अच्छा, मैं अभी आती हूँ ।
राजू वहाँ ताज में ज्यादा पैसा मत खर्च करना !
Gitā halo Rājū, maī Gitā bol rahī hū. ¹
Rājū kahā se bol rahī ho? ²
Gitā tāj hotal se.
Rājū tum kyā kar rahī ho vahā? ³
Gitā maī kuch saheliyō ke sāth cāy pī rahī hū!

Geeta Hello, Raju, this is Geeta speaking.

Raju Where are you speaking from?

Geeta From the Taj Hotel.

Raju What are you doing there?

Geeta I'm having tea with some friends!

Raju What are the children doing?

Geeta They're playing in the garden here.

Raju So is Manoj playing too?

Geeta No, he's talking to some girl.

Raju Oho! When are you all coming home?

Geeta We're just coming in a little while. Why?

Raju Because I'm making dinner. I need help.

Geeta Why? Is someone coming tonight?

Raju Yes, Javed's coming. Some of his friends are coming too.

Geeta Oh my God! OK, I'm just coming.

Raju Don't spend too much money there in the Taj!

1 This is the usual way of announcing yourself on the phone — ‘I Geeta am speaking’, i.e. ‘This is Geeta’.

2 Remember that a pronoun (here तुम *tum*) can be dropped when context makes it clear who is meant.

3 The continuous tense can be used for the immediate future (as in English) — ‘when are you coming home?’.

4 उसके कुछ दोस्त *uske kuch dost* — ‘some friends of his’. Note the word order.

Practise what you've learnt

Look at each picture below, then choose a verb from the list to describe who's doing what. Here's the first answer to show you the format: 1. जावेद पत्र लिख रहा है *Jāved patr likh rahā hai* 'Javed is writing a letter.' Keep an eye on gender and number!

खाना तैयार करना *khānā taiyār karnā* to prepare food

शराब पीना *śarāb pīnā* to drink (alcohol)

ताश खेलना *tāś khelnā* to play cards

पत्र लिखना *patr likhnā* to write a letter

दौड़ना *dauṛnā* to run

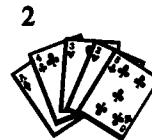
बरतन माँजना *bartan mājnā* to wash dishes

सोना *sonā* to sleep

फोन पर बात करना *fon par bāt karnā* to talk on the phone



जावेद
Jāved



दो लड़कियाँ
do larkiyā



कोई आदमी
koi ādmī



कुत्ता
kuttā



सीता
Sītā



गीता और राजू
Gītā aur Rājū



राम
Rām



उषा
Uṣā

The verbs we've met so far

Now that we're more than halfway through the book, here's a summary of all the verb forms we've seen so far, listed by unit and section. Our example verb here is बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak'.

GRAMMAR	EXAMPLES
1.2 होना <i>honā</i> 'to be'	है <i>hai</i> , हैं <i>hai</i>
4.1 infinitive	बोलना <i>bolnā</i>
4.1 stem	बोल <i>bol</i>
4.1 command	बोल, बोलो, बोलिए <i>bol, bolo, bolie</i>
4.3 imperfective participle	बोलता <i>bolta</i>
4.3 imperfective present	वह बोलता है <i>vah boltā hai</i>
7.1 imperfective past	वह बोलता था <i>vah boltā thā</i>
8.2 continuous present	वह बोल रहा है <i>vah bol rahā hai</i>
8.2 continuous past	वह बोल रहा था <i>vah bol rahā thā</i>

Now is the time to look back if you need to revise any of these!

3 Raju is reading 'his own' newspaper

Consider this statement: 'Javed is sitting in Raju's house; Raju is reading his newspaper.' Hmm: 'his' is ambiguous here — is Raju reading his own newspaper or Javed's? Hindi has no such ambiguity, because the pronoun अपना *apnā* replaces उसका *uskā* whenever the sense 'his/her own' is meant:

राजू अपना अखबार पढ़ रहा है।

Rājū apnā akhbār parh rahā hai. Raju is reading his (own) paper.

राजू उसका अखबार पढ़ रहा है।

Rājū uskā akhbār parh rahā hai. Raju is reading his (someone else's) paper.

अपना *apnā* is not restricted to 'his/her', it can mean 'my', 'our', 'your' and so on.

मैं अपना काम कर रहा हूँ।

mai apnā kām kar rahā hūँ. I am doing my work.

हम अपना काम कर रहे हैं।

ham apnā kām kar rahe hāi. We are doing our work.

तुम अपना काम करो !

tum apnā kām karo. Do your work!

अपना पैसा लीजिए ।

apnā paisā lijie. Please take your money.

When to use अपना *apnā* is a vexing question for all learners of Hindi. As a rule of thumb, it has to be used whenever the 'possessor' is the subject of the main verb. The subjects in the next two sentences (using धोना *dhonā* 'to wash') are मैं *mai* 'I' and वे *ve* 'they' respectively:

मैं अपने कपड़े धो रहा हूँ ।

mai apne kapre dho rahā hū. I'm washing my clothes.

वे अपने कपड़े नहीं धोते ।

ve apne kapre nahi dhote. They don't wash their (own) clothes.

► Revising with Gopal and Jagdish

The difference between the continuous and imperfective tenses should be reasonably clear by now. Here's a dialogue to remind you of the imperfective. A young lad called Gopal comes timidly to Jagdish Sharma's shop looking for work.

नौकरी *naukari* f. job

मेहनती *mehnatī* hard-working

ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need; मुझको X

की ज़रूरत है *mujhko X kī*

zarūrat hai 'I need X'

मेहनत *mehnat* f. hard work

पास में *pās mē* nearby

जानना *jānnā* to know

थोड़ा *thorā* a little

अंग्रेजी *āgrezī* f. English

(language)

तनखाह *tankhāh* f. pay, wages

गोपाल नमस्ते शर्माजी ।

जगदीश नमस्ते । क्या चाहिए बेटा ?

गोपाल जी, मुझको आपकी दुकान में नौकरी चाहिए ।

जगदीश हाँ, मुझको एक मेहनती लड़के की ज़रूरत तो है ।

गोपाल मैं बहुत मेहनत करता हूँ शर्मा जी !

जगदीश तुम्हारी उम्र कितनी है ?

गोपाल जी, मैं सोलह साल का हूँ ।

जगदीश

कहाँ रहते हो ?

गोपाल पास में । हमारा घर यहाँ से दूर नहीं है ।

जगदीश क्या तुम पढ़ना-लिखना जानते हो ?

गोपाल जी हाँ, और मुझे थोड़ी अँग्रेज़ी भी आती है ।

जगदीश ठीक है, कल से आना ।

गोपाल बहुत शुक्रिया । शर्माजी, एक बात बताइए ।

जगदीश बोलो, क्या बात है ?

गोपाल तनखाह ... ?

जगदीश यह तुम अभी मत पूछो !

Gopal namaste Šarmājī.

Jagdiś namaste. kyā cāhie betā?

Gopal ji, mujhko āpkī dukān mē naukarī cāhie.

Jagdiś hā, mujhko ek mahnatī larke kī zarūrat to hai.

Gopal mai bahut mehnat kartā hū Šarmā ji!

Jagdiś tumhārī umr kitni hai?

Gopal ji, mai solah sāl kā hū.

Jagdiś kahā rahte ho?

Gopal pās mē. hamārā ghar yahā se dūr nahī hai.

Jagdiś kyā tum paṛhnā-likhnā jāntे ho?

Gopal ji hā, aur mujhe thori āgrezī bhī ātī hai.

Jagdiś thiک hai, kal se ānā.

Gopal bahut śukriyā. Šarmājī, ek bāt batāie.

Jagdiś bolo, kyā bāt hai?

Gopal tankhvāh...?

Jagdiś yah tum abhī mat pūcho!

Gopal Hello Sharma ji.

Jagdish Hello. What do you want, son?

Gopal Sir, I need a job in your shop.

Jagdish Yes, I do need a hard-working lad.

Gopal I work very hard, Sharma ji!

Jagdish How old are you?

Gopal Sir, I'm sixteen.

Jagdish Where d'you live?

- Gopal Nearby. Our house isn't far from here.
 Jagdish Do you know how to read and write?
 Gopal Yes, and I know a little English too.*
 Jagdish All right, come from tomorrow.
 Gopal Thank you very much. Sharma ji, please tell me one thing.
 Jagdish Speak, what is it?
 Gopal The wages...?
 Jagdish Don't ask this just now!

*Literally 'a little English comes to me'. This is a common usage with languages: मुझे उर्दू आती है mujhe urdū ātī hai 'I know Urdu'; मेरे भाई को चार भाषाएँ आती हैं mere bhāī ko cār bhāsāē ātī hai 'my brother knows four languages'. Used with an infinitive verb, this construction means 'knowing how to do something', 'having a skill': मुझे खाना बनाना आता है mujhe khānā banānā ātā hai, 'I know how to cook.'

True or false?

Are these statements right (सही sahi) or wrong (गलत galat)?

Answers below.

सही sahi	गलत galat
-------------	--------------

- | | |
|---|---|
| १ गोपाल दुकान में कुछ खरीदना चाहता है।
<i>Gopāl dukān mē kuch kharīdnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| २ गोपाल दुकान में काम करना चाहता है।
<i>Gopāl dukān mē kām karnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ३ गोपाल को मेहनत करना पसंद नहीं है।
<i>Gopāl ko mehnat karnā pasand nahī hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ४ जगदीश को एक लड़के की ज़रूरत है।
<i>Jagdiś ko ek larke ki zarūrat hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ५ जगदीश गोपाल के बाप से मिलना चाहता है।
<i>Jagdiś Gopāl ke bāp se milnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ६ गोपाल तनखाह के बारे में जानना चाहता है।
<i>Gopāl tankhāh ke bāre mē jānnā cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |

Answers: 2, 4, 5 and 6 are true.

The PM writes back

Ah, here's the Prime Minister's reply to the letter that Raju wrote when he was little. (For reasons of confidentiality we can't show the signature.)

प्रिय राजू,

तुम जानते हो कि प्रधान मंत्री का जीवन कैसा होता है? वह अपने लिए तो कुछ नहीं कर सकता है लेकिन दूसरों के लिए कुछ कर सकता है! तुम अपने भाई की चिंता न करो। मैं अपने ही डाक्टर से तुम्हारे भाई के लिए कुछ दवा भिजवा रहा हूँ। अपने अगले पत्र में उसका हाल लिखना। और अपनी तबियत का भी ध्यान रखना।

तुम्हारा (...)

priy Rajū,

tum jāntे ho ki pradhān mantri kā jīvan kaisā hotā hai?
 vah apne lie to kuch nahī̄ kar saktā hai lekin dūsrō ke lie kuch kar saktā hai! tum apne bhāī ki cintā na karo. maī apne hī dākṭar se tumhāre bhāī ke lie kuch davā bhijvā rahā hū̄. apne agle patr mē uskā hāl likhnā. aur apni tabiyat kā bhi dhyān rakhnā.
 tumhārā (...)

Dear Raju,

Do you know what a Prime Minister's life is like? He can't do anything for himself but he can do something for others! Don't worry about your brother. I'm getting some medicine sent by my very own doctor. In your next letter write how he is. And take care of your own health too!

Yours (...)

4 These days, in and out, up and down

Here are some sentences with adverbs (words or phrases like ‘quickly’ or ‘these days’, that describe the *manner* or *context* in which something happens). Look carefully at the words in bold:

इन दिनों तुम क्या कर रहे हो ?

in dinō̄ tum kyā kar rahe ho? What are you doing these days?

उस दिन हम काम कर रहे थे ।

us din ham kām kar rahe the. That day, we were working.

पिछले हफ्ते मेरी तबियत ख़राब थी ।

pichle hafte merī tabiyat kharāb thi. I was unwell last week.

वह अगले महीने घर जा रहा है ।

vah āgle mahine ghar jā rahā hai. He's going home next month.

Notice anything? The words in bold print are in the oblique case — as if followed by invisible postpositions. This is usual with adverbs of time; here you have to forget the hard-learned rule that the oblique case is only used when a postposition requires it! Think of the time-words as being haunted by the ghosts of dropped postpositions.

These next sentences involve destinations — ‘Agra’, ‘your house’:

हम आगरे जा रहे हैं ।

ham āgre jā rahe hai. We're going to Agra.

वे आपके घर आ रहे हैं ।

ve āpke ghar ā rahe hai. They're coming to your house.

Here the obliques (आगरे *āgre*, oblique of आगरा *āgrā*; and आपके घर *āpke ghar*, oblique of आपका घर *āpkā ghar*) are again haunted by the ghosts of postpositions. To put it another way, the oblique case alone is the equivalent for the English ‘to’ in these sentences. It's significant that both sentences involve verbs of motion.

Finally, we find something very similar happening in the following sentences, which use आना *ānā* or जाना *jānā* with a sense of purpose:

वे आपसे मिलने आ रहे हैं ।

ve āpsse milne ā rahe hai. They're coming to meet you.

हम फ़िल्म देखने जा रहे हैं ।

ham film dekhne jā rahe hai. We're going to see a film.

These sentences have a sense of *purpose* or *intention* which is expressed by the मिलने *milne* and देखने *dekhne* (infinitives ending -e) — as if here too some postposition had been dropped.

About adverbs and postpositions

Now here are some more sentences using adverbs. These ones (again shown in bold text) describe place:

मनोज बाहर खड़ा है ।

Manoj bāhar khārā hai. Manoj is standing outside.

मीना अंदर बैठी है ।

Minā andar baithī hai. Meena is sitting inside.

ऊपर देखो ।

ūpar dekho. Look up.

नीचे आओ ।

nīcē āo. Come down.

The thing to notice here is that adverbs and postpositions work differently from each other. Let's take the pair बाहर *bāhar* and के बाहर *ke bāhar*, both meaning ‘outside’, as an example. बाहर *bāhar* on its own is an adverb that means ‘outside’ without reference to any other place: वह बाहर खड़ा है *vah bāhar khārā hai* ‘he's standing outside’. But के बाहर *ke bāhar* is a postposition that means ‘outside *in relation to* something’: मकान के बाहर *makān ke bāhar* ‘outside the house’. There are many such pairings: for example, the adverb ऊपर *ūpar* means ‘up, upstairs’ (ऊपर जाओ *ūpar jāo* ‘go up’ or ‘go upstairs’), while the postposition के ऊपर *ke ūpar* means ‘on top of, above’ (मेज़ के ऊपर *mez ke ūpar* ‘on top of the table’).

हमारे मकान के बाहर

hamāre makān ke bāhar outside our house

इस कमरे के अंदर

is kamre ke andar inside this room

अलमारी के ऊपर

almārī ke ūpar on top of the cupboard

इस मेज़ के नीचे

is mez ke nīcē under this table

There are many such postpositions consisting of two (or even three) words. Grammarians (who are always fond of long names for short things!) call them 'compound postpositions'.

के नज़दीक	<i>ke nazdik</i>	near
के पास	<i>ke pās</i>	near; in the possession of
के अलावा	<i>ke alāvā</i>	as well as
के यहाँ	<i>ke yahā</i>	at the place of, at X's place
के लिए	<i>ke lie</i>	for
की तरफ / ओर	<i>kī taraf / or</i>	towards
की तरह	<i>kī tarah</i>	like

When using these with the pronouns मैं *mai* (मेरे *mere*), तू *tū* (तेरे *tere*), तुम *tum* (तुम्हारे *tumhāre*), हम *ham* (हमारे *hamāre*) and अपना *apnā* (अपने *apne*) the के/की *ke/ki* component is absent:

उनके यहाँ	<i>unke yahā</i>	at their place
मेरे यहाँ	<i>mere yahā</i>	at my place
मकान की ओर	<i>makān kī or</i>	towards the house
हमारी ओर	<i>hamārī or</i>	towards us

You'll find many more of these compound postpositions listed in the Hindi–English glossary under के *ke* and की *ki*.

Practise what you've learnt

Make up phrases (such as मेरे घर के पीछे *mere ghar ke pīche* 'behind my house') from the following, remembering to make the first column oblique:

कौन <i>kaun</i> [oblique किस <i>kis</i> 'whom']	के लिए <i>ke lie</i> for
मेरा दोस्त <i>merā dost</i>	के बाद <i>ke bād</i> after
वह बड़ा पेड़ <i>vah baṛā per</i>	की तरह <i>kī tarah</i> like
सोमवार <i>somvār</i>	के पहले <i>ke pahle</i> before
हमारा स्कूल <i>hamārā skūl</i>	के पीछे <i>ke pīche</i> behind
यह होटल <i>yah hotal</i>	की तरफ <i>kī taraf</i> towards

पुराना स्टेशन *purānā stēśan*मेरा घर *merā ghar*ये लोग *ye log*तुम्हारा घर *tumhārā ghar*के नज़दीक *ke nazdik* nearके नीचे *ke nīcē* under, belowके यहाँ *ke yahā* at the place ofके चारों ओर *ke cārō* all around

Exercise 8a Translate:

- 1 You are not cleverer than them. (clever: होशियार *hosiyār*)
- 2 I (f.) am older than my brother but younger than you.
- 3 My other sister is the cleverest.
- 4 Some people say that Hindi is easier than English.
- 5 Mother thinks that my sister is more beautiful than me.
- 6 Father knows more than Mother but he can't say anything.
- 7 Their house is bigger and more beautiful than ours.
- 8 I am cleverer than you.
- 9 Your language is more difficult than my language.

Exercise 8b Rewrite these sentences in the continuous tense, translating the rewritten version. (Raju is speaking throughout.)

मैं रेडियो सुनता हूँ। *mai rediyo suntā hū*.I listen to the radio. *I am listening to the radio.*१० हम लोग अपने दोस्तों को खाना खाने बुलाते हैं।
*ham log apne dostō ko khānā khāne bulāte hāi.*११ मैं खाना तैयार करता हूँ।
mai khānā taiyār kartā hū.१२ वे लोग शाम को आते हैं।
*ve log śām ko ātē hāi.*१३ वे अपने बच्चों और दोस्तों को भी लाते हैं।
*ve apne baccō aur dostō ko bhi lātē hāi.*१४ मेरी पत्नी कहती है कि उनके बच्चे मोती को मारते हैं।
*merī patnī kahtī hai ki unke bacce Motī ko mārte hāi.*१५ दादी जी हमारी मदद नहीं करती हैं, सिर्फ़ रेडियो सुनती हैं।
dādī ji hamārī madad nahī kartī hāi, sirf rediyo sunti hāi.

- दुखी *dukhī* sad
 दौड़ना *daunā* to run
 धोना *dhonā* to wash
ध्यान रखना *dhyān rakhnā*
 to pay attention to, look after
 नीचे *nīcē* nice down, downstairs
 पास में *pās mē* nearby
 पिछला *pichlā* previous, last
 प्रिय *priy* dear; 'Dear...' (in
 informal correspondence)
 बरतन *bartan* m. dish, utensil
 बाप रे बाप ! *bāp re bāp!* Oh
 God!
भिजवाना *bhijvānā* to have sent,
 to cause to be sent
मदद *madad* f. help; किसी की
 मदद करना *kisi ki madad karnā*
 to help someone
माँचना *mājnā* f. to scour, clean
मुस्कराना *muskarānā* to smile
रात *rāt* f. night; रात का खाना *rāt*
 का *khānā* m. dinner
लगना *lagnā* to seem
लाना *lānā* to bring
रोना *ronā* to cry, weep
लाना *lānā* to bring
सबसे *sabse* of all (in
 superlatives, e.g. सबसे अच्छा
sabse acchā best, best of all)
सही *sahī* correct, true
सहेली *sahelī* f. female's female
 friend
हँसना *hāsnā* to laugh
हफ्ता *haftā* m. week
होशियार *hosiyār* clever

Glossary

- १६ हमारा कुकर ['cooker'] ठीक से काम नहीं करता ।
hamārā kukar ['cooker'] thīk se kām nahī̄ kartā.
- १७ हमारे दोस्त कहते हैं कि बाथरूम में पानी नहीं आ रहा है ।
hamāre dost kahte haī ki bāthrūm mē pānī nahī̄ ā rahā hai.
- Exercise 8c** Answer the questions:
- १८ अपने खाली समय में आप क्या करते/करती हैं ?
apne khālī samay mē āp kyā karte/kartī hai?
- १९ आपको घर पर रहना या बाहर जाना ज़्यादा पसंद है ?
āpko ghar par rahnā yā bāhar jānā zyādā pasand hai?
- २० आप हिन्दी क्यों सीख रहे/रही हैं ?
āp hindī kyō sikh rahe/rahī hai?
- २१ क्या हिन्दी अंग्रेज़ी से ज़्यादा आसान है ?
kyā hindī āgrezī se zyādā āsān hai?
- २२ क्या आपके कुछ दोस्त भी हिन्दी बोलते हैं ?
kyā āpke kuch dost bhi hindī bolte hai?
- २३ आज आप क्या कर रहे/रही हैं ?
āj āp kyā kar rahe/rahī hai?
- २४ आप अपनी छुट्टियों में कहाँ जाते/जाती हैं ?
āp apni chuttiyō mē kahā jāte/jātī hai?
- २५ अभी आप क्या सोच रहे/रही हैं ?
abhi āp kyā soc rahe/rahī hai?

भविष्य में *bhavishya meṁ*

in the future

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about the future
- how to use 'if' expressions
- how to express doubts and possibilities

Language points

- future tenses
- conditional clauses
- subjunctive mood

1 The future tense

The future is quite simple in Hindi. We'll begin with 'I will do' and 'you will do', which together will give lots of potential for practice. You already know that 'to do' is करना *karnā*, stem कर *kar* — now here are the future forms:

मैं करूँगा / करूँगी *mai karūgā / karūgi* I will do

आप करेंगे / करेंगी *āp karēge / karēgi* You will do

So the future ending for मैं *mai* is *-ūgā* / *-ūgi*, and the आप *āp* ending is *-ēge* / *-ēgi*.

► What will you do tomorrow?

This pair of dialogues uses the future tense of the verbs रहना *rahnā* 'to stay' and जाना *jānā* 'to go'.

राजू कल आप क्या करेंगे ?

जावेद कल मैं काम करूँगा । आप क्या करेंगे ?

राजू मैं घर पर रहूँगा ।

जावेद आप घर पर क्यों रहेंगे ? काम पर नहीं जाएंगे ?

राजू नहीं, काम पर नहीं जाऊँगा । कल छुट्टी है ।

Rajū *kal āp kyā karēge?*

Jāved *kal mai kām karūgā. āp kyā karēge?*

Rajū *mai ghar par rahūgā.*

Jāved *āp ghar par kyō rahēge? kām par nahī jāēge?*

Rajū *nahī, kām par nahī jaūgā. kal chut̄ti hai.*

गीता कल आप क्या करेंगी ?

उषा कल मैं काम करूँगी । आप क्या करेंगी ?

गीता मैं घर पर रहूँगी ।

उषा आप घर पर क्यों रहेंगी ? काम पर नहीं जाएंगी ?

गीता नहीं, काम पर नहीं जाऊँगी । कल छुट्टी है ।

Gītā *kal āp kyā karēgi?*

Uṣā *kal mai kām karūgi. āp kyā karēgi?*

Gītā *mai ghar par rahūgi.*

Uṣā āp ghar par kyō rahēgi? kām par nahī jāēgi?
Gītā nahī, kām par nahī jāūgi. kal chutti hai.

Raju/Geeta What will you do tomorrow?
Javed/Usha Tomorrow I'll work. What will you do?
Raju/Geeta I shall stay at home.
Javed/Usha Why will you stay at home? Won't you go to work?
Raju/Geeta No, I won't go to work. Tomorrow's a holiday.

► Practise what you've learnt

These questions are for you to answer:

- १ आज रात को आप क्या खाएंगे / खाएंगी ? (खाना to eat)
āj rāt ko āp kyā khāēge/khāēgi? khānā
- २ ... और क्या पिएंगे / पिएंगी ? (पीना to drink)
... aur kyā piēge/piēgi? pīnā
- ३ आज आप क्या करेंगे / करेंगी ? (करना to do)
āj āp kyā karēge/karēgi? karnā
- ४ कल सुबह आप कहाँ जाएंगे / जाएंगी ? (जाना to go)
kal subah āp kahā jāēge/jāēgi? jānā
- ५ परसों आप किससे मिलेंगे / मिलेंगी ? (मिलना to meet)
parsō āp kissē milēge/milēgi? milnā

The future with 'they' and 'we' is the same as with आप *āp* — it ends *-ēga* / *-ēgi*.

वे लोग खाना बनाएंगे ।

ve log khānā banāēge. Those people will make food.

ये लोग बीयर लाएंगे ।

ye log biyar lāēge. These people will bring beer.

हम लोग सिर्फ खाएंगे और पियेंगे !

ham log sirf khāēge aur piyēge! We will just eat and drink!

The future tense with 'he, she, it' (and also तू *tū* 'you') has the ending *-ega* / *-egi* —

वह घर जाएगा ।

vah ghar jāegā. He will go home.

वह घर आएगी ।

vah ghar āegī. She will come home.

कल कौनसा दिन होगा ?

kal kaunsā din hogā? What day will it be tomorrow?

कल सोमवार होगा ।

kal somvār hogā. Tomorrow will be Monday.

Finally, the future with तूम *tum* has the ending *-oge* / *-ogi* —

राजू, तूम चाय पियोगे ?

Rājū, tum cāy piyoge? Raju, will you have tea?

गीता, तूम मेरे साथ चलोगी ?

Gītā, tum mere sāth calogi? Geeta, will you come with me?

So here's the future tense in all its glory, shown in the verb बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak'.

मैं बोलूँगा / बोलूँगी

mai bolūgā / bolūgī

तू बोलेगा / बोलेगी

tū bolegā / bolegī

हम बोलेंगे / बोलेंगी

ham bolēge / bolēgi

तूम बोलोगे / बोलेगी

tum bologe / bologī

आप बोलेंगे / बोलेंगी

āp bolēge / bolēgi

यह, वह बोलेगा / बोलेगी

yah, vah bolegā / bolegī

ये, वे बोलेंगे / बोलेंगी

ye, ve bolēge / bolēgi

Once you've become familiar with the form of बोलना *bolnā*, practise the future by using it in other everyday verbs.

Reported speech and 'would'

In 'reported speech', the future tense gives the sense 'would':

राजू कह रहा था कि वह नाश्ता तैयार करेगा ।

Rājū kah rahā thā ki vah nāstā taiyār karega. Raju was saying that he would get breakfast ready.

गीता कह रही थी कि वह आराम करेगी ।

Gītā kah rahi thī ki vah ārām karegi. Geeta was saying that she would rest.

मनोज और राम कह रहे थे कि वे जल्दी नहीं उठेंगे।

Manoj aur Rām kah rahe the ki ve jaldī nahīं uthēge. Manoj and Ram were saying that they wouldn't get up early.

मोती सोच रहा था कि क्या मुझे भी नाश्ता मिलेगा?

Moti soc rahā thā ki kyā mujhe bhī nāstā milegā? Moti was wondering if he'd get breakfast too.

The days ahead

Manoj is helping Pratap with his Hindi by asking about the coming week.

मनोज प्रताप, तुम हफ्ते के दिनों के नाम बताओगे ?

प्रताप हाँ, ये हैं — सोमवार, मंगलवार, बुधवार, फिर ... फिर ...

मनोज गुरु...

प्रताप हाँ ! गुरुवार या बृहस्पतिवार, शुक्रवार, शनिवार, रविवार।

मनोज शाबाश ! कल कौनसा दिन होगा ?

प्रताप कल मंगलवार होगा ।

मनोज परसों तुम क्या करोगे ?

प्रताप परसों, यानी बुधवार को, मैं पिताजी से मिलने जाऊँगा ।

मनोज गुरुवार को तुम कहाँ जाओगे ?

प्रताप गुरुवार को मैं घर पर रहूँगा ।

मनोज शुक्रवार को तुम क्या करोगे ?

प्रताप शुक्रवार को मैं अपनी पढ़ाई करूँगा ।

मनोज और शनिवार को तुम आराम करोगे ?

प्रताप नहीं, शनिवार को मैं बाहर जाऊँगा और मजे करूँगा !

Manoj *Pratāp, tum hafte ke dinō ke nām batāoge?*

Pratāp *hā̄, ye hai — somvār, mangalvār, budhvār, phir... phir...*

Manoj *guru...*

Pratāp *hā̄! guruvār yā bṛhaspativār, śukravār, śanivār, ravivār.*

Manoj *śābāś! kal kaunsā din hogā?*

Pratāp *kal mangalvār hogā.*

Manoj *parsō tum kyā karoge?*

Pratāp *parsō, yānī budhvār ko, maī pitājī se milne jāūgā.*

Manoj *guruvār ko tum kahā jāoge?*

Pratāp *guruvār ko mai ghar par rahūgā.*

Manoj *śukravār ko tum kyā karoge?*

Pratāp *śukravār ko mai apni pṛahāi karūgā.*

Manoj *aur śanivar ko tum ārām karoge?*

Pratāp *nahī̄, śanivar ko mai bāhar jāūgā aur maze karūgā!*

Manoj Pratap, will you tell [me] the names of the days of the week?

Pratap Yes, they are... *somvār, mangalvār, budhvār, then... then...*

Manoj *guru...*

Pratap Yes! *guruvār or bṛhaspativār, śukravār, śanivār, ravivār.*

Manoj Bravo! What day will it be tomorrow?

Pratap Tomorrow will be Tuesday.

Manoj What will you do the day after tomorrow?

Pratap The day after tomorrow, that is on Wednesday, I'll go to meet Father.

Manoj Where will you go on Thursday?

Pratap On Thursday I'll stay at home.

Manoj What will you do on Friday?

Pratap On Friday I'll do my studying.

Manoj And on Saturday you'll rest?

Pratap No, on Saturday I'll go out and enjoy myself!

Geeta's diary

Your next task is to fill Geeta's appointment diary for the coming week, based on what she tells you below (notice that she sometimes uses abbreviation for the names of the days). Write the activity using an infinitive verb — Monday has already been completed as an example of the format to use.

आज सोम है; आज मैं घर पर रहूँगी । कल, यानी मंगल को, हम लोग दिल्ली जाएँगे । परसों, यानी बुध को, हम अपने मकान के लिए कुछ चीजें खरीदने जाएँगे । ग्रुवार को हम घर वापस आएँगे । शुक्रवार को मैं आराम करूँगी । शनिवार की रात को हम सीता के यहाँ जाएँगे । रविवार को मैं अगले हफ्ते की तैयारियाँ करूँगी ।

āj som hai; āj maī ghar par rahūgī. kal, yānī mangal ko, ham log dillī jāēge. parsō, yānī budh ko, ham apne makān ke lie kuch cīzē kharidne jāēge. guruvār ko ham ghar vāpas āēge. śukravār ko maī ārām karūgī. śanivār kī rāt ko ham Sītā ke yahā jāēge. ravivār ko maī agle hafte kī taiyāriyā karūgī.

Today is Monday; today I'll stay at home. Tomorrow, i.e. on Tuesday, we'll go to Delhi. The day after, i.e. on Wednesday, we'll go to buy some things for our house. On Thursday we'll come back home. On Friday I'll rest. On Saturday night we'll go to Sita's. On Sunday I'll get ready for next week.



सोमवार somvār	घर पर रहना ghar par rahnā
मंगलवार mangalvār	
बुधवार budhvār	
गुरुवार guruvār	
शुक्रवार śukravār	
शनिवार śanivār	
रविवार ravivār	

2 Ifs and maybes

The sentence आप घर जाएँगे *āp ghar jāēge* means 'you'll go home'. It's a positive statement of something that is clear, certain, definite. But if we remove the last syllable of जाएँगे *jāēge*, we are left with आप घर जाएँ *āp ghar jāē* — which means 'you should go home' (suggestion) or 'you might go home' (possibility) or even 'you may go home' (permission). We've cut off the *certainty* of the verb with its last syllable.

This form of the verb is called the 'subjunctive': it expresses a sense of uncertainty, possibility, permission, suggestion, and similar indefinite, imagined or tentative senses. As we've just seen, it's formed by lopping off the last syllable of the future tense; the distinction between masculine and feminine is lost as a result. You'll often find words like अगर *agar* 'if', शायद *sāyad* 'maybe, perhaps' or जरूर *zarūr* 'of course' lurking nearby. All the verbs in this next dialogue are in the subjunctive.

Javed calls on Raju

जावेद मैं अंदर आऊँ ?

राजू जी हाँ, जी हाँ, आप ज़रूर आएँ !

जावेद मैं कहाँ बैठूँ ?

राजू आप इधर बैठें। मैं चाय बनाऊँ ?

जावेद अगर आप चाहें। या हम बाहर जाएँ ?

राजू नहीं, हम घर पर ही रहें।

Javed *mai ī andar āū?*

Raju *ji hā, ji hā, āp zarūr āē.*

Javed *mai kahā baithū?*

Raju *āp idhar baithē. mai cāy banāū?*

Javed *agar āp cāhē. yā ham bāhar jāē?*

Raju *nahī, ham ghar par hī rahē.*

Javed May I come in?

Raju Yes yes, of course you may come in! [Do come in!]

Javed Where should I sit?

Raju Please sit over here. Should I make tea?

Javed If you wish. Or should we go out?

Raju No, let's stay at home.

Sentences involving an 'if' are quite likely to use a subjunctive verb, but verb forms such as a future tense are also possible:

अगर वह "हाँ" कहे तो हम शादी करेगे ।

agar vah "hā" kahe to ham śādī karēge. If she says 'yes', then we'll marry. (Subjunctive *kahe* — don't count on her agreement.)

अगर वह “हाँ” कहेगी तो हम शादी करेंगे ।

agar vah 'hā' kahegi to ham sādi karēge. If she says ‘yes’, then we’ll marry. (Future *kahegi* — book the photographer!)

These two sentences show how Hindi pairs an अगर *agar* clause with a तो *to* clause: ‘If X, then Y’.

A suggestion or a command?

A subjunctive verb blurs the boundary between a suggestion and a command, offering a nicely diplomatic way of getting someone to comply with your wishes:

आप थोड़ी देर बैठे रहें ।

āp thori der baiṭhe rahē. Kindly remain seated for a while.

कृपया गिलास में हाथ न धोएं ।

kṛpayā gilās mē hāth na dhoē. Please do not wash your hands in the tumbler. (Restaurant sign.)

I want to... / I want you to...

Look closely at the difference between the following pair of sentences. How many people are involved in each one?

मैं कुछ कहना चाहता हूँ ।

mai kuch kahnā cāhtā hū. I want to say something.

मैं चाहता हूँ कि आप कुछ कहें ।

mai cāhtā hū ki āp kuch kahē. I want you to say something.

The first sentence involves ‘Person A’ doing both the wanting and the speaking; the construction uses चाहना *cāhnā* ‘to want’ with an infinitive verb (here कहना *kahnā* ‘to say’). The second involves ‘Person A’ wanting ‘Person B’ to do something: the construction uses चाहना *cāhnā* ‘to want’ with a subjunctive verb (here कहें *kahē*). The two clauses are linked by कि *ki* ‘that’. Here are two more examples:

मैं चाहता हूँ कि वे यहाँ रहें ।

mai cāhtā hū ki ve yahā rahē. I want them to stay here.

वे चाहते हैं कि मैं यहाँ रहूँ ।

ve cāhte haī ki mai yahā rahū. They want me to stay here.

► Practise what you’ve learnt

Over to you. Make sentences by combining a phrase from the left-hand list with a phrase from the right-hand list, giving meanings such as ‘I want you to rest’. All the verbs in the right-hand list are subjunctive.

मैं चाहता हूँ कि ...

mai cāhtā hū ki ...

हम चाहते थे कि ...

ham cāhte haī ki ...

वे चाहते हैं कि ...

ve cahte haī ki ...

वह चाहता है कि ...

vah cāhtā hai ki ...

मैं चाहती थी कि ...

mai cāhti thi ki ...

मेरी बहिन चाहती है कि ...

meri bahin cāhti hai ki ...

... आप आराम करें ।

... āp ārām karē.

... तुम हमारे यहाँ ठहरो ।

... tum hamāre yahā ṭahro.

... तुम्हारा दोस्त भी आए ।

... tumhārā dost bhī āe.

... तुम जाने की तैयारियाँ करो ।

... tum jāne kī taiyāriyā karo.

... वह अपना काम करे ।

... vah apnā kām kare.

... तुम खाना बनाओ ।

... tum khānā banāo.

3 So that, in order that

The conjunction (or ‘linking word’) ताकि *tāki* means ‘so that, in order that’, and is always followed by a subjunctive verb:

मैं उठूँगा ताकि दूसरे लोग बैठें ।

mai uṭhūṅgā tāki dūsre log baiṭhē. I’ll get up so that others may sit.

अभी आइए ताकि हम काम शुरू करें ।

abhi āie tāki ham kām śurū karē. Come right now so that we can start work.

जल्दी उठो ताकि देरी न हो ।

jaldī uṭho tāki derī na ho. Get up early so that there won’t be any delay.

हम धीरे धीरे बोलेंगे ताकि वे हमारी बात समझें ।

ham dhire dhire bolēṅgē tāki ve hamārī bāt samjhē. We’ll speak slowly so that they understand what we say.

Did you know?

The official Indian name for India is भारत *bhārat* or भारतवर्ष *bhāratavarṣ*. Many people use हिन्दुस्तान *hindustān* instead, though this can sometimes be taken to imply ‘northern India’ only. The word हिन्द *hind* is now mostly limited to formulas such as जय हिन्द ! *jay hind!* (‘Victory to India!’ — once used as a nationalistic greeting) and to terms such as हिन्द महासागर *hind mahāsāgar* ‘Indian Ocean’. Another common option is इंडिया *indiyā*, whose retroflex consonants show that it has been re-imported through English.

Words such as ‘India’, ‘Hindi’ and ‘Hindu’ all derive from the name of the Indus river; its Sanskrit name is सिंधु *sindhu*, but the Sanskrit ‘s’ becomes ‘h’ in Persian. The word हिन्दी *hindī* is itself Persian in origin.

4 How long does it take?

To say ‘how long something takes’, Hindi uses the versatile verb लगना *lagnā*, here referring to the ‘time taken’:

एक घंटा लगता है।

ek ghāntā lagtā hai. It takes one hour.

दस मिनट लगते हैं।

das minaṭ lagte hai. It takes ten minutes.

दो दिन लगेंगे।

do din lagēge. It’ll take two days.

Notice how the verb agrees with the unit of time — ‘one hour’ (singular) ‘ten minutes’ (plural), etc. To specify the *action done* within the particular time frame, add an infinitive plus में *mē*, as in किताब लिखने में *kitāb likhne mē* ‘in writing the book’:

किताब लिखने में एक साल लगेगा।

kitāb likhne mē ek sāl lagegā. It’ll take a year to write the book.

घर जाने में दो घंटे लगते हैं।

ghar jānē mē do ghāntे lagte hai. It takes two hours to get home.

यह काम खत्म करने में मुझे डेढ़ घंटा लगेगा।

yah kām khatm karne mē mujhe deṛh ghāntā lagegā. It’ll take me an hour and a half to finish this work.

Exercise 9a Match up the अगर *agar* (1–6) and तो *to* (A–F) clauses to make meaningful sentences, then translate them.

- 1 अगर सब्जी-मंडी आज बंद हो ...
agar sabzī-māndī āj band ho ...
- 2 अगर तुम्हें रास्ता नहीं मालूम ...
agar tumhē rāstā nahiṁ mālūm ...
- 3 अगर आप किसी शब्द का मतलब नहीं जानते ...
agar āp kisi śabd kā matlab nahiṁ jāntे ...
- 4 अगर गोलचक्कर पर पुलिसवाला न मिले ...
agar golcakkar par pulisvālā na mile ...
- 5 अगर होटल में कमरा न मिले ...
agar hotel mē kamrā na mile ...
- 6 अगर आप उस तंग गली में मुड़ेंगे ...
agar āp us tang gali mē muṛēge ...

- A ... तो आप मेरे यहाँ रहें।
... *to āp mere yahāṁ rahē.*
- B ... तो थाने पर जाओ।
... *to thāne par jāo.*
- C ... तो शब्दकोश में देखिए।
... *to śabdkoś mē dekhie.*
- D ... तो नक्शा खरीदना।
... *to naqṣā kharīdnā.*
- E ... तो कल सुबह को सब्जी लेना।
... *to kal subah ko sabzī lenā.*
- F ... तो बायें हाथ पर ढाबा दिखाई देगा।
... *to bāyē hāth par ḍhābā dikhāī degā.*

Exercise 9b You have just arrived at a hotel where you will be staying for several days. Do as instructed:

- 7 Tell the hotel receptionist that you need a room for two people and that you will stay for three days.

- 8 Say that some friends will come to meet you this evening.
- 9 Ask what will be available for breakfast (नाश्ते में *nāṣṭe mē*).
- 10 Ask whether dinner will be available as well.
- 11 Ask how long it will take to go on foot from the hotel to the cinema.
- 12 Tell the receptionist that you would like to phone London; ask if you can phone from your room.
- 13 Say that next week you will go to Agra and Delhi.
- 14 Ask if your friends can eat with you in the hotel tonight.

Exercise 9c Translate into Hindi:

- 15 Tomorrow is Saturday, so we'll go out.
- 16 We were thinking that we would go to the cinema.
- 17 My brother was saying that he would stay at home.
- 18 If you wish, come with us.
- 19 We'll go early so that we can get good seats [सीट *sīṭ* f.].
- 20 If it's raining we'll go by car.

Glossary

अगर <i>agar</i> if	गिलास <i>gilās</i> m. tumbler
आराम <i>ārām</i> m. rest; आराम करना <i>ārām karnā</i> to rest	गुरुवार <i>guruvār</i> m. Thursday
इधर <i>idhar</i> here, over here; इधर-उधर <i>idhar-udhar</i> here and there, hither and thither	गोलचक्कर <i>golcakkar</i> m. roundabout
इमारत <i>imārat</i> f. building	घंटा <i>ghaṇṭā</i> m. hour
उठना <i>uṭhnā</i> to get up, rise	ठंड <i>thand</i> f. cold; ठंड लगना <i>thand lagnā</i> to feel cold
उधर <i>udhar</i> there, over there	थहरना <i>thaharnā</i> to stay, remain
कृपया <i>kṛpayā</i> please (formal)	ताकि <i>tāki</i> so that, in order that
ओर <i>or</i> f. side, direction	तैयारी <i>taiyārī</i> f. preparation
के चारों तरफ <i>ke cārō taraf</i> all around	देरी <i>derī</i> f. delay
के सामने <i>ke sāmne</i> opposite	नक्शा <i>naqṣā</i> m. map, plan
गली <i>gali</i> f. lane, narrow street	नाश्ता <i>nāṣṭā</i> m. breakfast
	पढ़ाई <i>parhāī</i> f. studies, studying

परसे <i>parsō</i> two days away (day after tomorrow; day before yesterday)	वापस <i>vāpas</i> 'back' in वापस आना/जाना/देना <i>vāpas</i> <i>ānā/jānā/denā</i> to come/go/give back
पहुँचना <i>pahūcnā</i> to reach, arrive	शनिवार <i>śanivār</i> m. Saturday
पुलिसवाला <i>pulisvālā</i> m. policeman	शब्द <i>śabd</i> m. word
बंद <i>band</i> closed, shut	शब्दकोश <i>śabdkoś</i> m. dictionary
बीयर <i>bīyar</i> f. beer	शादी <i>śādī</i> f. wedding, marriage; शादी करना <i>śādī karnā</i> to marry
बुधवार <i>buḍhvar</i> m. Wednesday	शाबाश <i>śābāś</i> bravo
बेहतर <i>behtar</i> better	शुक्रवार <i>śukravār</i> m. Friday
मंगलवार <i>māngalvār</i> f. Tuesday	सब्जी <i>sabzī</i> f. vegetable(s); सब्जी मंडी <i>sabzī manḍī</i> f. vegetable market
मज़ा <i>mazā</i> m. enjoyment, fun; मज़े करना <i>maze karnā</i> to enjoy oneself, have fun	सब्जीवाला <i>sabzīvālā</i> m. vegetable seller
मतलब <i>matlab</i> m. meaning	सुबह <i>subah</i> f. morning
मुड़ना <i>muṛnā</i> to turn	
रविवार <i>ravivār</i> m. Sunday	
लगना <i>lagnā</i> time to be taken; घर जाने में १० मिनट लगते हैं / एक	
ठंडा लगता है <i>ghar jāne mē 10 minaṭ lagte hai / ek ghantā lagtā hai</i> It takes 10 minutes / one hour to get home	

परसे <i>parsō</i> two days away (day after tomorrow; day before yesterday)	वापस <i>vāpas</i> 'back' in वापस आना/जाना/देना <i>vāpas</i> <i>ānā/jānā/denā</i> to come/go/give back
पहुँचना <i>pahūcnā</i> to reach, arrive	शनिवार <i>śanivār</i> m. Saturday
पुलिसवाला <i>pulisvālā</i> m. policeman	शब्द <i>śabd</i> m. word
बंद <i>band</i> closed, shut	शब्दकोश <i>śabdkoś</i> m. dictionary
बीयर <i>bīyar</i> f. beer	शादी <i>śādī</i> f. wedding, marriage; शादी करना <i>śādī karnā</i> to marry
बुधवार <i>buḍhvar</i> m. Wednesday	शाबाश <i>śābāś</i> bravo
बेहतर <i>behtar</i> better	शुक्रवार <i>śukravār</i> m. Friday
मंगलवार <i>māngalvār</i> f. Tuesday	सब्जी <i>sabzī</i> f. vegetable(s); सब्जी मंडी <i>sabzī manḍī</i> f. vegetable market
मज़ा <i>mazā</i> m. enjoyment, fun; मज़े करना <i>maze karnā</i> to enjoy oneself, have fun	सब्जीवाला <i>sabzīvālā</i> m. vegetable seller
मतलब <i>matlab</i> m. meaning	सुबह <i>subah</i> f. morning
मुड़ना <i>muṛnā</i> to turn	
रविवार <i>ravivār</i> m. Sunday	
लगना <i>lagnā</i> time to be taken; घर जाने में १० मिनट लगते हैं / एक	
ठंडा लगता है <i>ghar jāne mē 10 minaṭ lagte hai / ek ghantā lagtā hai</i> It takes 10 minutes / one hour to get home	

what happened?
 क्या हुआ ?
 kyā huā?

In this unit you will learn

- how to describe past events
- how to link connected actions in a sequence

Language points

- perfective tenses
- transitivity
- absolutives

► 1 The past tense

So far we've seen two kinds of past tense: 'imperfective' (describing *routine or habitual events* of the 'I used to' type), and 'continuous' (describing *actions in progress* of the 'I was doing' type). Here's an example of each to remind you:

मैं दौड़ता था ।

maī daurta thā. I used to run.

मैं दौड़ रहा था ।

maī daur rahā thā. I was running.

The new tense we're going to look at now is this:

मैं दौड़ा ।

maī daurā. I ran.

This describes a *completed action* in the past, and is called the 'perfective' tense. It uses a 'perfective participle' consisting of verb stem plus *-ā* / *-e* / *-i* / *-ī*. Thus दौड़ा *daurā* 'ran', बोला *bolā* 'spoke', हँसा *hāsā* 'laughed', उठा *uthā* 'got up', पहुँचा *pahūcā* 'arrived', and so on.

Look carefully at the verb endings in the following three sentences, making sure you can see how they agree with their subjects (for example, the first one is feminine singular to agree with 'Meena'):

मीना घर पहुँची ।

Minā ghar pahūnci. Meena arrived home.

फिर मनोज और राज पहुँचे ।

phir Manoj aur Rājū pahūce. Then Manoj and Raju arrived.

बाद में गीता और सीता पहुँचीं ।

bād mē Gitā aur Sītā pahūci. Later Geeta and Sita arrived.

Before going any further, practise using the verbs बोलना *bolnā* and उठना *uthnā* (or any others given above) with a range of different subjects, paying attention to the agreements of gender and number.

Coming and going

You're probably thinking this is all too easy. And you're right: it's time to introduce an exception! The participle from जाना *jānā* 'to go' is गया / गए / गई / गई — *gayā* / *gae* / *gaī* / *gaī*. (Don't confuse this with गाया *gāyā* etc., from गाना *gānā* to sing.)

मीना स्कूल गई, मनोज बाहर गया, राजू और राम बाज़ार गए,
गीता और सीता सिनेमा गईं।

Mīnā skūl gai, Manoj bāhar gayā, Rājū aur Rām bāzār gae, Gītā aur Sītā sinemā gai. Meena went to school, Manoj went out, Raju and Ram went to the market, Geeta and Sita went to the cinema.

Participles for the verb आना *ānā* ‘to come’ are आया, आए, आई, आई *āyā, āe, āi, āī*. Notice how the masculine singular आया *āyā* has a ‘y’ between the stem and the ending. All verbs with -ā stems do this.

What happened then?

The perfective from होना *honā* ‘to be, to happen’ is हुआ, हुए, हुई, हुई *huā, hue, huī, huī*, ‘happened’.

तब क्या हुआ ?

tab kyā huā ? What happened then?

एक दुर्घटना हुई ।

ek durghatnā huī. An accident happened. (There was an accident.)

Practise what you've learnt

This is all quite easy to understand, but you'll only really learn it when you use it. So make up some short subject-plus-verb sentences using Meena and anyone else (as in the long sentence at the top of this page) as subjects, combined with the following verbs:

आना	<i>ānā</i>	to come
जाना	<i>jānā</i>	to go
उठना	<i>uṭhnā</i>	to get up
दौड़ना	<i>dauṛnā</i>	to run
पहुँचना	<i>pahūcnā</i>	to arrive
हँसना	<i>hāsnā</i>	to laugh

Now answer these questions with the data supplied on the right:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------|
| १ मनोज कहाँ गया ? | घर |
| <i>Manoj kahā̄ gayā?</i> | <i>ghar</i> |
| २ राजू और राम कहाँ गए ? | बाहर |
| <i>Rājū aur Rām kahā̄ gae?</i> | <i>bāhar</i> |

- ३ सीता कहाँ गई ?
Sītā kahā̄ gai?
- ४ क्या हुआ ?
kyā huā?
- ५ मीना कब पहुँची ?
Mīnā kab pahuci?
- ६ दादीजी कब आई ?
dādījī kab āī?
- ७ मनोज कब आया ?
Manoj kab āyā?

दिल्ली
dilli
कुछ नहीं
kuch nahi
कल
kal
परसों
parso
मंगलवार को
mangalvār ko

2 Transitivity

In the perfective, Hindi verbs follow two different patterns depending on whether they are ‘intransitive’ or ‘transitive’. A transitive verb describes an action done to an object, as in ‘We drank coffee’ (in which the drinking was a process done by us to the coffee). We can test its transitivity by asking a question about the object: ‘What did we drink?’. By contrast, an *intransitive* verb simply describes an action occurring, with no object being involved, as in ‘we arrived’, or ‘I got up’; here we can't make questions like ‘What did we arrive’ or ‘What did I get up’, so these verbs don't pass the transitivity test.

The Hindi verbs we've used so far in this unit have all been intransitive; but it's time now to move on to transitive verbs, which behave differently in the past tense. Look very closely at the constructions of the following four sentences (a hint: किताब *kitāb* is feminine, अख्बार *akhbār* is masculine):

राजू ने किताब पढ़ी ।

Rājū ne kitāb paṛhī. Raju read a book.

राजू ने दोनों किताबें पढ़ीं ।

Rājū ne donō kitābē paṛhī. Raju read both books.

गीता ने अख्बार पढ़ा ।

Gītā ne akhbār paṛhā. Geeta read a newspaper.

गीता ने दोनों अख्बार पढ़े ।

Gītā ne donō akhbār paṛhe. Geeta read both newspapers.

Well, you should have noticed that the verbs agree with the 'book/books' and 'newspaper/newspapers' rather than with their readers! And also that the readers have sprouted an untranslatable postposition, ने ne. This is how transitive verbs always operate in the perfective. A verb that has no object for the verb to agree with stays in the masculine singular:

राम ने खाया। मीनू ने खाया।

Rām ne khāyā. Mīnū ne khāyā. Ram ate. Meenu ate.

Because we're not told *what* they ate, the verb stays as खाया khāyā.

► What happened at the party?

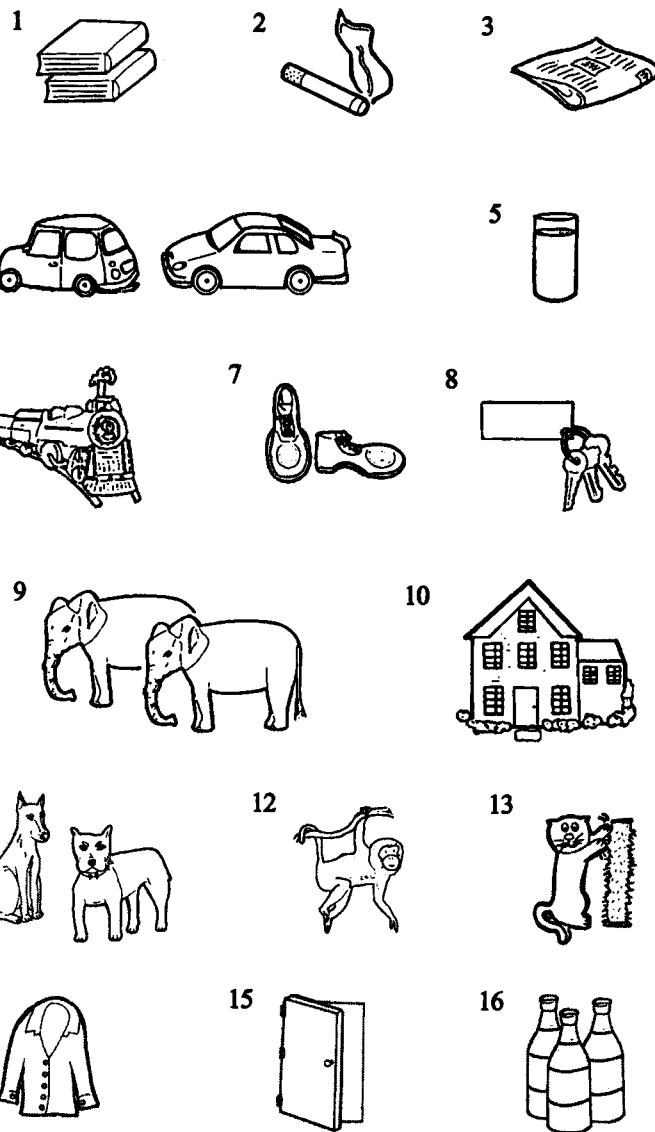
There was a party at the Sharmas' house. Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the verb supplied on the right. The agreement of the verb will be with the *subject* if there's no ने ne construction, but with the *object* if there *is* a ने ne construction. Answers below.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| १ गीता ने बढ़िया खाना ...
Gitā ne bṛhiyā khānā ... | बनाना to make
banānā |
| २ मीना की दो सहेलियाँ पार्टी में ...
Mīnā kī do saheliyā pārṭī mē ... | आना to come
ānā |
| ३ मनोज के कई दोस्त भी ...
Manoj ke kai dost bhī ... | आना to come
ānā |
| ४ गीता की सहेली ने सितार ...
Gitā kī saheli ne sitār... | बजाना to play
bajānā |
| ५ फिर मोती ज़ोर से ...
phir Moti zor se ... | भौंकना to bark
bhaūknā |
| ६ राजू ने पाँच समोसे ...
Rājū ne pāč samose ... | खाना to eat
khānā |
| ७ सब लोग बड़ी देर तक ...
sab log barī der tak ... | रहना to stay
rahnā |
| ८ दूसरे दिन बच्चे देर से ...
dūsre din bacche der se ... | उठना to get up
uṭhnā |

Answers: 1 बनाया banāyā; 2 आई āi; 3 आए āe; 4 बजाया bajāyā;
5 भौंका bhaūknā; 6 खाए khāe; 7 रहे rāhe; 8 उठे uṭhē.

How many did you see?

Make up sentences on the model of मैंने एक मकान देखा maine ek makān dekhā 'I saw one house', to reflect the following objects:



Check the back of the book for the answers.

Some special pronouns...

Some pronouns have special oblique forms for the ने ne construction:

PRONOUN	USUAL OBLIQUE	SPECIAL FORM + ने ne
मैं <i>mai</i>	मुझ <i>mujh</i>	मैंने <i>maīne</i>
तू <i>tū</i>	तुझ <i>tujh</i>	तूने <i>tūne</i>
ये <i>ye</i>	इन <i>in</i>	इन्होने <i>inhōne</i>
वे <i>ve</i>	उन <i>un</i>	उन्होने <i>unhōne</i>

And some special verbs

Some very common verbs have irregular participles:

करना <i>karnā</i> 'to do':	किया, किए, की, कीं <i>kiyā, kie, kī, kī̄</i> 'did'
देना <i>denā</i> 'to give':	दिया, दिए, दी, दीं <i>diyā, die, dī, dī̄</i> 'gave'
लेना <i>lenā</i> 'to take':	लिया, लिए, ली, लीं <i>liyā, lie, lī, lī̄</i> 'took'
पीना <i>pinā</i> 'to drink':	पिया, पिए, पी, पीं <i>piyā, pie, pi, pī</i> 'drank'

What did Geeta see?

Now answer the questions using the data supplied on the right (with which the verb must agree!):

१ गीता ने क्या देखा ? <i>Gitā ne kyā dekhā?</i>	एक नई फ़िल्म <i>ek nai film</i>
२ राजू ने क्या ख़रीदा ? <i>Rājū ne kyā kharidā?</i>	दो अखबार <i>do akhbār</i>
३ मोती ने क्या खाया ? <i>Motī ne kyā khāyā?</i>	दस चपातियाँ <i>das capātiyā</i>
४ मीना ने क्या पढ़ा ? <i>Minā ne kyā parhā?</i>	दो कहानियाँ <i>do kahāniyā</i>
५ हमने कितने कुरते ख़रीदे ? <i>hamne kitne kurte kharide?</i>	चार <i>cār</i>
६ उन्होने मेज़ पर क्या रखा ? <i>unhōne mez̄ par kyā rakhā?</i>	कुछ किताबें <i>kuch kitābē</i>
७ आपने दीवार पर क्या लिखा ? <i>āpne dīvar par kyā likhā?</i>	अपना नाम <i>apnā nam</i>

८ तुमने क्या सुना ?

tumne kyā sunā?

९ तुमने कितनी भाषाएँ सीखीं ?

tumne kitni bhāṣāē sīkhi?

कई बातें

kai bātē

एक ही

ek hī

All verbs that take the ने ne construction are shown with ^N in the English–Hindi glossary (e.g. देखना *dekhnā^N*) at the end of the book. The construction itself may take some time to digest — like Moti's ten chapatties.

A particular object

Back in section 7.2 we saw that को ko is often added to an object that's particularized in some way. (Turn back to 7.2 now if you've forgotten this.) If को ko is added to the object of a ने ne verb, then the verb reverts to a masculine singular.

राम ने चपाती को खाया ।

Rām ne capātī ko khāyā. Ram ate the chapatti.

मैंने उनके बच्चों को देखा ।

maīne unke baccō ko dekhā. I saw their children.

उसने किताबों को पढ़ा ।

usne kitābō ko parhā. He/she read the books.

The verbs in these three sentences all end in -ā (खाया *khāyā*, देखा *dekhā*, पढ़ा *parhā*) because in each one the presence of को ko insulates the verb from its object.

3 Other perfective tenses

In English we differentiate time frames by saying 'I wrote, have written, had written, will have written' etc. Similarly in Hindi, all three kinds of perfective verbs can be used in different time frames by adding auxiliary verbs (है *hai*, था *thā* etc.):

A राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी ।

Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī. Raju wrote a letter.

B राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी है ।

Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī hai. Raju has written a letter.

C राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी थी ।

Rājū ne cītthī likhī thī. Raju had written a letter (or wrote it some time ago).

D राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी होगी ।

Rājū ne cītthī likhī hogī. Raju will have written a letter.

E राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी हो ।

Rājū ne cītthī likhī ho. Raju may have written a letter.

COMMENTARY

A लिखी *likhi*, no auxiliary verb; it's the simple past.

B लिखी है *likhi hai*, 'has written' (है *hai* is singular because चिट्ठी *cītthī* is singular), suggesting that the effect of the writing is still felt in the present.

C लिखी थी *likhī thī* (both words are feminine singular, to agree with चिट्ठी *cītthī*), suggesting that the action happened some time earlier.

D लिखी होगी *likhi hogī* 'will have written', either referring to some future time (such as 'Raju will have written a letter by Monday'), or making an assumption about the present (such as 'Presumably Raju will have written a letter by now').

E लिखी हो *likhī ho* 'may have written', in which the subjunctive हो *ho* shows that the matter is open to some doubt.

The same range can be used with any perfective verb:

पिताजी मिठाई लाए हैं/ थे ।

pitājī mithāī lāe hai/ the. Father has/had brought sweets.

पिताजी मिठाई लाए होंगे/ हों ।

pitājī mithāī lāe hōge. Father will/may have brought sweets.

In the above, the verbs agree with पिताजी *pitājī* (masculine honorific plural) because लाना *lānā*, though transitive, is not a ने *ne* verb.

मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाई हैं/ थीं ।

Motī ne das capātiyā khāi hai/ thī. Moti has/had eaten ten chapatties.

मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाई होंगी/हों ।

Motī ne das capātiyā khāi hōgi/ hō. Moti will/may have eaten ten chapatties.

Raju's version of the morning

Here's Raju's account of his morning, following an evening when he and Geeta had been to see a Hindi film starring Shahrukh Khan. Make sure you can understand all the verb agreements!



आज सुबह मैं पाँच बजे उठा ।
थोड़ी देर के लिए मैं आँगन में
बैठा । कल शाम को जब हम
शाहरुख खाँ की नई फिल्म
देखने सिनेमा गए तो बारिश
हुई थी लेकिन आज मैंने देखा
कि आकाश साफ है । * सुबह
के समय चारों ओर शान्ति
होती है । मुझे सुबह का समय
बहुत पसंद है ।

मैंने अपने लिए चाय बनाई । चाय पीने के बाद मैंने अपनी पत्नी
को जगाया । चाय बनाना तो दो मिनट का काम है लेकिन
मेमसाहब को जगाना दूसरी बात है । आखिर में जब वह नीचे आई
तो मैंने उसका नाश्ता तैयार किया । मैं तो नाश्ता कभी नहीं
खाता, लेकिन गीता ज़रूर खाती है । मैंने उसके लिए दो टोस्ट
बनाए । उसने चाय पी, आधा केला भी खाया । उसने शिकायत
की कि चाय में चीनी ज़्यादा है । * मैंने कहा कि तुम्हारी जिन्दगी
में थोड़ी मिठास की ज़रूरत है । *

*āj subah māi pāc bajे uthā. thoṛī der ke lie māi āgan mē baīthā.
kal sām ko jab ham Šāhrukh Khā kī nai film dekhne sinemā gae
to bāriś hui thi lekin āj maīne dekhā ki ākāś sāf hai.* subah ke
samay cārō or sānti hoti hai. mujhe subah kā samay bahut pasand
hai.*

*maīne apne lie cāy banāi. cāy pīne ke bād maīne apni patni ko
jagāyā. cāy banāna to do mināt kā kām hai lekin memsāhib ko
jagānā dūsri bāt hai. ākhir mē jab vāh nīce āi to maīne uskā nāstā
taiyār kiyā. māi to nāstā kabhi nahī khātā, lekin Gitā zarūr khātī
hai. maīne uske lie do tōṣt banāe. usne cāy pī, ādhā kelā bhī
khāyā. usne śikāyat ki ki cāy mē cīni zyādā hai.* maīne kahā ki
tumhāri zindagi mē thoṛī mīthās kī zarūrat hai.**

This morning I got up at five o'clock. For a little while I sat in the courtyard. Yesterday evening when we went to the cinema to see Shahrukh Khan's new film it had rained; but today I saw that the sky was clear.* In the mornings it's peaceful all around. I'm very fond of the morning time.

I made tea for myself. After having tea I woke up my wife. Making tea is two minutes' work but waking up the memsahib is another matter. Finally, when she came down I got her breakfast ready. Me, I never eat breakfast, but Geeta does of course. I made two pieces of toast for her. She had tea and ate half a banana too. She complained that there was too much sugar in the tea.* I said that she needed a bit of sweetness in her life.*

*These three sentences show the use of 'reported speech' in Hindi. Literally, they translate as 'Today I saw that the sky is clear'; 'She complained that "There's too much sugar in the tea"'; and 'I said, "In your life a bit of sweetness is needed"'.

Practise what you've learnt

Time for you to try your hand at the past tenses. Translate the following:

- 1 I got up early today.
- 2 My father woke me up at six o'clock.
- 3 He prepared breakfast for me.
- 4 Then I went out to buy a newspaper.
- 5 Near the shop I saw my uncle's car.
- 6 My uncle had gone into the shop.
- 7 My uncle saw me and asked me how I was.
- 8 He came home with me and I made coffee for him.
- 9 My father asked me where the newspaper was.
- 10 I said I hadn't brought the newspaper, I'd brought uncle.

► Geeta's version of the morning

आम तौर पर राजू मुझे देर से जगाता है लेकिन आज उसने मुझे जल्दी ही जगाया। मैं आराम से सो रही थी और शाहरुख खाँ का सपना देख रही थी। इतना मीठा सपना था! जब मैंने अपने पति की आवाज़ सुनी तो मैंने सोचा कि शाहरुख ही मुझे जगाने आया है। लेकिन यह तो सपना ही था। मैं नीचे रसोई में गई। मेरे पति

ने मेरे लिए दो टोस्ट बनाए थे। मैंने उसे कितनी बार बताया है कि मुझे टोस्ट पसंद नहीं लेकिन वह तो सुनता ही नहीं। चाय में उसने बहुत ज्यादा चीनी डाली थी। मेरे सिर में दर्द था इसलिए मैंने दो गोलियाँ खाई। राजू ने मुझे जगाने से पहले ही नाश्ता किया होगा क्योंकि मेरे साथ तो उसने कुछ नहीं खाया। मैंने उससे पूछा कि तुमने मुझे इतनी जल्दी क्यों जगाया, लेकिन उसने कोई जवाब नहीं दिया। शाहरुख, तू कहाँ है?

ām taur par Rājū mujhe der se jagātā hai lekin āj usne mujhe jaldi hī jagāyā. māi ārām se so rahi thi aur Sāhrukh Khā kā sapnā dekh rahi thi. itnā mīthā sapnā thā! jab maīne apne pati kī āvāz suni to maīne socā ki Sāhrukh hī mujhe jagāne āyā hai. lekin yah to sapnā hī thā. māi nice rasoi mē gaī. mere pati ne mere lie do ṭost banāe the. mainē use kitni bār batāyā hai ki mujhe ṭost pasand nahi lekin vah to suntā hī nahi. cāy mē usne bahut zyādā cini dālī thi. mere sir mē dard thā islie maīne do goliyā khāi. Rājū ne mujhe jagāne se pahle hī nāstā kiyā hogā kyōki mere sāth to usne kuch nahi khāyā. maīne usse pūchā ki tumne mujhe itnī jaldi kyō jagāyā, lekin usne koī javāb nahi diyā. Sāhrukh, tū kahā hai?

Usually Raju wakes me late but today he woke me very early. I was sleeping peacefully and dreaming about Shahrukh Khan [an actor]. It was such a sweet dream! When I heard my husband's voice I thought Shahrukh himself had come to wake me. But this was just a dream. I went down into the kitchen. My husband had made two pieces of toast for me. How many times have I told him that I don't like toast, but him, he doesn't listen. He'd put far too much sugar in the tea. I had a headache so I took two pills. Raju must have had breakfast before waking me because he didn't eat anything with me. I asked him why he woke me up so early but he didn't answer. Shahrukh, where art thou?

And here are some questions about the two accounts:

- १ सबसे पहले कौन उठा ?
sabse pahle kaun uthā?
- २ किसने किसके लिए नाश्ता तैयार किया ?
kisne kiske lie nāstā taiyār kiyā?
- ३ गीता को जगाने से पहले राजू ने क्या क्या किया ?
Gītā ko jagāne se pahle Rājū ne kyā kyā kiyā?

- ४ चाय के बारे में गीता की क्या शिकायत थी ?
cāy ke bare mē Gitā ki kyā sīkāyat thi?
- ५ गीता ने नाश्ता कहाँ किया ?
Gitā ne nāstā kahā kiyā?
- ६ किसने गोलियाँ खाई, और क्यों ?
kisne goliyā khāi, aur kyō?
- ७ क्या राजू और गीता को जल्दी उठना पसंद है ?
kyā Rājū aur Gitā ko jaldī uṭhnā pasand hai?
- ८ जब गीता ने राजू की आवाज सुनी तो उसने क्या सोचा ?
jab Gitā ne Rājū ki āvāz suni to usne kyā socā?
- ९ क्या शाहरुख ने गीता के साथ चाय पी ?
kyā Sāhrukh ne Gitā ke sāth cāy pi?

4 Sit and rest — linking two actions

English often links two successive actions with ‘and’, as in ‘sit and rest’. But Hindi has a neat short cut for this. Instead of saying बैठो और आराम करो *baiṭho aur ārām karo* we can say बैठकर आराम करो *baiṭhkar ārām karo*, in which बैठकर *baiṭhkar* means literally ‘having sat’.

This short verb form has a long name — the ‘absolutive’. (The name means that the construction is complete in itself, and has no impact on the surrounding grammar.) It consists of the stem + कर *kar*; thus जाकर *jākar* ‘having gone’, देखकर *dekhkar* ‘having seen’, etc.

हाथ धोकर खाओ ।

hāth dhokar khāo. Wash your hands and eat.

बैठकर आराम करो ।

baiṭhkar ārām karo. Sit and rest.

सोचकर बोलो ।

sockar bolo. Think before you speak.

चाय पीकर जाइए ।

cāy pikar jāie. Have some tea before you go.

A colloquial form of the absolute has -के -ke instead of -कर -kar (आके *āke*, जाके *jāke*, देखके *dekhke*, बुलाके *bulāke*). The verb करना *karnā* always uses this -के -ke form: करके *karke* ‘having done’.

हाथ धोके खाओ ।

hāth dhoke khāo. Wash your hands and eat.

अपना काम खत्म करके घर जाओ ।

apnā kām khatm karke ghar jāo. Finish your work and go home.

► What really happened that morning

Here’s a third-person account of Raju and Geeta’s morning. It contains several ‘absolutive’ expressions — how many can you spot?

आज उठकर राजू नीचे गया । फिर चाय बनाकर वह आँगन में बैठने गया । चाय पीकर वह अपने सपनों के बारे में सोचने लगा । सपने में उसने शाहरुख खाँ को देखा था । दरवाजे को तोड़कर शाहरुख घर में घुसा था, लेकिन राजू ने मेज पर से एक भारी शब्दकोश को उठाकर शाहरुख को खूब पीटा था ।

सात बजे राजू ने गीता का नाम पुकारकर उसे जगाने की कोशिश की लेकिन गीता तो धोड़े बेचकर सो रही थी । तब राजू ने खुद चार-पाँच टोस्ट बनाकर खाए । फिर तीन-चार संतरे खाए । आठ बजे उसने गीता के कंधे को हिलाकर उसे जगाया । फिर उसके लिए चाय बनाकर दो टोस्ट भी बनाए । जैंभाई लेकर गीता ने कहा कि “संतरा देना” तो राजू ने हँसकर कहा कि “मनोज ने जल्दी उठके सारे संतरे खाए होंगे, उसे तो संतरे बहुत पसंद हैं” ।

āj uthkar Rājū nice gayā. phir cāy banākar vah āgan mē baiṭhne gayā. cāy pikar vah apne sapnō ke bāre mē socne lagā. sapne mē usne Sāhrukh Khā ko dekhā thā. darvāze ko toṛkar Sāhrukh ghar mē ghusā thā, lekin Rājū ne mez par se ek bhāri śabdkoś ko uthākar Sāhrukh ko khüb pīṭā thā.

sāt baje Rājū ne Gitā kā nām pukārkar use jagāne kī kośis kī lekin Gitā to ghoṛe beckar so rahī thi. tab Rājū ne khud cār-pāc ṭosṭ banākar khāe. phir tīn-cār santare khāe. āth baje usne Gitā ke kandhe ko hilākar use jagāyā. phir uske lie cāy banākar do ṭosṭ bhī banāe. jābhāi lekar Gitā ne kahā ki ‘santarā denā’ to Rājū ne hāskar kahā ki ‘Manoj ne jaldī uthke sāre santare khāe hōge, use to santare bahut pasand haī’!

Today Raju got up and went downstairs. Then he made tea and went to sit in the courtyard. After drinking his tea he began to

think about his dreams. He had dreamed of Shahrukh Khan. Shahrukh had broken down the door and come into the room, but Raju had picked up a heavy dictionary from on the table and had given Shahrukh a good thrashing.

At seven o'clock Raju called out Gita's name and tried to wake her, but she was sleeping deeply. Raju himself made four or five pieces of toast and ate them. Then he ate three or four oranges. At eight o'clock he shook Geeta's shoulder and woke her. Then he made tea for her, and two pieces of toast as well. Geeta yawned and said 'Give me an orange', and Raju laughed and said, 'Manoj must have got up early and eaten all the oranges, he loves oranges!'

Exercise 10a Link the paired sentences about Raju and Javed, following the model shown. Remember that whether ने ne is used will depend on the main verb: in the model sentence, ने ne is used when the main verb is पीना pīnā, but not when it's जाना jānā.

मैंने चाय पी। मैं घर गया। > मैं चाय पीकर घर गया।
maīne cāy pī. maī ghar gayā. > maī cāy pīkar ghar gayā.

१ जावेद ने मुझे फोन किया। उसने कहा कि तबियत ख़राब है।
Jāved ne mujhe fon kiyā. usne kahā ki tabiyat kharāb hai.

२ मैं जावेद के घर गया। मैं उसके कमरे में गया।
maī Jāved ke ghar gayā. maī uske kamre mē gayā.

३ मैंने जावेद का हाल देखा। मैंने डाक्टर को बुलाया।
maīne Jāved kā hāl dekhā. maīne dākṭar ko bulāyā.

४ थोड़ी देर में डाक्टर आए। उन्होंने कहा कि जावेद बहुत ही कमज़ोर है।
thorī der mē dākṭar āe. unhōne kahā ki Jāved bahut hī kamzor hai.

५ डाक्टर ने जावेद को कुछ गोलियाँ दीं। उन्होंने उससे कहा कि रोज़ दो गोलियाँ लेना।
dākṭar ne Jāved ko kuch goliyāñ dī. unhōne usse kahā ki roz do goliyāñ lenā.

६ जावेद मुस्कराया। उसने डाक्टर से धन्यवाद कहा।
Jāved muskarāyā. usne dākṭar se dhanyavād kahā.

७ डाक्टर ने मेरी तरफ देखा। उन्होंने कहा कि 'अच्छा, तो मैं चलता हूँ'।

dākṭar ne merī taraf dekhā. unhōne kahā ki 'acchā, to mai cāltā hūñ'.

८ मैं ने कहा कि चाय पीजिए। फिर जाइए।
maīne kahā ki cāy pijie. phir jāie.

९ डाक्टर हँसे। उन्होंने कहा कि मैं चाय नहीं लूँगा, अपनी फीस लूँगा।

dākṭar hāse. unhōne kahā ki maī cāy nahī lūgā, apnī fis lūgā!

Exercise 10b Translate into Hindi. (This is a longish piece; you may want to do it in two parts. You'll find the new vocabulary in the glossary on the following pages.)

Yesterday morning I got up at six o'clock. After having breakfast I phoned my brother. He was sleeping. When he heard my voice he said, 'Why did you wake me up so early?' I said, 'Don't you remember? Today we are going to Jaipur [जयपुर jaypur]!' He asked, 'What time are we going?' I answered, 'We'll catch the ten o'clock train. Get ready quickly!' He yawned and said that he'd had a dream in the night. In the dream an old woman had said to him, 'Don't go anywhere today! Stay right at home!' I laughed and said, 'This was just a dream! Get up, won't you! Get ready.'

The train moved out of the station at exactly ten o'clock. But after twenty or twenty-five minutes it stopped. The engine had broken down. It was a desolate place; there was no village or house nearby. In the July heat everyone got down from the train and waited for several hours in the shade of some small trees. The heat was terrible. At three o'clock another train came and stopped. This second train had come to bring the passengers back to Delhi.

We heard the story of the train on the radio. We'd taken that old woman's advice! We'll go to Jaipur tomorrow...

Glossary

अकेलापन *akelāpan* m. loneliness
 आकाश *ākāś* m. sky
 आम¹ *ām* m. mango
 आम² *ām* ordinary; आम तौर पर *ām taur par* usually
 आराम से *ārām se* comfortably, easily
 इंजन *injan* m. engine (train)
 इंतज़ार *intazār* m. waiting, expecting, का इंतज़ार करना *kā intazār karnā* to wait for
 इतना *itnā* so much, so
 उठाना *uṭhānā* to pick up, raise
 कंधा *kandhā* m. shoulder
 कमज़ोर *kamzor* weak
 कहीं *kahī* anywhere
 कुर्ता *kurtā* m. kurta, loose shirt
 केला *kelā* m. banana
 खत्म *khatm* finished; खत्म करना *khatm karnā* to finish
 खराब हो जाना *kharāb ho jānā* to break down
 खुद *khud* oneself (myself etc.)
 गाँव *gāv* m. village
 गोली *goli* f. tablet, pill; bullet
 घुसना *ghusnā* to enter, sneak in, break in
 घोड़ा *ghoṛā* m. horse; घोड़े बेचकर सोना *ghore beckar sonā* to sleep like a log
 चपाती *capātī* f. chapati
 चारों ओर *cārō* or all around
 चिट्ठी *cīṭhi* f. letter, note
 चीनी *cīnī* f. sugar
 ज़ैभाई *jābhāī* f. yawn

जगाना *jagānā* to awaken
 जल्दी *jaldī* quickly, early; f. hurry
 जीतना *jītnā* to win, conquer
 टोस्ट *tōṣṭ* m. toast, piece of toast
 ठीख *thik* exactly
 डालना *dālnā* to put, pour
 तकलिफ *taklīf* f. suffering, pain, discomfort, inconvenience, trouble
 तब *tab* then
 तैयार *taiyār* ready, prepared; तैयार हो जाना *taiyār ho jānā* to get ready
 तोड़ना *toḍnā* to break, smash
 दर्द *dard* m. pain
 दाल *dāl* f. daal, lentil
 दीवार *divār*, दीवाल *divāl* f. wall
 दुर्घटना *durghatnā* f. accident
 देर *der* f. a while, length of time; delay; देर से *der se* late
 नहाना *nahānā* to bathe
 पकड़ना *pakānā* to catch
 पार्टी *pārtī* f. party
 पीटना *piṭnā* to beat, thrash
 पुकारना *pukārnā* to call out
 पेट *pet* m. stomach
 प्यास *pyās* f. thirst; प्यास लगना *pyās lagnā* (thirst to strike) to feel thirsty
 फ़ीस *fis* f. fee, fees
 बढ़िया *barhiyā* (invariable -ā) excellent, really good, fine
 बत्ती *battī* f. light, lamp
 बस *bas* f. bus

बाज़ार *bāzār* m. market, bazaar
 बार *bār* f. time, occasion; इस बार *is bār* this time; कितनी बार *kitnī bār* how many times?; कई बार *kai bār* several times
 बारिश *bāriś* f. rain; बारिश होना *bāriś honā* to rain
 बुलाना *bulānā* to call, invite, summon
 बोतल *botal* f. bottle
 भयंकर *bhayankar* terrible
 भूख *bhūkh* f. hunger; भूख लगना *bhūkh lagnā* (hunger to strike) to feel hungry
 महसूस करना *mahsūs karnā* to feel
 मिठाई *mithāī* f. sweet, sweetmeat
 मिठास *mithās* f. sweetness

मीठा *mithā* sweet
 मेमसाहब *memsāhab* f. memsahib

यात्री *yātrī* m. traveller, passenger

रसोई *rasoi* f. kitchen

लौटना *lauṭnā* to return

शांति *sānti* f. peace

शिकायत *sikāyat* f. complaint; शिकायत करना *sikāyat karna* to complain

संतरा *santara* m. orange

सलाह *salāh* f. advice

साया *sāyā* m. shade, shadow

सिर *sir* m. head

सुनसान *sunsān* desolate, empty
 हिलाना *hilānā* to move, shake

हुआ *huā* [past tense of होना *honā*] 'happened'

kahā
कहा जाता लगा कि
it is said that...

- In this unit you will learn
- how to say 'should' and 'must'
 - how to describe things *being done*
 - how to give directions

- Language points
- obligation expressions
 - passive verbs

► 1 A verb with many meanings

The verb लगना *lagnā* (literally 'to strike') carries a variety of meanings. Many of these relate to the experiencing of sensations such as heat or cold, hunger or thirst, which 'strike' or impinge on the person; but the range of usages is very wide. Here are some of them:

'To seem':

लगता है कि वह नहीं आएगी ।

lagtā hai ki vah nahī āegī. It seems she won't come.

तुम बहुत खुश नहीं लगते ।

tum bahut khuś nahī lagte. You don't seem too happy.

'Thirst/hunger/cold (etc.) to strike':

हमें गरमी/ठंड लग रही है ।

hamē garmī/thand lag rahī hai. We're feeling hot/cold.

मुझे प्यास/भूख लगी है ।

mujhe pyās/bhūkh lagī hai. I'm feeling thirsty/hungry.

'To strike one as good/bad etc.':

यह जगह मुझे बहुत अच्छी लगती है ।

yah jagah mujhe bahut acchi lagtī hai. I really like this place.

उनकी बातें हमें बुरी लगीं ।

unki bātē hamē burī lagī̄. We were hurt by what they said.

'To begin' (here it follows an oblique infinitive such as होने *hone*):

बारिश होने लगी ।

bāriš hone lagī. It began raining.

मैं सोचने लगा कि अब तो वह नहीं आएगी ।

maī socne lagī ki ab to vah nahī āegī. I began to think that she wouldn't come now.

'Time to be taken' (already seen in Unit 9; here the *unit of time* is the subject):

सितार सीखने में सात साल लगेंगे ।

sitar sikhne mē sāt sāl lagēge. Learning the sitar will take seven years.

2 Finding the way in Vilaspur

In this section we'll look at expressions that are useful for finding your way. Your first task is to familiarize yourself with the new words relating to 'directions' in the chapter glossary.

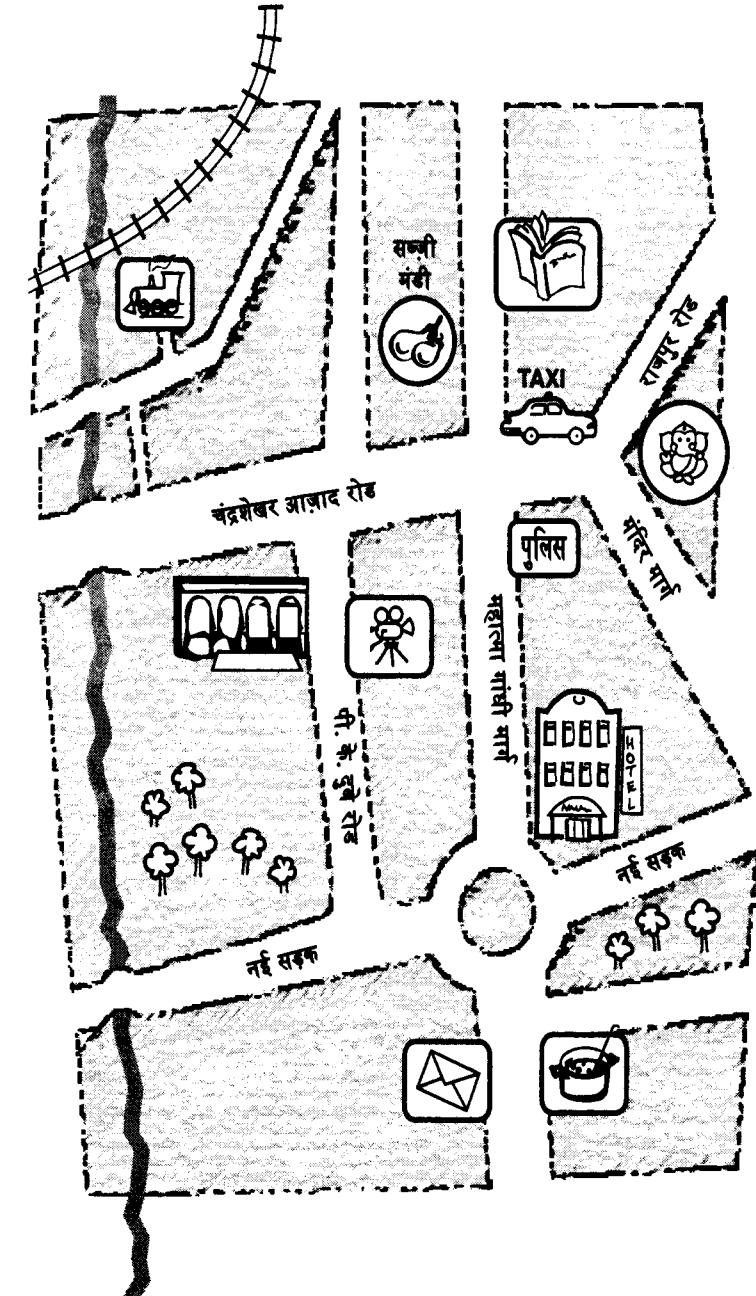
Then come with the Sharmas to the town of Vilaspur, shown in the map opposite; they're going to stay at the Madhuban Hotel and have been given some directions for getting there from the station:

स्टेशन से निकलकर दाहिने मुँड़िए। थोड़ी दूरी पर बायें हाथ पर एक तंग गली आएगी। इस गली में मुड़ना। आगे चलकर एक चौड़ी सड़क आएगी जिसे “चंद्रशेखर आज़ाद रोड” कहते हैं। बाएँ मुड़कर और सड़क को पार करके आप चलते जाएँ। दाहिने हाथ पर स्कूल दिखाई देगा। इसके बाद आप दाहिने मुँड़िए। इस सड़क का नाम मुझे याद नहीं लेकिन बायें हाथ पर सिनेमा दिखाई देगा। फिर थोड़ी दूर जाकर एक दूसरी बड़ी सड़क आएगी जिसे शायद “नई सड़क” कहते हैं। बाएँ मुँड़िए। फिर गोलचक्कर कर आएगा। गोलचक्कर के उस पार आपका मधुबन होटल दिखाई देगा।

स्टेशन से मधुबन होटल ज्यादा दूर नहीं है। मुश्किल से आठ-दस मिनट का रास्ता है। अगर आपके पास बहुत सामान हो तो बेहतर है कि आप रिक्षा लें। रिक्षेवाले से कहें कि होटल “एम० जी० रोड” पर है। वह बीस-पच्चीस रुपये लेगा। आप उसे पच्चीस से ज्यादा न दें।

stēśan se nikalkar dāhine muṛie. thoṛī dūrī par bāyē hāth par ek taṅg galī āegī. is galī mē mūrnā. āge calkar ek cauri sarak āegī jise ‘Candraśekhar Āzād roḍ’ kahte hai. bāyē murkar aur sarak ko pār karke āp calte jāē. dāhine hāth par skūl dikhāī degā. iske bād āp dāhine muṛie. is sarak kā nām mujhe yād nahī̄ lekin bāyē hāth par sinemā dikhāī degā. phir thoṛī dūr jākar ek dūsri baṛi sarak āegī jise shāyad ‘nai sarak’ kahte hai. bāyē muṛie. phir golcakkār āegā. golcakkār ke us pār āpkā madhuban hoṭal dikhāī degā.

stēśan se madhuban hoṭal zyādā dūr nahī̄ hai. muśkil se āth-das minat kā rāstā hai. agar āpke pās bahut sāmān ho to behtar hai ki āp rikṣā lē. rikṣevālē se kahē ki hoṭal ‘em. ji. roḍ’ par hai. vah bis-paccīs rupaye legā. āp use paccīs se zyādā na dē.



Emerging from the station, turn right. At a short distance you'll come to a narrow alley. Turn into this alley. Going straight on you'll reach a wide road which is called Chandrashekhar Azad Road. Turning left and crossing the road, keep going. A school will be seen on the right. After this turn right. I don't remember the name of this road but you'll see a cinema on your left. Then a little further on you'll come to another big road which is called maybe 'Nai Sarak' [New Road]. Turn left. Then you'll come to a roundabout. On the other side of the roundabout you'll see your Madhuban Hotel.

The Madhuban Hotel isn't far from the station. It's barely an eight- or ten-minute trip. If you've got a lot of luggage it would be better to take a rickshaw. Tell the rickshaw driver that the hotel is on 'M.G. Road'. The rickshaw driver will take 20 or 25 rupees. You shouldn't give him more than 25.

Play around with the map, describing journeys from place to place. Then...

True or false?

Are these statements right (सही sahi) or wrong (गलत galat)?
Answers below.

- | | सही
<i>sahi</i> | गलत
<i>galat</i> |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| १ मधुबन होटल के सामने एक स्कूल है।
<i>madhuban hotel ke sāmne ek skūl hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| २ सिनेमा थाने की बगल में है।
<i>sinemā thānē ki bagal mē hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ३ विलासपुर में तीन छोटे से पुल हैं।
<i>vilāspur mē tīn chōṭe-se pul hāi.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ४ डाकघर के सामने एक ढाबा है।
<i>dākghar ke sāmne ek dhābā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ५ सिनेमा गोल-चक्कर के बहुत पास है।
<i>sinemā golcakkar ke bahut pās hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ६ नई सड़क को "एम. जी. रोड" भी कहते हैं।
<i>nāi sarak ko 'em. ji. rod' bhī kahte hāi.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- | | | |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| ७ इस नक्शे में कुछ पेड़ दिखाई देते हैं।
<i>is naqše mē kuch per dikhāī dete hāi.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ८ गणेश मंदिर पश्चिम की तरफ है।
<i>Ganeś mandir paścim kī taraf hāi.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ९ स्टेशन से पुस्तकालय तक एक घंटे का रास्ता है।
<i>stēšan se pustakālay tak ek ghaṇṭe kā rāstā hāi.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| १० स्टेशन से गणेश मंदिर पहुँचने में छह-सात मिनट से ज्यादा नहीं लगेगे।
<i>stēšan se Ganeś mandir pahūcne mē chah-sāt minaṭ se zyādā nāhī lagēge.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Answers: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7 and 10 are right.

► 3 It is said that... the passive is easy

A passive verb is one that concentrates on *what is done*, rather than the person who does it. In other words, its focus is the action, not the doer of the action. Thus 'we give money' is active, and 'money is given' is passive. 'Money is given by the government' is also passive, but it identifies the doer of the action with a 'by' phrase.

The passive is based on the perfective participle (e.g. *दिया* *diyā* 'given'). But whereas English forms its passive with 'to be', Hindi uses *जाना* *jānā* — literally 'to go':

करना <i>karnā</i> to do	किया जाना <i>kiyā jānā</i> to be done
देना <i>denā</i> to give	दिया जाना <i>diyā jānā</i> to be given
रखना <i>rakhnā</i> to put	रखा जाना <i>rakhā jānā</i> to be put

होटल का इंतजाम किया जा रहा है।

hotel kā intazām kiyā jā rahā hāi. Arrangements for a hotel are being made.

आपको एक अच्छा कमरा दिया जाएगा।

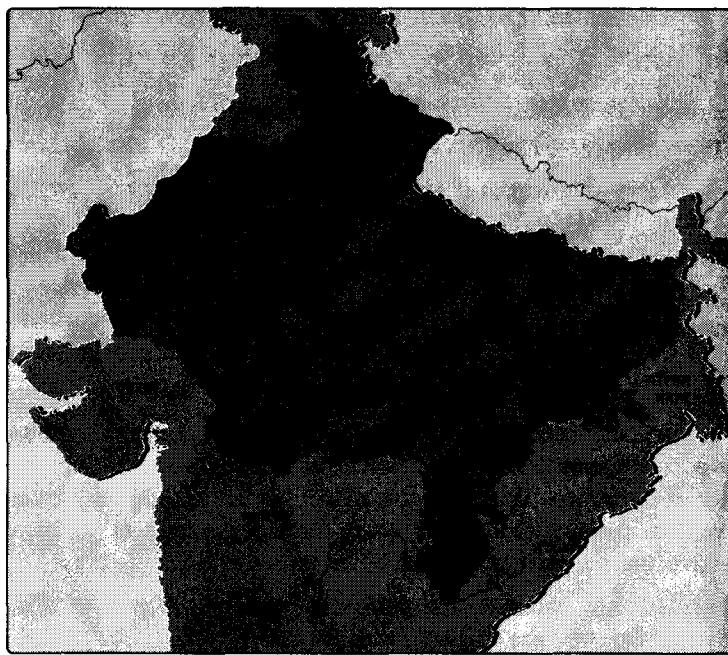
āpko ek acchā kamrā diyā jāegā. You will be given a good room.

आपका सामान टैक्सी में रखा गया है।

āpka sāmān tāksī mē rakhā gayā hāi. Your luggage has been put into the taxi.

India: states and languages

This map of northern India shows the ten states (shaded) where Hindi is the primary language.



Hindi is closely related to its neighbouring languages, such as Marathi (spoken in Maharashtra), Gujarati (Gujarat), Punjabi (Punjab), Bengali (West Bengal and Bangladesh), and so on. All these languages derive from Sanskrit, and share much vocabulary.

In South India — not shown here — are the four major languages of the ‘Dravidian’ family: Tamil (spoken in Tamil Nadu), Malayalam (Kerala), Kannada (Karnataka) and Telugu (Andhra Pradesh).

Now you have all the information you need to answer a few questions that involve passive verbs:

१ तमिल कहाँ बोली जाती है?
tamil kahā̄ bolī jātī hai?

२ मराठी कहाँ बोली जाती है?
marāthī kahā̄ bolī jātī hai?

३ केरल में कौनसी भाषा बोली जाती है?
keral mē kaunsī bhāṣā̄ bolī jātī hai?

४ हिन्दी कितने प्रदेशों में बोली जाती है?

hindī kitne pradeśō mē boli jātī hai?

५ दिल्ली और बिहार के बीच कौनसा प्रदेश पाया जाता है?

dillī aur bihār ke bīc kaunsā pradeś pāyā jātā hai?

Practise what you've learnt

Work out the passive infinitives of the following verbs (example: बनाना *banānā* to make, बनाया जाना *banāyā jānā* to be made).

खाना *khānā* to eat

डालना *dālnā* to pour

पीना *pīnā* to drink

बताना *batānā* to tell

लाना *lānā* to bring

लेना *lenā* to take

लिखना *likhnā* to write

कहना *kahnā* to say

(Answers: खाया जाना *khāyā jānā*, डाला जाना *dālā jānā*, पिया जाना *piyā jānā*, बताया जाना *batāyā jānā*, लाया जाना *lāyā jānā*, लिया जाना *liyā jānā*, लिखा जाना *likhā jānā*, कहा जाना *kahā jānā*)

Now make up a sentence using each of these passive verbs!

Agreement all round

Notice how *all* parts of the verb (the participle, e.g. दिया *diyā*, the form of जाना *jānā*, and the auxiliary होना *honā*) must agree with the subject. The subject is shown here in **bold**:

उनको पैसा दिया जाता है।

unko paisā̄ diyā jātā hai. Money is given to them.

उनको अच्छी सलाह दी जाती है।

unko acchī salāh dī jātī hai. Good advice is given to them.

उनको कपड़े दिए जाते हैं।

unko kapṛē die jātē hai. Clothes are given to them.

Any tense can have a passive verb

The passive can be used with all tenses etc.:

उनको पैसा दिया जाता है। [Present imperfective]

unko paisā̄ diyā jātā hai. Money is given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया जा रहा है। [Present continuous]

unko paisā̄ diyā jā rahā hai. Money is being given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया गया। [Perfective]

unko paisā diyā gayā. Money was given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया जाएगा। [Future]

unko paisā diyā jāegā. Money will be given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया जाए। [Subjunctive]

unko paisā diyā jāe. Money should be given to them.

The person *by whom* an action is done can be identified with *se* (or, in more formal Hindi, with *ke द्वारा*):

पैसा सरकार से (सरकार के द्वारा) दिया जाता है।

paisā sarkār se (sarkār ke dvārā) diyā jātā hai. Money is given by the government.

What's the passive for?

We use a passive verb when the main focus is on the *action done* rather than the *person doing it*. In saying ‘this money was found under the chair’, we’re more concerned with the *act of finding* than with the person who found it; if it had been the other way round, we would have said ‘So-and-so found this money under the chair’. In other words, passives offer a way of making ‘impersonal statements’: instead of saying ‘we use the passive’ at the beginning of this paragraph, I could have adopted a more impersonal tone by saying ‘the passive is used...’. The passive is used a lot in Hindi.

Sharma ji in his shop

Read the passage about Sharma ji in his shop, then answer the questions.

शर्मा जी अपनी दुकान में बैठकर सोच रहे थे। उन्होंने गोपाल को बुलाकर कहा, “बेटा, यह सारा सामान छोटे कमरे में रखो। फिर दुकान की सफाई करो। मैं बहुत थका हूँ, थोड़ी देर के लिए घर जाकर सोऊँगा। आठ बजे दुकान को बंद करना। फिर बीस रुपये लो और धोबी के पास जाकर मेरे साफ कपड़े लाओ।” पर गोपाल से कुछ नहीं सुना गया क्योंकि वह रेडियो को सुन रहा था।

Śarmā ji apni dukān mē baithkar soc rahe the. unhone Gopāl ko bulākar kahā, 'betā, yah sārā sāmān choṭe kamre mē rakho. phir

dukān ki safāi karo. maī bahut thakā hū, thori der ke lie ghar jākar soūgā. āth baje dukān ko band karnā. phir bīs rupaye lo aur dhobi ke pās jākar mere sāf kapre lāo.' par Gopāl se kuch nahi sunā gayā kyōki vah rediyo ko sun rahā thā.

Sharma ji was sitting in his shop thinking. He called Gopal and said, ‘Son, put this new stuff in the little room. Then clean the shop. I’m very tired, I’ll go home and sleep for a little while. Close the shop at eight o’clock. Then take twenty rupees and go to the dhobi and bring my clean clothes.’ But none of this was heard by Gopal because he was listening to the radio.

- 1 गोपाल को किससे बुलाया गया ?
Gopāl ko kisse ['by whom'] bulāyā gaya?
- 2 सामान कहाँ रखा जाएगा ?
sāmān kahā rakha jāegā?
- 3 कमरे की सफाई किससे की जाएगी ?
kamre ki safāi kisse ki jāegi?
- 4 दुकान को कितने बजे बंद किया जाएगा ?
dukān ko kitne baje band kiyā jāega?
- 5 शर्मा जी के साफ कपड़े कहाँ से लाए जाएंगे ?
Śarmā ji ke sāf kapde kahā se lāe jāēge?
- 6 गोपाल से शर्मा जी की बातें क्यों नहीं सुनी गई ?
Gopāl se Śarmā ji ki bātē kyō nahī sunī gaī?

Did you know?

Why is it that some Hindi words resemble their English equivalents so closely? There are various reasons: words can be ‘borrowed’ by one language from another one, or similar words from two different languages may share a common origin. A few examples may help make this clearer. Some words (such as बूट *būṭ* ‘boot’) have been borrowed by Hindi from English; others (such as ‘loot’ लूट *lūṭ*) have been borrowed by English from Hindi; others again, such as नाम *nām* ‘name’, or कटना *kaṭnā* ‘to be cut’, sound similar in the two languages because they have a shared ancestry going far back into the history of the Indo-European language family.

4 You should read this — obligations

Way back in Unit 5 we saw that चाहिए *cāhie*, used with को *ko*, meant ‘wanted, needed’. This construction relates to things, objects — ‘I want a newspaper’, and so on:

आपको क्या चाहिए ?

āpko kyā cāhie? What do you need/want?

मुझे (मुझको) आज का अखबार चाहिए !

mujhe (mujhko) āj kā akhbār cāhie. I want today's newspaper.

When चाहिए *cāhie* follows an infinitive verb (such as जाना *jānā* ‘to go’) it has a completely different meaning: it means ‘should, ought to’. Though the meaning of चाहिए *cāhie* has changed here, the word को *ko* remains an essential part of the construction

मुझको घर जाना चाहिए ।

mujhko ghar jānā cāhie. I should go home.

आपको ध्यान से सुनना चाहिए ।

āpko dhyān se sunnā cāhie. You should listen carefully.

उनको समझना चाहिए ।

unko samajhnā cāhie. They should understand.

हमको चलना चाहिए ।

hamko calnā cāhie. We should be on our way.

तुमको यहाँ रहना चाहिए ।

tumko yahā rahnā cāhie. You should stay here.

If there's a direct object involved, the infinitive verb agrees with it. In the next two sentences, the verbs बोलना *bolnā* ‘to speak’ and सीखना *sikhnā* ‘to learn’ have to agree with its feminine object, उर्दू *urdū* —

तुमको उर्दू बोलनी चाहिए ।

tumko urdū bolnī cāhie. You should speak Urdu.

हमको थोड़ी उर्दू सीखनी चाहिए ।

hamko thoṛī urdū sikhnī cāhie. We should learn a little Urdu.

You'll notice similar agreements in the following:

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए ।

unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie. They should listen to what I say.

द्राइवर को नक्शा खरीदना चाहिए ।

drāivar ko naqṣā kharidnā cāhie. The driver should buy a map.

राजू को ये खत पढ़ने चाहिए ।

Rājū ko ye khat parhne cāhie. Raju should read these letters.

आपको उनकी सलाह लेनी चाहिए ।

āpko unkī salāh lenī cāhie. You should take their advice.

Before going further, read the last four sentences again and make sure you understand what the infinitive verbs (सुननी *sunnī*, खरीदना *kharidnā*, पढ़ने *parhne* and लेनी *lenī* respectively) agree with.

When we were doing the ने *ne* construction in Unit 10, we saw that the postposition को *ko* ‘insulates’ the verb, preventing agreement — हमने चिट्ठियाँ पढ़ीं *hamne citthiyā̄ parhī̄*, but हमने चिट्ठियों को पढ़ा *hamne citthiyō̄ ko parhā*, both meaning ‘we read the letters’). Similarly with obligation expressions, the verb reverts to masculine singular when the direct object takes को *ko*. Confused? Look at the examples:

हमें चिट्ठियाँ पढ़नी चाहिए ।

hamē citthiyā̄ parhñī cāhie. We should read the letters.

becomes...

हमें चिट्ठियों को पढ़ना चाहिए ।

hamē citthiyō̄ ko parhñā cāhie. We should read the letters.

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए ।

unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie. They should listen to what I say.

becomes...

उन्हें मेरी बात को सुनना चाहिए ।

unhē merī bāt ko sunnā cāhie. They should listen to what I say.

Finally, using चाहिए *cāhie* in the past is simplicity itself. Just add था, थे, थी, थीं *thā, the, thi, thī*.

हमको ये चिट्ठियाँ पढ़नी चाहिए थीं ।

hamko citthiyā̄ parhñī cāhie thī. We should have read these letters.

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए थी ।

unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie thi. They should have listened to what I said.

Your help is needed

The Sharmas need your advice on various matters. Please respond:

- १ गीता बहुत थकी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?
Gitā bahut thakī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?
- २ मनोज के सिर में दर्द है। उसे क्या करना चाहिए ?
Manoj ke sir mē dard hai. use kyā karnā cāhie?
- ३ राजू ने देखा है कि फ़र्श गंदी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?
Rājū ne dekhā hai ki farś gandī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?
- ४ मीना को भूख लगी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?
Minā ko bhūkh lagī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?
- ५ शर्मा परिवार का घर बहुत छोटा है। उन लोगों को क्या करना चाहिए ?
Śarmā parivār kā ghar bahut chotā hai. un logō ko kyā karnā cāhie?

5 You must read this — stronger obligations

When 'I should' gives way to 'I have to' or 'I must', चाहिए *cāhie* gives way to stronger expressions. The first of these involves using the infinitive verb with है *hai*, as in मुझे जाना है *mujhe jānā hai* 'I have to go' or 'I am to go'.

Let us imagine that Raju's agenda for the day includes writing some letters, talking to Javed, and meeting his brother Mohan. He'd say:

मुझे पाँच ख़त लिखने हैं।

mujhe pāč khat likhne hai. I have to write five letters.

मुझे जावेद से कुछ बातें कहनी हैं।

mujhe Jāved se kuch bātē kahnī hai. I have to say some things to Javed.

मुझे मोहन से मिलना है।

mujhe Mohan se milnā hai. I have to meet Mohan.

The sense of compulsion here isn't very strong: these are just ordinary things that are to be done in the normal course of events. The verb agreement follows the pattern of the चाहिए *cāhie* usage: लिखने हैं *likhne hai* agrees with पाँच ख़त *pāč khat*, etc.

What's on today

The Sharma children have several things to do today. Taking as your model the sentence मनोज को जल्दी उठना है *Manoj ko jaldī uthnā hai* 'Manoj has to get up early', go through their lists.

MANOJ	MEENA	RAM
get up early	make breakfast	read a story
read the paper	do some studying	write a letter
go to the shops	write two letters	make a picture
phone Nani ji	rest	sleep at 9 o'clock

A stronger sense of compulsion involves the verb पड़ना *parnā*, literally meaning 'to fall' but here meaning 'to be compelled to', 'to really have to'. It's used when circumstances beyond your control make the action essential — as when the children have broken their father's radio...

हमें पिताजी को बताना पड़ेगा।

hamē pitājī ko batānā paregā. We'll have to tell father.

हमें नया रेडियो खरीदना पड़ेगा।

hamē nayā rediyo kharīdnā paregā. We'll have to buy a new radio.

पिताजी को हमें पैसे देने पड़ेंगे।

pitājī ko hamē paise dene parēge. Father will have to give us the money.

In the imperfective (पड़ता है *partā hai*, or पड़ता था *partā thā*), this same construction implies a compulsion that occurs *regularly* —

हमें रोज़ काम करना पड़ता है।

hamē roz kām karnā partā hai. We have to work every day.

मुझे सात बजे उठना पड़ता था।

mujhe sāt bajे uthnā partā thā. I [always] had to get up at seven.

क्या तुम्हें अपने कपड़े खुद धोने पड़ते हैं ?

kyā tumhē apne kapre khud phone parte hai? Do you have to wash your own clothes?

In the perfective (पड़ा *parā*), this same construction implies an unexpected compulsion, such as some kind of unforeseen event or emergency, as on discovering that Meena's car was stolen — complete with the children's toys! Keep an eye on the agreements: watch पड़ा *parā* changing to पड़ी *parī* or पड़े *pare* to match the object.

मुझे पुलिस को फ़ोन करना पड़ा ।

mujhe pulis ko fon karnā parā. I had to phone the police.

घर जाने के लिए हमें टैक्सी लेनी पड़ी ।

ghar jāne ke lie hamē taiksī lenī parī. We had to take a taxi to get home.

मुझे बच्चों के लिए नए खिलौने खरीदने पड़े ।

mujhe baccō ke lie nae khilaune kharīdne pare. I had to buy new toys for the children.

Exercise 11a Someone's having a party on Sunday. Translate:

- 1 About thirty people will be invited.
- 2 The house will be cleaned on Saturday.
- 3 The food will be made on Sunday morning.
- 4 In the afternoon some relatives will be fetched from the station.
- 5 Presents will be given to the children.
- 6 Lamps will be lit in the garden at night.
- 7 Music will be played too.
- 8 The neighbours will also be invited.

Exercise 11b Things haven't gone too well at the Madhuban Hotel, and you need to get the following points across to the long-suffering receptionist. Use passive verbs for the parts in bold print.

- 9 Today's food wasn't fresh — it seems it was **made** yesterday.
- 10 Your friends came to visit you last night, but you were not told that they had come.
- 11 Someone's dirty clothes were **put** in your room.
- 12 This evening you saw that the door of your room hadn't been **closed** properly...
- 13and your luggage had been **opened**.
- 14 You were not **given** hot water for bathing.
- 15 You gave clothes for washing two days ago but they have not been **given back**.

16 Your driver was **told** that he would [say 'will'] have to sleep in the car.

► Exercise 11c Enjoy (and translate) the receptionist's thoughts.

ये लोग मुझे क्यों तंग करते हैं ? वे हर रोज़ किसी चीज़ की शिकायत करते हैं। लगता है उनको शिकायत करना बहुत पसंद है। मालूम नहीं वे किस देश से आए हैं। मेरे ख़्याल से हमारे देश में आकर लोगों को हर चीज़ की शिकायत नहीं करनी चाहिए। उनको इस देश का आदर करना चाहिए। सच है कि उनके सामान को खोला नहीं जाना चाहिए था, लेकिन सारी दूसरी बातें तो मामूली-सी थीं। मुझे मैनेजर ['manager'] को इसके बारे में बताना चाहिए पर मैं उन्हें बताना नहीं चाहता। नहीं बताऊँगा। ये लोग भाड़ में जाएँ !

ye log mujhe kyō tang karte hai? ve har roz kisi cīz ki śikāyat karte hai. lagtā hai unko śikāyat karnā bahut pasand hai. mālūm nahī ve kis des se ē hai. mere khyāl se hamāre des mē ākar logō ko har cīz ki śikāyat nahī karnī cāhie. unko is des kā ādar karnā cāhie. sac hai ki unke sāmān ko kholā nahī jānā cāhie thā, lekin sārī dūsrī bātē to māmūlī-sī thi. mujhe mainejar ko iske bāre mē batānā cāhie par maī unhē batānā nahī cāhtā. nahī batāūgā. ye log bhāṛ mē jāē!

Glossary

आगे āge ahead	गरम garam hot, warm
आदर ādar m. respect	चलते जाना calte jānā to keep going
इमारत imārat f. building	चौड़ा caurā wide, broad
उत्तर uttar north	जलाना jalānā to light
उर्दू urdū f. Urdu	टैक्सी taiksī f. taxi
कहानी kahānī f. story	तंग tang narrow
के द्वारा ke dvārā by (in formal passive sentences)	तंग करना tang karnā to annoy, harass
ख़्याल khyāl, m. opinion, thought, idea	तोहफ़ा tohfā m. gift, present
खिलौना khilaunā m. toy	थकना thaknā to get tired

थाना *thānā* m. police station
दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ* south
दवाखाना *davākhānā* m.
 pharmacy, chemist's shop
दाहिना *dāhinā* right (not left)
देश *des* m. country
धोबी *dhobi* m. washerman
नक्शा *naqšā* m. map
निकलना *nikalnā* to emerge,
 come/go out
पचास *pacās* fifty
पड़ना *paṛnā* to fall; to have to
 (with preceding infinitive —
 मुझे जाना पड़ेगा *mujhe jānā*
 परेगा 'I'll have to go')
पश्चिम *paścim* west
पार *pār* across; पार करना *pār*
 ^{karnā} to cross; उस पार *us pār*
 on the other side (of, के ke)
पुलिस *pulis* f. police
पुस्तकालय *pustakālay* m. library
पूर्व *pūrv* east
प्रदेश *pradeś* m. state, region
बजे *baje* o'clock
बटुआ *baṭuā* m. purse, wallet
बायाँ *bāyā* left (direction)

बुरा *burā* bad
भाड़ में जाए *bhāṛ mē jāe* '(he/she)
 can go to hell' (भाड़ *bhāṛ* m.
 grain-parching oven)
मंदिर *mandir* m. temple
मराठी *marāṭhi* f. Marathi,
 language of Maharashtra
माफ़ी *māfi* f. forgiveness; माफ़ी
 माँगना *māfi māgnā* to
 apologize
मामूली *māmūlī* ordinary
मार्ग *mārg* m. road, street (used
 in street names)
मैला *mailā* dirty
रिक्शेवाला *rikṣevālā* m.
 rickshaw driver
रिश्तेदार *riśtedār* m. relation,
 relative
लगना *lagnā* to seem; to be felt
 (of hunger, thirst etc.); to
 take (time); to have an
 effect; to begin (following
 an oblique infinitive)
सरकार *sarkār* f. government
सामान *sāmān* m. goods,
 furniture, luggage

2

तभियत और शैली

tabiyat
health and style

- In this unit you will learn
- how to talk about getting things done by others
 - ways of adding nuance to what you say
 - terms for health matters

Language points

- relative clauses
- causative verbs
- compound verbs

► 1 'J-words' and relative clauses

Earlier we saw a set of 'question-words' beginning with *k*-.

कब *kab* when? **कहाँ** *kahā* where? **कौन** *kaun* who?

Now we meet a similar set of words, this time beginning with *j*-.
These are used in 'relative clauses', where they introduce one clause
that is 'related' or linked to a second one. Here are three members of
this set:

जब *jab* when **जहाँ** *jahā* where **जो** *jo* who

जब *jab* is often partnered by **तो** *to* (or **तब** *tab* 'then') which ushers in
a paired clause:

जब मैं छोटा था तो मुझे संगीत का बहुत शौक था ।

jab māi chotā thā to mujhe sangīt kā bahut śauq thā. When I was
little I was very fond of music.

जब लता जी गाती थीं तब पिताजी भी सुनते थे ।

jab Latā jī gātī thi tab pitāji bhi sunte the. When Lata ji sang,
even Father used to listen.

जब संगीत शुरू होता था तो सब लोग नाचने लगते थे ।

jab sangīt śurū hotā thā to sab log nācne lagte the. When the
music started everyone would begin to dance.

जहाँ *jahā* is often partnered by **वहाँ** *vahā* 'there':

जहाँ मैं रहता हूँ वहाँ कोई सिनेमा नहीं है ।

jahā māi rahtā hū, vahā koi sinemā nahī hai. Where I live,
there's no cinema.

जहाँ सिनेमा पहले था वहाँ एक होटल बन रहा है ।

jahā sinemā pahle thā vahā ek hotel ban rahā hai. Where the
cinema was previously, a hotel is being built.

जहाँ लोग सो रहे हों वहाँ रेडियो मत बजाना ।

jahā log so rahe hō vahā rediyo mat bajānā. Don't play the radio
where people may be sleeping.

जो *jo* 'who/which/what' is often partnered by **वह** / **वे** *vah* / *ve*:

जो आदमी रेडियो में गाना गाता है वह सामने रहता है ।

jo ādmī rediyo mē gānā gātā hai vah sāmne rahtā hai. The man
who sings on the radio lives opposite.

जो गाना तुमने गाया, वह हमें बहुत पसंद आया ।

jo gānā tumne gāyā, vah hamē bahut pasand āyā. We really
liked the song you sang. ('The song you sang, it pleased us...')

जो लोग गाना सीखना चाहते हैं उनको यह गाना सुनना चाहिए ।

jo log gānā sikhnā cāhte haī unkō yah gānā sunnā cāhie. People
who want to learn to sing should listen to this song.

जो *jo* has the oblique जिस *jis* (singular) and जिन *jin* (plural):

जिसने यह फ़िल्म बनाई वह मेरा पुराना दोस्त है ।

jisne yah film banāi vah mera purānā dost hai. The person who
made this film is my old friend.

जिस फ़िल्म में यह गाना आता है वह काफ़ी पुरानी है ।

jis film mē yah gānā ātā hai vah kāfī purānī hai. The film in
which this song comes is quite old.

जिन लोगों ने 'शोले' फ़िल्म देखी है वे उसे कभी नहीं भूलेंगे ।

jin logō ne 'śole' film dekhī hai ve use kabhī nahī bhūlēge.
People who have seen the film 'Sholay' will never forget it.

► Hiralal helps us out

Now a narrative about Hiralal the rickshaw driver helps us get used
to relative clauses. In addition to a couple of English words used here
(‘artist’, ‘seat’), you will need these new words:

शानदार *sāndār* splendid

हीरा *hīrā* m. diamond

चमकना *camaknā* to shine

सवारी *savārī* f. passenger, rider

जेब *jeb* f. pocket

थक जाना *thak jānā* to get tired

मुफ्त (का) *muft (kā)* cost-free

बारिश *bāriś* f. rain

गरीब *garīb* poor

मौसम *mausam* m. weather

पहाड़ *pahāṛ* m. hill

चढ़ाव *cārhāv* m. rise, incline

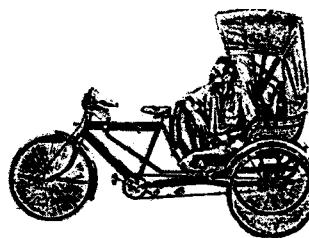
भारी *bhārī* heavy

चढ़ना *cārhnā* to climb, get into vehicle

बज्रन *vazan* m. weight

हो जाना *ho jānā* to become
उतरना *utarnā*, उतर जाना *utar jānā* to get down, alight
लेटना *letnā* to lie down

यह हीरालाल है, जो आगे
में रहता है। हीरालाल
रिक्शेवाला है। जो रिक्शा
हीरालाल चलाता है वह
बहुत शानदार है। वह हीरे
की तरह चमकता है!
जिसने यह रिक्शा बनाया
हो! वह बहुत बड़ा आर्टिस्ट
होगा।²



जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ बहुत-से दूसरे रिक्शेवाले भी रहते हैं।
रिक्शे तो बहुत हैं लेकिन सवारियाँ कम आती हैं।³ जब एक भी
सवारी नहीं आती तब हीरालाल की जेब खाली रहती है। जब जेब
खाली रहती है तो पेट भी खाली रहता है। मुफ्त का खाना कहाँ
मिलता है?⁴ और जब बारिश होती है तब भी हीरालाल को काम
करना पड़ता है। जो लोग गरीब हैं उनको हर मौसम में काम करना
पड़ता है।

जहाँ पहाड़ या चढ़ाव हो वहाँ रिक्शा चलाना बहुत ही मुश्किल है।
जब दो मोटे लोग अपने भारी सामान को लेकर⁵ रिक्शे में चढ़ते हैं
तो वजन बहुत ज्यादा हो जाता है। जब सवारियाँ उतर जाती हैं तो
हीरालाल अपने रिक्शे की सीट पर लेटकर सोता है। जो लोग रिक्शे
चलाते हैं उन्हें बहुत मेहनत करनी पड़ती है।

*yah Hiräläl hai, jo ägre mē rahtā hai. Hiräläl rikśevälā hai.
jo rikśa Hiräläl calätā hai vah bahut sändär hai. vah hire kī
tarah camaktā hai! jisne yah riksā banäyā ho¹ vah bahut barä
ärtist hogā.²*

*jahā Hiräläl rahtā hai vahā bahut-se dūsre rikśevalé bhī rahte hai.
rikśe to bahut hai lekin saväriyā kam äti hai.³ jab ek bhī*

*saväri nahī̄ äti tab Hiräläl ki jeb khäli rahtī hai. jab jeb
khäli rahtī hai to peṭ bhī khäli rahtā hai. muft kā khänā kahā
miltā hai?⁴ aur jab bärísh hotī hai tab bhī Hiräläl ko käm
karnā partā hai. jo log garib hai unko har mausam mē käm karnā
partā hai.*

*jahā pahār yā cārhāv ho vahā rikśa calānā bahut hī muškil hai.
jab do moṭe log apne bhārī sāmān ko lekar⁵ rikśe mē cārhte hai
to vazan bahut zyādā ho jātā hai. jab saväriyā utar jātī hai to
Hiräläl apne rikśe ki sit par letkar sotā hai. jo log rikśe
calāte hai unhē bahut mehnat karnī partī hai.*

This is Hiralal, who lives in Agra. Hiralal is a rickshaw driver. The rickshaw that Hiralal drives is very fine. It shines like a diamond! Whoever made this rickshaw¹ must be a very great artist.²

Where Hiralal lives many other rickshaw-drivers live too. There are lots of rickshaws but few passengers come.³ When not a single passenger comes, Hiralal's pocket remains empty. When the pocket remains empty the stomach also remains empty. Where can one get free food?⁴ And when it rains, even then Hiralal has to work. People who are poor have to work in all weathers ['in every weather'].

Where there's a hill or a slope it's very difficult to drive a rickshaw. When two fat people get onto the rickshaw with their heavy luggage⁵ the weight gets too much. When the passengers get down Hiralal lies down on the seat of his rickshaw and sleeps. People who drive rickshaws have to work very hard.

1 जिसने यह रिक्शा बनाया हो *jisne ya rikśa banäyā ho* — ‘the person who made this rickshaw’; हो *ho* is subjunctive (see 9.2) to reflect the fact that the identity of the person is vague or unknown.

2 Remember that the future can express an assumption — ‘he must be a very great artist’ (lit. ‘he will be...’).

3 The noun सवारी *saväri* is feminine, even if the ‘passenger’ described is male.

4 मुफ्त का खाना कहाँ मिलता है? *muft kā khänā kahā miltā hai?* ‘Where can you get food for free?’ It’s a rhetorical question — you can’t get free food anywhere.

5 भारी सामान को लेकर *bhārī sāmān ko lekar* ‘taking heavy luggage’ i.e. having heavy luggage with them.

True or false?Are these statements right (सही *sahī*) or wrong (गलत *galat*)?

Answers below.

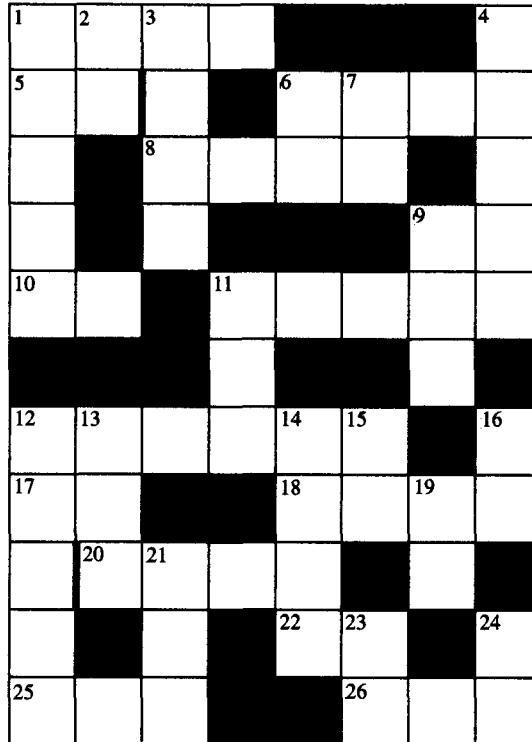
सही गलत
sahī *galat*

- १ हीरालाल दिल्ली से है ।
Hiräläl dilli se hai.
- २ उसके पास बहुत पैसा है ।
uske pās bahut paisā hai.
- ३ हीरालाल का रिक्षा काफ़ी सुंदर है ।
Hiräläl kā rikṣā kāfī sundar hai.
- ४ हीरालाल के घर के पास कोई दूसरा रिक्षेवाला नहीं रहता ।
Hiräläl ke ghar ke pās koi dūsrā rikṣevālā nahī̄ rahtā.
- ५ सवारियों की कोई कमी नहीं है ।
savāriyō̄ kī koi kami nahī̄ hai.
- ६ बारिश के मौसम में हीरालाल काम नहीं करता ।
bāriš ke mausam mē Hiräläl kām nahī̄ kartā.
- ७ हीरालाल को खाना मुफ्त में मिलता है ।
Hiräläl ko khānā muft mē miltā hai.
- ८ जब हीरालाल थक जाता है तो वह सोता है ।
jab Hiräläl thak jātā hai to vah sotā hai.

Answers: Only 3 and 8 are right.

A crossword puzzle

And now for something completely different: a crossword puzzle. Because the basic unit of the Devanagari script is the *syllable* (and not the individual letter, as in roman-script languages), each square will contain a complete syllable: so the word सोमवार *somvar* ‘Monday’ would split up into four component units, सो | म | वा | र (*so* | *m* | *va* | *r*). You will need to look up one or two words in the English-Hindi vocabulary.

**ACROSS**

- 1 brave
- 5 political party, group
- 6 teacher (female)
- 8 Madhuban (hotel name)
- 9 always (archaic/formal)
- 10 then
- 11 Tuesday
- 12 newspaper seller
- 17 don't...!
- 18 ashtray
- 20 an Indian epic poem
- 22 straight
- 25 to bathe
- 26 singer

DOWN

- 1 ugly
- 2 condition, state
- 3 enemy
- 4 shopkeeper
- 6 now
- 7 concentration, attention
- 9 question
- 11 temple
- 12 American
- 13 danger
- 14 ancient city on Ganges
- 15 100,000
- 16 that is to say
- 19 lentils
- 21 to hit
- 23 thread
- 24 one

2 Getting things done – causatives

As you know, the Hindi for ‘to make’ is बनाना *banānā* (हम चाय बनाएंगे *ham cāy banāēge* ‘we’ll make tea’). Extend this to बनवाना *banvānā* and you have a verb that means ‘to get made, to cause to be made’.

हम चाय बनवाएँगे ।

ham cāy banvāēge. We’ll get tea made.

हम नौकर से चाय बनवाएँगे ।

ham naukar se cāy banvāēge. We’ll get tea made by the servant.

These verbs with -ा- -वा- extensions are called ‘causatives’. The word से *se* conveys the sense ‘by’: नौकर से *naukar se* ‘by the servant’.

Some causatives are less obviously connected to their base verb. For example, धोना *dhonā* ‘to wash’ yields the causative धुलवाना *dhulvānā* ‘to get washed’, and सीना *sīnā* ‘to sew’ has सिलवाना *silvānā* ‘to get sewn’.

How many causatives can you spot in the following, in which Geeta talks about her annual preparations for Diwali?

सबसे पहले मैं दरजी से नए कपड़े सिलवाती हूँ । फिर धोबी को बुलवाकर मैं उससे सारे गंदे कपड़े धुलवाती हूँ । जो कपड़े मैंने खुद धोए हों उनको मैं धोबी से प्रेस [‘press’] करवाती हूँ । फिर घर को अच्छी तरह से साफ़ करवाती हूँ और रात का खाना बनवाती हूँ । रात को हम दिये जलाते हैं, या उनको बच्चों से जलाते हैं ।

sabse pahle mai darzi se nae kapre silvātī hū. phir dhobi ko bulvākar mai usse sāre gande kapre dhulvātī hū. jo kapre maīne khud dhoe hō unko mai dhobi se pres [‘press’] karvātī hū. phir ghar ko acchī tarah se sāf karvātī hū aur rāt kā khānā banvātī hū. rāt ko ham diye jalātē hāi, yā unko baccō se jalvātē hāi.

First of all I get new clothes sewn by the tailor. Then I have the dhobi called and I get all the dirty clothes washed by him [‘get him to wash...’]. Whatever clothes I’ve washed myself I get ironed by him. Then I get the house cleaned thoroughly and I get dinner made. At night we light lamps, or get them lit by the children [‘get the children to light them’].

There are seven causatives here (including two appearances of करवाना *karvānā* ‘to get done, cause to be done’):

सिलवाना *silvānā* to get sewn (सीना *sīnā* to sew)

बुलवाना *bulvānā* to get called, to summon (बुलाना *bulānā* to call)

धुलवाना *dhulvānā* to get washed (धोना *dhonā* to wash)

प्रेस करवाना *pres karvānā* to get pressed, ironed (प्रेस करना *pres karnā* to press, iron)

साफ़ करवाना *sāf karvānā* to get cleaned (साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean)

बनवाना *banvānā* to get made (बनाना *banānā* to make)

जलवाना *jalvānā* to get lit (जलाना *jalānā* to light)

Verb triplets

You’ll often find triplets of related verbs like these sets:

बनना	बनाना	बनवाना
<i>bannā</i> to be made	<i>banānā</i> to make	<i>banvānā</i> to get made
बोलना	बुलाना	बुलवाना
<i>bolna</i> to speak	<i>bulānā</i> to call	<i>bulvānā</i> to summon
धुलना	धोना	धुलवाना
<i>dhulnā</i> to be washed	<i>dhonā</i> to wash	<i>dhulvānā</i> to get washed
जलना	जलाना	जलवाना
<i>jalnā</i> to burn	<i>jalānā</i> to light	<i>jalvānā</i> to get lit

Practise what you’ve learnt

Now it’s your turn to use causatives. Translate these sentences using the verbs provided.

- 1 We’ll have the children taught Hindi by Sharma ji.
(सिखवाना *sikhvānā* to have taught)
- 2 I got some food prepared by the servants.
(तैयार करवाना *taiyār karvānā* to get prepared)
- 3 We have to get the car fixed.
(ठीक करवाना *thik karvānā* to get fixed)

- 4 I want to get some kurtas sewn by Masterji.
(सिलवाना *silvānā* to get sewn)
- 5 I got these letters written by someone.
(लिखवाना *likhvānā* to get written)

Did you know?

The popular Hindi film from Bombay brings a knowledge of the language to millions of people outside the Hindi-speaking area. Despite its nickname of 'Bollywood', the Hindi film industry has its own conventions — quite different from those of Hollywood.

A visit to the doctor

Sadly, Raju has been feeling unwell. Can the doctor help?

डाक्टर आइए, आइए। क्या तकलीफ है आपको ?

राजू डाक्टर साहब, मेरा सारा शरीर दर्द कर रहा है।¹

डाक्टर आपकी तबियत कब से ख़राब है ?

राजू दो दिन से। परसों में काम पर जानेवाला था² कि³ सिर में दर्द होने लगा।

डाक्टर लगता है आपको फ्लू हो गया है।⁴

राजू तो मुझे क्या करना चाहिए ?

डाक्टर सिर्फ़ आराम करना चाहिए।

राजू कोई दवा या गोली तो दीजिए !

डाक्टर आपको किसी गोली-बोली⁵ की ज़रूरत नहीं है। आराम ही इलाज है।

dākṭar āie, āie. kyā taklif hai āpko?

Rājū dākṭar sāhab, merā sārā śarīr dard kar rahā hai.¹

dākṭar āpki tabiyat kab se kharāb hai?

Rājū do din se, parsō maī kām par jānevālā thā² ki³ sir mē dard hone lagā.

dākṭar lagtā hai āpko flū ho gayā hai.⁴

Rājū to mujhe kyā karnā cāhie?

dākṭar sirf ārām karnā cāhie.

- Rājū** koī davā yā goli dijie.
- dākṭar** āpko kisi goli-voli⁵ ki zarūrat nahī̄ hai. ārām hī ilāj hai.
- Doctor** Come in, come in. What's your complaint?
- Raju** Doctor sahib, my whole body is aching.
- Doctor** How long has your health been bad?
- Raju** For two days. The day before yesterday I was just about to go to work when my head started to ache.
- Doctor** It seems you've caught flu.
- Raju** So what should I do?
- Doctor** You should just rest.
- Raju** Please give [me] some medicine or tablet!
- Doctor** You don't need any tablet or anything like that. Rest itself is the cure.

1 दर्द करना *dard karnā* 'to hurt'; also दर्द होना *dard honā* 'to have a pain' (मेरे सिर में दर्द हो रहा है *mere sir mē dard ho rahā hai* 'I have a headache').

2 मैं जानेवाला था *maī jānevālā thā* 'I was about to go'; -वाला *-vālā* added to a verb ending in *-ne* means 'about to'. गीता अभी जानेवाली है *Gitā abhī jānevālī hai* 'Geeta's just about to go', मैं अभी आपको फोन करनेवाला था *maī abhī āpko fon karnevālā thā* 'I was just about to phone you'.

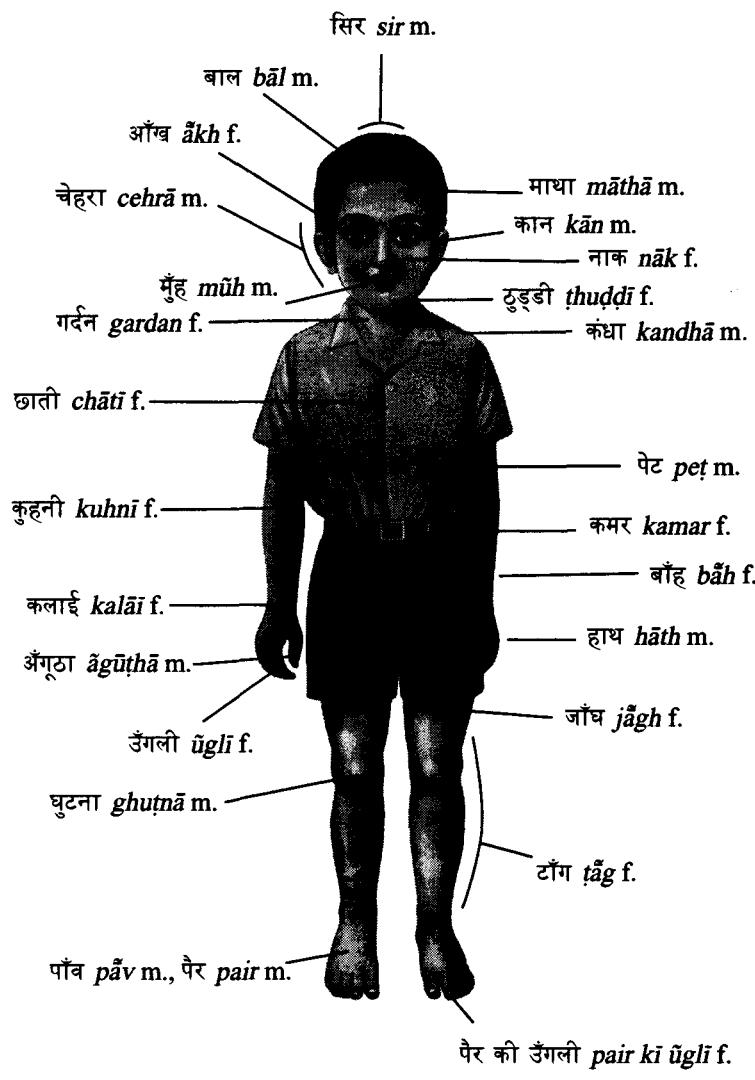
3 कि *ki* here means 'when, when suddenly' in this construction with -वाला *-vālā* (see note 2).

4 हो जाना *ho jānā* is the simplest way of saying 'to get' an illness etc. The patient takes को *ko*.

6 गोली-बोली *goli-voli* 'tablet or anything like that' — बोली *voli* is a meaningless echo-word. Echo-words, usually beginning *v-*, generalize the sense of the preceding word, opening out the range of meaning from something specific (here, medicine) to a broader category (here, any kind of medication). Compare the following: चाय-चाय *cāy-vāy* 'tea etc.', खाना-खाना *khānā-vānā* 'food, something to eat', पानी-पानी *pānī-vānī* 'water, something to drink'. The doctor's remark here has a disparaging touch: 'You don't need any tablet or any such nonsense!'

3 Parts of the body

In order to explain feelings of pain and sickness etc. you need to know the main parts of the body. Ram has helpfully agreed to pose for us (for a substantial fee):



The doctor asks you some questions

Role play: you go to the doctor because you've had a stomach ache, sickness and diarrhoea for two days. You have a headache but your temperature is normal. Your alcohol consumption is moderate; you usually sleep OK. You have been careful about your food, and the only water you drink is bottled water (बोतल का पानी *botal kā pānī*). Now, answer the doctor's questions:

- १ आपकी तबियत कब से खराब है ?
āpki tabiyat kab se kharāb hai? How long has your health been bad?
- २ आपको बुखार तो नहीं है ?
āpko bukhār to nahī̄ hai? You don't have fever, do you?
- ३ क्या सिर में दर्द है ?
kyā sir mē dard hai? Do you have a headache?
- ४ आप बाहर का खाना खाते/खाती हैं, बाजार में ?
āp bāhar kā khānā khāte/khātī hai, bāzār mē? Do you eat food from outside, in the market?
- ५ आप नल का पानी पीते/पीती हैं ?
āp nal kā pānī pīte/pīti hai? Do you drink tap water?
- ६ उलटी हो रही है ?
ultī ho rahī hai? [Are you] Having vomiting attacks?
- ७ दस्त भी है ?
dast bhī hai? Is there diarrhoea too?
- ८ क्या आप शराब पीते/पीती हैं ?
kyā āp śarāb pīte/pīti hai? Do you drink alcohol?
- ९ क्या आपको नींद ठीक से आती है ?
kyā āpko niid thiik se ātī hai? Do you sleep properly?
- १० आप कितने बजे सोते/सोती हैं ?
āp kitne bajे sote/sotī hai? What time do you sleep?
- ११ कितने घंटे सोते/सोती हैं ?
kitne ghante sote/sotī hai? How many hours do you sleep?
- १२ और कोई तकलीफ है आपको ?
aur koi taklif hai āpko? Do you have any other symptoms?

4 Shades of meaning

Different languages have different ways of adding shades of meaning to a statement. In English, for example, the basic verb ‘to write’ underlies the variations ‘write down, write up, write out, write in’ and so on. In Hindi, shades of meaning are often conveyed by a *pairing of two verbs*. Think of it being a bit like making lassi, the yoghurt drink: the first verb is the yoghurt that gives the basic meaning, while the second verb is the choice of sugar or salt that adds the flavouring. Here’s an example with लिखना *likhnā* ‘to write’ as first verb, and लेना *lenā* ‘to take’ or देना *denā* ‘to give’ as second verb:

मेरा पता लिख लो !

merā patā likh lo. Write down my address.

नहीं, तुम लिख दो !

nahī, tum likh do. No, you write [it] out.

लिख लो *likh lo* — this combines the basic sense of लिखना *likhnā* ‘to write’ with a shade of meaning from लेना *lenā* ‘to take’; लेना *lenā* here suggests that the action is a ‘taking’ one — something done *for the benefit of the person who does the action*. So the implied meaning is ‘Take down my address [for your own use]’.

लिख दो *likh do* — this combines the basic sense of लिखना *likhnā* with a shade of meaning from देना *denā* ‘to give’; देना *denā* here suggests that the action is a ‘giving’ one — something done *for the benefit of someone else*. So the implied meaning is ‘Write it out for me’.

As well as लेना *lenā* and देना *denā*, another verb commonly used in this construction is जाना *jānā*, literally ‘to go’. In harmony with its literal meaning of movement from one place to another, it colours a preceding verb with a sense of *completed action*, or a *change of state*:

अरे ! बिजली बंद हो गई !

are! bijli band ho gai! Hey! The electricity’s gone off!

अच्छा ? मैं तो सो गया था ।

acchā? maī to so gayā thā. Really? I’d gone to sleep.

बिजली बंद हो गई *bijli band ho gai* — the main verb होना *honā* ‘to be’ changes to हो जाना *ho jānā* ‘to become’, because a *change of state* has taken place.

मैं सो गया था *maī so gayā thā* — the verb सोना *sonā* ‘to sleep’ changes to सो जाना *so jānā* ‘to go to sleep’, with the sense of ‘go’ very similar in both English and Hindi.

Verbs of this kind are called ‘compound verbs’. (Hindi has a better name for them — रंजक क्रिया *ranjak kriyā* ‘colouring verbs’.) There are many more combinations, some of which are given in the Grammar Summary, but लेना *lenā*, देना *denā* and जाना *jānā* are by far the most common.

The ने *ne* construction is only used with compound verbs if *both* verbs in the compound are ने *ne* verbs (i.e. ones that are marked with N in the glossary at the end of the book).

Finally, a word of warning: compound verbs give a specific sense of the way in which a *particular* action is done. It therefore follows that a *sentence that’s negative or general won’t use them*; if no one drinks the lassi, its taste is irrelevant! Look closely at the use of a compound verb in the first of these two sentences, then at the *dropping* of the compound in the second (which is negative):

राजू — मैंने खाना खा लिया है ।

Rājū — maīne khānā khā liyā hai. I’ve had my meal.

गीता — अच्छा? मैंने तो नहीं खाया है ।

Gītā — acchā? maīne to nahī khāyā hai. Really? I haven’t.

Raju stresses that he’s had (and enjoyed or benefited from) his meal, a sense given by लेना *lenā*. But Geeta hasn’t eaten yet, so her reply has no scope for the implication that लेना *lenā* brings.

► I’ve already done this

The verb चुकना *cuknā* means ‘to have finished doing, to have already done’, and it’s used in a structure identical to the one we’ve just been looking at — it follows the stem of the main verb:

मीना जा चुकी है ।

Mīnā jā cukī hai. Meena has already gone.

राम अपना काम कर चुका है ।

Rām apnā kām kar cukā hai. Ram has already done his work.

मनोज अपनी किताब पढ़ चुका है ।

Manoj apni kitāb pārh cukā hai. Manoj has already read (or ‘finished reading’) his book.

राजू और गीता खाना खा चुके हैं।

Rājū aur Gitā khānā khā cuke hai. Raju and Geeta have already eaten (or ‘have finished eating’).

You’ll be glad to hear that the *ne* construction is *never* used here!

Did you manage to do this?

The same structure is used again with the verb पाना *pānā*. This literally means ‘to find, obtain’, but here it gives the meaning ‘to manage to, to be able to’ (compare सकना *saknā*, met in Unit 6).

कल मैं नहीं जा पाया।

kal mai nahi jā pāyā. I didn’t manage to go yesterday.

गीता टिकट नहीं खरीद पाई।

Gitā tikat nahi kharid pāi. Geeta wasn’t able to buy a ticket.

क्या तुम यह काम अकेले कर पाओगे?

kyā tum yah kām akele kar pāoge? Will you manage to do this work alone?

5 Style in Hindi

The language used in this book reflects ordinary unselfconscious speech. But like all languages, Hindi has a variety of styles — formal, informal, colloquial and so on. Formal Hindi uses a lot of loanwords from Sanskrit (India’s main classical language) just as formal English uses words from Latin and Greek. For example, formal Hindi would use the Sanskrit loanword सहायता *sahāyta* ‘assistance’ rather than the informal मदद *madad* ‘help’; which is a loanword from Arabic and which has an entirely natural place in informal Hindi. Many Arabic and some Turkish words came to India as part of the Persian language, from about the 11th century onwards — they are far from being newcomers!

The formal style of the language is called शुद्ध हिन्दी *suddh hindī* — ‘pure Hindi’; but as this example of सहायता *sahāyta* shows, it is itself dependent on Sanskrit loanwords, which means that any claims to linguistic ‘purity’ have to be taken with a pinch of salt. In formal Hindi, especially in the written language but also in some people’s preferred speaking style also, one ‘requires assistance’, one does not ‘need help’! When you start reading Hindi books and newspapers, you’ll have to start adding Sanskritic vocabulary to the colloquial

base you’re learning here. But be careful about using it too much in everyday conversational contexts, because it could make your Hindi sound very bookish. People who learn Hindi from grammar books alone, especially those of the traditional variety, end up ‘requiring assistance’!

Today, informal Hindi uses words from a rich variety of sources, especially English, whose relentless spread throughout the world can be seen as a threat to so many languages. Go shopping with Geeta and you’ll hear *lots* of familiar words. Here we catch up with her buying shoes in a shop in ‘fashionable’ South Extension, Delhi:

गीता आपके पास ग्रीन कलर का जूता है?

दुकानदार हाँ मैडम, देखिए, ये शूज़ ग्रीन कलर के हैं। और बहुत ही रीज़नेबुल हैं।

गीता नहीं, यह स्टाइल मैं लाइक नहीं करती।

दुकानदार पर इसकी लेदर बहुत ही सॉफ्ट है! और क्वालिटी भी देखिए इसकी! ट्राई तो कीजिए!

Gitā āpke pās grīn kalar kā jūtā hai?

dukāndār hā maiḍam, dekhie, ye śūz grīn kalar ke haī. aur bahut hī rizanebul haī.

Gitā nahi, yah stāil mai lāik nahi karti.

dukāndār par iski ledar bahut hī sāft hai! aur kvāliṭi bhī dekhie iski! trāi to kijie!

Geeta Do you have a green colour shoe?

Shopkeeper Yes madam, please look, these shoes are green. And they’re very reasonable.

Geeta No, I don’t like this style.

Shopkeeper But its leather is very soft. And see its quality too! Try it at least!

... and so on! As a learner of Hindi, you may find it rather depressing that it has allowed itself to be so heavily influenced by a language that is so foreign to its own character. But between the two extremes of heavily Sanskritized and heavily Anglicized versions of the language, Hindi remains a superbly subtle and vibrant language, full of expressiveness and life!

6 Numbers

Here are the cardinal numbers. You'll find it easier to get familiar with the higher ones (above 20) if you read them in 'decade' sequences such as 21, 31, 41 etc.

੦	ਸ਼ੂਨ्य	<i>sūnya</i>			
੧	ਏਕ	੧੧ ਗ੍ਰਾਹ	੨੧ ਇਕੀਸ	੩੧ ਇਕਤੀਸ	੪੧ ਇਕਤਾਲੀਸ
1	<i>ek</i>	<i>11 gyārah</i>	<i>21 ikkis</i>	<i>31 ikattis</i>	<i>41 iktālis</i>
੨	ਦੋ	੧੨ ਬਾਰਹ	੨੨ ਬਾਈਸ	੩੨ ਬਤੀਸ	੪੨ ਬਯਾਲੀਸ
2	<i>do</i>	<i>12 bārah</i>	<i>13 bāis</i>	<i>33 battis</i>	<i>43 bayālis</i>
੩	ਤੀਨ	੧੩ ਤੇਰਹ	੨੩ ਤੇਈਸ	੩੩ ਤੈਂਤੀਸ	੪੩ ਤੈਂਤਾਲੀਸ
3	<i>tin</i>	<i>13 terah</i>	<i>23 teis</i>	<i>33 taītis</i>	<i>43 taītalīs</i>
੪	ਚਾਰ	੧੪ ਚੌਦਹ	੨੪ ਚੌਬੀਸ	੩੪ ਚੌਂਤੀਸ	੪੪ ਚਵਾਲੀਸ
4	<i>cār</i>	<i>14 caudah</i>	<i>24 caubis</i>	<i>34 caūtis</i>	<i>44 cavālis</i>
੫	ਪਾਂਚ	੧੫ ਪੰਦਰਹ	੨੫ ਪੱਚੀਸ	੩੫ ਪੈਂਤੀਸ	੪੫ ਪੈਂਤਾਲੀਸ
5	<i>pāc</i>	<i>15 pandrah</i>	<i>25 paccis</i>	<i>35 paītis</i>	<i>45 paītalīs</i>
੬	ਛਹ	੧੬ ਸੋਲਹ	੨੬ ਛੱਬੀਸ	੩੬ ਛਤੀਸ	੪੬ ਛਿਧਾਲੀਸ
6	<i>chah</i>	<i>16 solah</i>	<i>26 chabbis</i>	<i>36 chattis</i>	<i>46 chiyālis</i>
੭	ਸਾਤ	੧੭ ਸੱਤਰਹ	੨੭ ਸੱਤਾਈਸ	੩੭ ਸੈਂਤੀਸ	੪੭ ਸੈਂਤਾਲੀਸ
7	<i>sāt</i>	<i>17 satrah</i>	<i>27 sattais</i>	<i>37 saītis</i>	<i>47 saītalīs</i>
੮	ਆਠ	੧੮ ਅਠਾਰਹ	੨੮ ਅਟ੍ਰਾਈਸ	੩੮ ਅਡਤੀਸ	੪੮ ਅਡਤਾਲੀਸ
8	<i>āṭh</i>	<i>18 athārah</i>	<i>28 atṭhaīs</i>	<i>38 artis</i>	<i>48 artālis</i>
੯	ਨੌ	੧੯ ਉਨ੍ਹੀਸ	੨੯ ਉਨੰਤੀਸ	੩੯ ਉਨਤਾਲੀਸ	੪੯ ਉਨਚਾਸ
9	<i>nau</i>	<i>19 unnis</i>	<i>29 untis</i>	<i>39 untālis</i>	<i>41 uncās</i>
੧੦	ਦਸ	੨੦ ਬੀਸ	੩੦ ਤੀਸ	੪੦ ਚਾਲੀਸ	੫੦ ਪਚਾਸ
10	<i>das</i>	<i>20 bis</i>	<i>30 tis</i>	<i>40 cālis</i>	<i>50 pacās</i>
੫੧	ਇਕਾਵਨ	੬੧ ਇਕਸਠ	੭੧ ਇਕਹਤਤਰ	੮੧ ਇਕਧਾਸੀ	੯੧ ਇਕਧਾਨਵੇ
51	<i>ikyāvan</i>	<i>61 iksath</i>	<i>71 ik'hattar</i>	<i>81 ikyāsi</i>	<i>91 ikyānve</i>
੫੨	ਬਾਵਨ	੬੨ ਬਾਸਠ	੭੨ ਬਹਤਤਰ	੮੨ ਬਧਾਸੀ	੯੨ ਬਾਨਵੇ
52	<i>bāvan</i>	<i>62 bāsath</i>	<i>72 bahattar</i>	<i>82 bayāsi</i>	<i>92 bānve</i>
੫੩	ਤਿਰਖ	੬੩ ਤਿਰਸਠ	੭੩ ਤਿਹਤਤਰ	੮੩ ਤਿਰਾਸੀ	੯੩ ਤਿਰਾਨਵੇ
53	<i>tirpan</i>	<i>63 tirsath</i>	<i>73 tihattar</i>	<i>83 tirāsi</i>	<i>93 tirānve</i>

੫੪	ਚੌਵਨ	੬੪ ਚੌਂਸਠ	੭੪ ਚੌਹਤਰ	੮੪ ਚੌਰਾਸੀ	੯੪ ਚੌਰਾਨਵੇ
54	<i>cauvan</i>	<i>64 caūsath</i>	<i>74 cauhattar</i>	<i>84 caurāsi</i>	<i>94 caurānve</i>
੫੫	ਪਚਪਨ	੬੫ ਪੈਂਸਠ	੭੫ ਪਚਹਤਤਰ	੮੫ ਪਚਾਸੀ	੯੫ ਪਚਾਨਵੇ
55	<i>pacpan</i>	<i>65 paisath</i>	<i>75 pac'hattar</i>	<i>85 pacāsi</i>	<i>95 pacānve</i>
੫੬	ਛੱਪਨ	੬੬ ਛਿਧਾਸਠ	੭੬ ਛਿਹਤਤਰ	੮੬ ਛਿਧਾਸੀ	੯੬ ਛਿਧਾਨਵੇ
56	<i>chappan</i>	<i>66 chiyāsath</i>	<i>76 chihattar</i>	<i>86 chiyāsi</i>	<i>96 chiyānve</i>
੫੭	ਸੱਤਾਵਨ	੬੭ ਸਰਸਠ	੭੭ ਸਤਹਤਤਰ	੮੭ ਸੱਤਾਸੀ	੯੭ ਸੱਤਾਨਵੇ
57	<i>sattāvan</i>	<i>67 sarsath</i>	<i>77 sat'hattar</i>	<i>87 sattāsi</i>	<i>97 sattānve</i>
੫੮	ਅਟ੍ਰਾਵਨ	੬੮ ਅਡਸਠ	੭੮ ਅਠਹਤਤਰ	੮੮ ਅਟ੍ਰਾਸੀ	੯੮ ਅਟ੍ਰਾਨਵੇ
58	<i>āṭhāvan</i>	<i>68 arsat̄h</i>	<i>78 athattar</i>	<i>88 atṭhāsi</i>	<i>98 atṭhānve</i>
੫੯	ਉਨਸਠ	੬੯ ਉਨਹਤਤਰ	੭੯ ਉਨਧਾਸੀ	੮੯ ਨਵਾਸੀ	੯੯ ਨਿਨਧਾਨਵੇ
59	<i>unsath</i>	<i>69 unhattar</i>	<i>79 unyāsi</i>	<i>89 navāsi</i>	<i>99 innyānve</i>
੬੦	ਸਾਠ	੭੦ ਸਤਤਰ	੮੦ ਅਸਸੀ	੯੦ ਨਬੇ	੧੦੦ ਸੌ
60	<i>sāth</i>	<i>70 sattar</i>	<i>80 assi</i>	<i>90 nabbe</i>	<i>100sau</i>

1.5	ਡੇਢ	<i>derh</i>
2.5	ਢਾਈ	<i>dhāī</i>
1000	ਹਜ਼ਾਰ	<i>hazār</i>
100,000	ਲਾਖ	<i>lākh</i>
10,00,000	ਕਰੋਡ	<i>karor</i> (100 lakh, written 100,00,000)
150	ਡੇਢ ਸੌ	<i>derh sau</i>
1500	ਡੇਢ ਹਜ਼ਾਰ	<i>derh hazār</i>
150,000	ਡੇਢ ਲਾਖ	<i>derh lākh</i>
250	ਢਾਈ ਸੌ	<i>dhāī sau</i>
2500	ਢਾਈ ਹਜ਼ਾਰ	<i>dhāī hazār</i>
250,000	ਢਾਈ ਲਾਖ	<i>dhāī lākh</i>

7 Time

Telling the time involves the following words:

बजे *baje* o'clock

बजना *bajnā* to chime, resound

देह *derh* one and a half

दाई *dhāī* two and a half

पौन, पौना *paun, paune* three quarters

सवा *savā* one and a quarter

साढे *sārhe* plus a half (with 3 and upwards)

पौन बजा है। *paun bajā hai.* It's a quarter to one.

एक बजा है। *ek bajā hai.* It's one o'clock.

देह बजा है। *derh bajā hai.* It's half past one.

दो बजे हैं। *do baje hai.* It's two o'clock.

दाई बजे हैं। *dhāī baje hai.* It's half past two.

सवा सात बजे हैं। *savā sāt baje hai.* It's a quarter to seven.

पौने दस बजे हैं। *paune das baje hai.* It's a quarter to ten.

साढे ग्यारह बजे हैं। *sārhe gyārah baje hai.* It's half past eleven.

हम दो बजे मिलेंगे। *ham do baje milēge.* We'll meet at two o'clock.

मैं देह बजे तक आऊँगा। *mai derh baje tak āūgā.* I'll come by half past one.

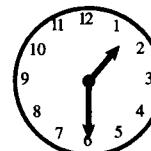
दस बज रहे हैं। *das baj rahe hai.* It's just ten (ten is striking).

दस बजनेवाले हैं। *das bajnevāle hai.* It's nearly ten (ten's about to strike).

Minutes before and after the hour are expressed by बजने में *bajne mē* and बजकर *bajkar* respectively.

एक बजने में बीस मिनट हैं। *ek bajne mē bīs minaṭ hai.* It's 12.40.

आठ बजकर बीस मिनट हैं। *āṭh bajkar bīs minaṭ hai.* It's 8.20.

What's the time?

पौन बजा है।

paun bajā hai

देह बजा है।

derh bajā hai

एक बजा है।

ek bajā hai

दो बजे हैं।

do baje hai

दाई बजे हैं।

dhāī baje hai

साढे चार बजे हैं।

sārhe cār baje hai

पौने चार बजे हैं।

paune cār baje hai

सवा चार बजे हैं।

savā cār baje hai

Months

India still uses its traditional calendar (with lunar months) for festival dates, and you can find plenty of web-based information on this by typing 'Hindu Calendar' into a search engine. But the 'western' (or global) calendar is usually preferred for mundane functions.

The month names are spelt in Hindi with dental consonants: this reflects their Portuguese ancestry (words from English being generally spelt with retroflexes).

जनवरी	फरवरी	मार्च	अप्रैल	मई	जून
<i>janvarī</i>	<i>farvari</i>	<i>mārc</i>	<i>apral</i>	<i>mai</i>	<i>jūn</i>
जुलाई	अगस्त	सितंबर	अक्टूबर	नवंबर	दिसंबर
<i>jhulāī</i>	<i>agast</i>	<i>sitambar</i>	<i>aktubar</i>	<i>navambar</i>	<i>disambar</i>

Exercise 12a Answer the questions about Hiralal:

- १ जो रिक्षा हीरालाल चलाता है, उसको किसने बनाया होगा ?
jo rikṣā Hiräläl calātā hai, usko kisne banāyā hogā?
- २ जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ और कौन रहता है ?
jahā̄ Hiräläl rahtā hai vahā̄ aur kaun rahtā hai?
- ३ जिस शहर में हीरालाल रहता है, उसका नाम क्या है ?
jis śahar mē Hiräläl rahtā hai, uskā nām kyā hai?
- ४ जब बारिश होती है तो क्या हीरालाल घर जाता है ?
jab bāriś hotī hai to kyā Hiräläl ghar jātā hai?
- ५ रिक्षे का वजन कब बहुत ज़्यादा हो जाता है ?
rikṣe kā vazan kab bahut zyādā ho jātā hai?
- ६ हीरालाल की जेब कब खाली रहती है ?
Hiräläl ki jeb kab khālī rahtī hai?
- ७ जो लोग रिक्षे चलाते हैं उनकी ज़िन्दगी कैसी होती है ?
jo log rikṣe calātē hai unkī zindagi kaisī hotī hai?

Exercise 12b Complete the sentences meaningfully:

- ८ जो लोग भारत के बारे में कुछ सीखना चाहते हैं, उनको ...
jo log bhārat ke bāre mē kuch sikhnā cāhte hāi, unko...
- ९ जब मैंने पहली बार ताज महल को देखा, मैंने सोचा कि ...
jab maine pahli bār tāj mahal ko dekhā, maine socā ki...
- १० जहाँ मेरे रिश्तेदार रहते हैं, वहाँ ...
jahā̄ mere riśtedār rahte hāi, vahā̄...
- ११ जो आदमी मेरे साथ काम करता है उसकी ...
jo ādmī mere sāth kām kartā hai uskī...
- १२ जो आदमी मेरे घर के सामने रहता है वह ...
jo ādmī mere ghar ke sāmne rahtā hai vah...
- १३ जिन लोगों के पास बहुत पैसा है, वे ...
jin logō ke pās bahut paisā hai, ve...
- १४ जो कपड़े मैंने कल खरीदे ...
jo kapṛē maīne kal kharide...

Exercise 12c Translate:

- 15 When I go to Agra I often stay at Raju's place.
15 tumhārā khat mil gayā, śukriyā. ek sāl se koī khat nahī̄
- 16 The man who teaches us Hindi is Raju's brother.
āyā thā to maī socne lagā thā ki mere dost Manoj ko kyā ho
- 17 The present I gave to Ram today was quite cheap.
yahā̄ sab thik hai. mere bhāi kī sādī ho gaī hai. usne dillī mē
- 18 When I gave it to him he showed it to his mother.
ek choṭa-sā makān kirāye par liyā hai.
- 19 When Raju's mother saw my present she began to laugh.
mere pitāji kahte hāi ki ab tum bhī sādī karūgā. abhī javān hū̄.
- 20 I'll never forget the question she asked Raju about me.
jab tis sāl kā ho jāūgā to śayad in bātō ke bāre mē
- 21 The answer Raju gave will always remain in my memory.
priy Manoj,

Exercise 12d Here's a short letter to Manoj from a friend in the USA. Translate it, keeping an eye out the compound verbs.

प्रिय मनोज,

तुम्हारा खत मिल गया, शुक्रिया। एक साल से कोई खत नहीं आया था तो मैं सोचने लगा था कि मेरे दोस्त मनोज को क्या हो गया है ?

यहाँ सब ठीक है। मेरे भाई की शादी हो गई है। उसने दिल्ली में एक छोटा-सा मकान किराये पर लिया है।

मेरे पिताजी कहते हैं कि अब तुम भी शादी कर लो। पर मैंने उनको साफ़ बता दिया है कि मैं अभी शादी नहीं करूँगा। अभी जवान हूँ। जब तीस साल का हो जाऊँगा तो शायद इन बातों के बारे में सोचना शुरू करूँगा। लेकिन पिताजी मेरी बात नहीं सुनना चाहते। अभी थोड़ी देर पहले वे फिर से शादी के बारे में बात करने लगे। मैं थोड़ा नाराज़ हो गया। मैंने कहा, “हाँ पापा, मैं ने सुन लिया !”

अपना ई-मेल का पता मुझे बता देना।

तुम्हारा

मोटू

priy Manoj,

tumhārā khat mil gayā, śukriyā. ek sāl se koī khat nahī̄
āyā thā to maī socne lagā thā ki mere dost Manoj ko kyā ho
gayā hai?

yahā̄ sab thik hai. mere bhāi kī sādī ho gaī hai. usne dillī mē
ek choṭa-sā makān kirāye par liyā hai.

mere pitāji kahte hāi ki ab tum bhī sādī karūgā. abhī javān hū̄.
jab tis sāl kā ho jāūgā to śayad in bātō ke bāre mē

*socnā śurū karūgā. lekin pitājī merī bāt nahī sunna cāhte.
abhi thoṛi der pahle ve phir se śādi ke bāre mē bāt karne lage.
mai thorā nārāz ho gayā. maīne kahā, 'hā pāpā, maīne sun liyā!'
apnā ī-mel ka patā mujhe batā denā.
tumhārā
Moṭū.*

Glossary

अँगूठा āgūthā m. thumb
आँखā ākh f. eye
उँगली ūglī f. finger
उगना ugnā to grow (of plants)
उतरना, उतर आना utarnā, utar
jānā to get down, alight
उलटी ultī f. vomiting, sickness
कटना katnā to be cut
कमर kamar f. waist
कलाई kalāī f. wrist
करवाना karvānā to cause to be
done, to get done
कान kān m. ear
कि ki when, when suddenly; or
कुहनी kuhni f. elbow
खेल khel m. game
गरीब garib poor
गर्दन gardan f. neck
गाल gāl f. cheek
घास ghās f. grass
घुटना ghuṭnā m. knee
चढ़ना carhnā to climb; to get
into vehicle
चढ़ाव carhāv m. rise, incline
चमकना camaknā to shine
चुकना cuknā to have already
done (with verb stem: वह जा
चुका है vah jā cukā hai 'He's
already gone')
छाती chātī f. chest

जब jab when
जलना jalnā to burn
जलवाना jalvānā to cause to burn
जवान javān young
जहाँ jahā where
जाँघ jāgh f. high
जेब jeb f. pocket
जैसा... वैसा jaisā... vaisā as [one
thing], so [another]
टाँग ṭāg f. leg
टूटना tūtnā to break
ठुड़ी thuddī f. chin
ताज महल tāj mahal m. Taj Mahal
दस्त dast m. diarrhoea; दस्त
आना dast ānā to have
diarrhoea
दाँत dāt m. tooth
दिया diyā m. lamp
दिल dil m. heart
धुलना dhulnā to be washed
धुलवाना dhulvānā to cause to be
washed
नल nal m. tap, pipe
नाक nāk f. nose
नींद nīd f. sleep; नींद आना nīd
ānā (sleep to come) to get
to sleep
नौकर naukar m. servant
पता patā m. address;
whereabouts

पहाड़ pahāṛ m. hill
पैद़ pāv m. foot, leg
पाना pānā to find, obtain; to be
able, to manage to (with
verb stem: मैं नहीं जा पाया
mai nahī jā pāyā 'I didn't
manage to go')
पैर pair m. foot; पैर की उँगली
pair kī ūglī f. toe
प्रेस करना pres karnā to iron
बनवाना banvānā to cause to be
made
बहुत ज्यादा bahut zyādā very
great, too much
बाँह bāh f. arm, upper arm
बाल bāl m. hair
बुलवाना bulvānā to cause to be
called
भरना bharnā to be filled
भारी bhārī heavy
माथा māthā m. forehead
मुफ्त (का) muft (kā) free; मुफ्त में
muft mē for nothing, free
मुँह mūh m. mouth; face
मौसम mausam m. weather
रिक्षा rikśā m. rickshaw
लेटना letnā to lie down
वज़न vazan m. weight
विदेश vides abroad; विदेशी
videsī m. foreigner;
adj. foreign
शरीर śarīr m. body
शानदार sāndār splendid,
magnificent
शुद्ध śuddh pure
शोला śolā m. flame; शोले
sole 'Sholay', the title of a
cult Hindi film (1975)
सवारी savārī f. passenger, rider
सहायता sahāytā f. assistance
सामने sāmne opposite
सिखवाना sikhvānā to cause to
be taught
सिलवाना silvānā to cause to be
sewn
सीना sinā to sew
हर har every, each
हराम harām forbidden
हीरा hirā m. diamond
हो जाना ho jānā to become

key to the exercises

Bear in mind that there will often be several possible ways of answering questions and translating sentences! In the case of questions addressed to the reader, sample answers are given.

Unit 1

What's this?

- १ जी नहीं, मोती बिल्ली नहीं, कुत्ता है।
ji nahī, Motī billī nahī, kuttā hai.
- २ जी हाँ, गीता डाक्टर है।
ji hā̄, Gitā dāktar hai.
- ३ जी नहीं, मैं डाक्टर नहीं, अध्यापक हूँ।
ji nahī, māi dāktar nahī, adhyāpak hū̄.
- ४ जी हाँ, राजू और गीता हिन्दुस्तानी हैं।
ji hā̄, Rājū aur Gitā hindustānī hai.
- ५ जी हाँ, हिन्दी बहुत आसान है।
ji hā̄, hindī bahut āsān hai!

1a

- | | |
|-------|---|
| जावेद | यह क्या है ? <i>Jāved: yah kyā hai?</i> |
| मनोज | यह मेरा रेडियो है। <i>Manoj: yah merā rediyo hai.</i> |
| जावेद | वह लड़का कौन है ? <i>Jāved: vah larkā kaun hai?</i> |
| मनोज | वह मेरा भाई है। <i>Manoj: vah merā bhāī hai.</i> |
| जावेद | उसका नाम क्या है ? <i>Jāved: uskā nām kyā hai?</i> |
| मनोज | उसका नाम राम है। <i>Manoj: uskā nām Rām hai.</i> |

जावेद

वह लड़की कौन है ? *Jāved: vah larkī kaun hai?*

मनोज

उसका नाम मीना है। *Manoj: uskā nām Mīnā hai.*

जावेद

क्या वह बीमार है ? *Jāved: kyā vah bīmār hai?*

मनोज

जी नहीं, वह बीमार नहीं है, वह ठीक है। *Manoj: jī nahī, vah bīmār nahī hai, vah thīk hai.*

1b

- १ जी नहीं, सुरेश शादी-शुदा नहीं है।
ji nahī, Suresh śādī-sudā nahī hai.
- २ जी हाँ, वह हिन्दुस्तानी है।
ji hā̄, vah hindustānī hai.
- ३ जी नहीं, वह अध्यापक नहीं है, विद्यार्थी है।
ji nahī, vah adhyāpak nahī hai, vidyārthī hai.
- ४ उसका पूरा नाम सुरेश खन्ना है।
uskā pūrā nām Suresh Khannā hai.
- ५ जी हाँ, उमा हिन्दुस्तानी है।
ji hā̄, Umā hindustānī hai.
- ६ जी नहीं, वह डाक्टर नहीं है, वह अध्यापक है।
ji nahī, vah dāktar nahī hai, vah adhyāpak hai.
- ७ जी नहीं, वह शादी-शुदा नहीं है।
ji nahī, vah śādī-sudā nahī hai.
- ८ जी हाँ, वह सुखी है।
ji hā̄, vah sukhi hai.
- ९ जी नहीं, विनोद अंग्रेज नहीं है, वह अमरीकन है।
ji nahī, Vinod āgrez nahī hai, vah amrikan hai.
- १० जी नहीं, वह अध्यापक नहीं है, वह डाक्टर है।
ji nahī, vah adhyāpak nahī hai, vah dāktar hai.
- ११ उसका पूरा नाम विनोद कुमार है।
uskā pūrā nām Vinod Kumār hai.
- १२ जी हाँ, वह शादी-शुदा है।
ji hā̄, vah śādī-sudā hai.

- १३ जी नहीं, सुरेश हिन्दुस्तानी है लेकिन विनोद अमरीकन है।
jī nahī, Sureś hindustānī hai lekin Vinod amrikan hai.
- १४ जी नहीं, विनोद शादी-शुदा है लेकिन उमा शादी-सुदा नहीं है।
jī nahī, Vinod śādī-śudā hai lekin Umā śādī-śudā nahī hai.
- १५ जी नहीं, उमा अध्यापक है लेकिन सुरेश विद्यार्थी है।
jī nahī, umā adhyāpak hai lekin Sureś vidyārthī hai.

Unit 2

Role play

- १ जी हाँ, मैं गीता हूँ। *jī hā, māi Gītā hū.*
- २ मेरा पूरा नाम गीता शर्मा है। *merā pūrā nām Gītā Śarmā hai.*
- ३ जी हाँ, मैं शादी-शुदा हूँ। *jī hā, māi śādī-śudā hū.*
- ४ राकेश मेरा भाई है। *Rākeś merā bhāī hai.*
- ५ सीता मेरी बहिन है। *Sītā merī bahin hai.*
- ६ जी नहीं, मेरी बहिन बीमार है। *jī nahī, merī bahin bimār hai.*
- ७ जी नहीं, मेरा भाई ठीक है। *jī nahī, merā bhāī thik hai.*
- ८ जी नहीं, मैं बीमार नहीं हूँ, मैं ठीक हूँ। *jī nahī, māi bimār nahī hū, māi thik hū.*

Ordinal numbers quiz

- १ जी हाँ, पहला लड़का मोटा है।
jī hā, pahlā larkā motā hai.
- २ पहला लड़का गणेश है।
pahlā larkā Gaṇeś hai.
- ३ जी नहीं, तीसरा लड़का खुश नहीं है।
jī nahī, tīsrā larkā khuś nahī hai.
- ४ पाँचवाँ लड़का राजेश है।
pāčvā̄ larkā Rājeś hai.
- ५ जी हाँ, चौथा लड़का बहुत पतला है।
jī hā, cauthā larkā bahut patlā hai.
- ६ चौथा लड़का दिनेश है।
cauthā larkā Dineś hai.

- ५ जी नहीं, दूसरा लड़का महेश नहीं, सुरेश है।
jī nahī, dūsrā larkā Maheś nahī, Sureś hai.
- २a १ मेरा नाम मनोज है। राजू और गीता शर्मा मेरे माता-पिता हैं।
merā nām Manoj hai. Rājū aur Gītā Śarmā mere mātā-pitā hai.
- २ मीना मेरी छोटी बहिन है और राम मेरा छोटा भाई है।
Mīnā merī choṭī bahin hai aur Rām merā choṭā bhāī hai.
- ३ मोती हमारा कुत्ता है। वह बहुत प्यारा है।
Motī hamārā kuttā hai. vah bahut pyārā hai.
- ४ यह मीना है। यह ठीक है। यह छोटी है।
yah Mīnā hai. yah thik hai. yah choṭī hai.
- ५ हमारा मकान बहुत बड़ा नहीं है। सिर्फ पाँच कमरे हैं।
hamārā makān bahut barā nahī hai. sirf pāc kamre hai.
- ६ वह लड़का मेरा दोस्त है। उसका नाम प्रताप है।
vah larkā merā dost hai. uskā nām Pratāp hai.
- ७ जावेद साहब हमारे पड़ोसी है।
Jāvēd sāhab hamāre paṛosī hai.
- २b ८ ये लड़के बहुत प्यारे हैं। *ye laṛke bahut pyāre hai.*
- ९ ये कुत्ते हमारे नहीं हैं। *ye kutte hamāre nahī hai.*
- १० वे लड़के कौन हैं? *ve laṛke kaun hai?*
- ११ ये आदमी कौन हैं? *ye ādmī kaun hai?*
- १२ मेरे दोस्त पंजाबी हैं। *mere dost panjābī hai.*
- १३ क्या ये कुत्ते आपके हैं? *kyā ye kutte āpke hai?*
- १४ वे औरतें कौन हैं? *ve auratē kaun hai?*
- १५ हमारे बेटे अच्छे लड़के हैं। *hamāre betē acche laṛke hai.*
- १६ मेरी बेटियाँ बीमार हैं। *meri betiyā̄ bimār hai.*
- १७ क्या ये किताबें महँगी हैं? *kyā ye kitābē mahāgī hai?*
- १८ ये मेज़ें गंदी हैं। *ye mezē gandī hai.*

2c

- १९ आप कौन हैं ? *āp kaun hai?*
- २० आपका नाम क्या है ? *āpkā nām kyā hai?*
- २१ आपके माता-पिता बहुत अच्छे लोग हैं। *āpke mātā-pitā bahut acche log haī.*
- २२ आपका भाई सुंदर नहीं है। *āpkā bhāī sundar nahī̄ hai.*
- २३ आप दोनों लड़के लंबे हैं। *āp donō larkē lambe hai.*
- २४ आप कैसे हैं ? *āp kaise hai?*
- २५ तुम्हारा नाम क्या है ? *tumhārā nām kyā hai?*
- २६ क्या तुम ठीक हो ? *kyā tum thik ho?*
- २७ तुम नाराज़ नहीं हो ? *tum nārāz nahī̄ ho?*
- २८ तुम कैसी हो ? *tum kaisī ho?*

Unit 3

Some questions for you

- १ सिर्फ एक आदमी है। *sirf ek ādmī hai.*
- २ यह लंबा आदमी है। *yah lambā ādmī hai.*
- ३ मेज़ छोटी है। *mez chotī hai.*
- ४ दो लड़कियाँ हैं। *do larkiyā̄ hai.*
- ५ कुल मिलाकर तीन लोग हैं। *kul milākar tīn log haī.*
- ६ जी नहीं, एक लड़की लंबी है, दूसरी छोटी है। *jī nahī̄, ek larkī lambī hai, dūsṛī chotī hai.*
- ७ दो चूहे हैं। *do cūhe hai.*
- ८ सिर्फ एक कुरसी है। *sirf ek kursī hai.*
- ९ जी नहीं, चूहे छोटे हैं। *jī nahī̄, cūhe choṭe hai.*
- १० सिर्फ एक तोता है। *sirf ek totā hai.*

Where's the cat?

- १ बिल्ली बड़ी कुरसी पर है। *billi barī kursī par hai.*
- २ कुत्ता छोटी कुरसी पर है। *kuttā chotī kursī par hai.*
- ३ तस्वीर में दो कुरसियाँ हैं। *tasvīr mē do kursiyā̄ hai.*

- ४ तस्वीर में सिर्फ एक बिल्ली है। *tasvīr mē sirf ek billī hai.*
- ५ छोटी कुरसी पर कुत्ता है। *chotī kursī par kuttā hai.*
- ६ बड़ी कुरसी पर बिल्ली है। *barī kursī par billī hai.*
- ७ मेज़ पर कुछ किताबें हैं। *mez par kuch kitābē hai.*
- ८ जी हाँ, दोनों बहुत प्यारे हैं ! *jī hā̄, donō bahut pyāre hai!*

House for rent

- १ घर आगे में है। *ghar āgre mē hai.*
- २ नहीं, वह नया है। *nahī̄, vah nayā̄ hai.*
- ३ चार कमरे हैं -- दो बड़े और दो छोटे। *cār kamre haī — do bare aur do chote.*
- ४ हाँ, सब कमरों में खिड़कियाँ हैं। *hā̄, sab kamrō mē khirkiyā̄ haī.*
- ५ बड़े कमरों में पंखे हैं। *bare kamrō mē pankhe haī.*
- ६ बाहर बगीचा है। बगीचे में कुछ पेड़ हैं। *bāhar bagīcā hai. bagīce mē kuch per haī.*
- ७ नहीं, दुकानें पास में हैं। *nahī̄, dukānē pās mē haī.*
- ८ किराया ५००० रुपये है ? *kirāyā 5000 hai.*

Two tasks for you

- १ गीता वाराणसी से है। *Gitā vārāṇasi se hai.*
- २ जी हाँ, गीता शादी-शुदा है। *jī hā̄, Gitā sādī-sudā hai.*
- ३ जी हाँ, राजू दिल्ली से है। *jī hā̄, Rājū dillī se hai.*
- ४ जी नहीं, राजू डाक्टर नहीं, अध्यापक है। *jī nahī̄, Rājū dākṭar nahī̄, adhyāpak hai.*
- ५ जी नहीं, यह घर दिल्ली में नहीं, आगे में है। *jī nahī̄, yah ghar dillī mē nahī̄, āgre mē hai.*

- ६ घर में पाँच कमरे हैं। *ghar mē pāc kamre hai.*
 ७ बड़े कमरे में एक मेज़ है। *baṛe kamre mē ek mez hai.*
 ८ कम्प्यूटर मेज़ पर है। *kampyūṭar mez par hai.*
 ९ किताबें फर्श पर हैं। *kitābē farś par hai.*
 १० बगीचे में कुछ लंबे पेड़ हैं। *bagīce mē kuch lambe per hai.*

3a

- १ मेरी किताबें मेज़ पर पड़ी हैं।
merī kitābē mez par paṛī hai.
 २ आपका भाई बगीचे में बैठा है।
āpkā bhāī bagīce mē baithā hai.
 ३ मैं बड़े कमरे में खड़ा हूँ।
mai baṛe kamre mē khāṛā hūँ.
 ४ आपकी किताबें छोटी अलमारी में हैं।
āpkī kitābē choṭī almārī mē hai.
 ५ उसका मकान यहाँ से दूर नहीं है।
uskā makān yahā se dūr nahī hai.
 ६ आपके परिवार में कितने लोग हैं ?
āpke parivār mē kitne log hai?
 ७ आपके पति के पास कितना पैसा है ?
āpke pati ke pās kitnā paisā hai?
 ८ आज आपकी पत्नी कैसी है ? और आप कैसे हैं ?
āj āpki patnī kaisī hai? aur āp kaise hai?
 ९ बच्चे घर पर नहीं हैं, स्कूल पर हैं।
bacce ghar par nahī hai, skūl par hai.
 १० क्या यह छोटी लड़की तुम्हारी बहिन है ?
kyāyah choṭī larkī tumhārī bahin hai?

3b

- ११ मेरा पूरा नाम श्रीमती गीता शर्मा है।
merā pūrā nām śrīmatī Gitā Šarmā hai.
 १२ जी हाँ, मैं डाक्टर हूँ।
ji hā, mai dākṭar hūँ.

- १३ जी नहीं, मेरे पति अध्यापक है।
ji nahī, mere pati adhyāpak hai.
 १४ जी हाँ, वे घर पर हैं। *ji hā, ve ghar par hai.*
 १५ मेरे पति दिल्ली से हैं, लेकिन मैं वाराणसी से हूँ।
mere pati dilli se haī, lekin mai vārāṇasī se hūँ.
 १६ हमारे मकान में पाँच कमरे हैं।
hamāre makān mē pāc kamre hai.
 १७ हमारे परिवार में तीन बच्चे हैं।
hamāre parivār mē tīn bacce hai.
 १८ जी नहीं, वह बगीचे में है।
ji nahī, vah bagīce mē hai.
 १९ जी नहीं, उसका स्कूल यहाँ से दूर नहीं है।
ji nahī, uskā skūl yahā se dūr nahī hai.
 २० दूसरे बच्चे भी बगीचे में हैं।
dūsre bacce bhi bagīce mē hai.
 २१ जी हाँ, कुत्ता हमारा है।
ji hā, kuttā hamārā hai.
 २२ उसका नाम मोती है।
uskā nām Motī hai.
 २३ जी हाँ, हमारे पास गाड़ी है।
ji hā, hamāre pās gāṛī hai.
 २४ जी हाँ, मेरे पास कम्प्यूटर है।
ji hā, mere pās kampyūṭar hai.

Unit 4**Practise what you've learnt**

- १ मत जाओ ! आओ, बैठो !
mat jāo! āo, baitho.
 २ बताओ, तुम कैसे हो ?
batāo, tum kaise ho?
 ३ समोसा खाओ, पानी पियो !
samosā khāo, pānī piyo.

- ४ यह दूसरा समोसा भी लो ।
yah dūsrā samosā bhi lo.
- ५ मोती को समोसा न दो ।
Motī ko samosā na do.
- ६ और खाओ !
aur khāo!
- ७ खाली प्लेट मेज पर रखो ।
khālī pleṭ mez par rakho.
- ८ अरे ! सिग्रेट न पियो !
are! sigret na piyo!
- ९ और चाय लो ।
aur cāy lo.

4a

- १ घर में शराब मत पियो / पीजिए ।
ghar mē śarāb mat piyo / pijie.
- २ ध्यान से सुनो / सुनिए ।
dhyān se suno / sunie.
- ३ यह पत्र मनोज को भेजो / भेजिए ।
yah patr Manoj ko bhejo / bhejie.
- ४ घर जाओ / जाइए ।
ghar jāo / jāie.
- ५ मुझको उसका नाम बताओ / बताइए ।
mujhko uskā nām batāo / batāie.
- ६ ये दो समोसे खाओ / खाइए ।
ye do samose khāo / khāie.
- ७ सितार बजाओ / बजाइए ।
sitār bajāo / bajāie.
- ८ मेरे पड़ोसी से पूछो / पूछिए ।
mere pārosī se pūcho / pūchiae.
- ९ यह पैसा मेरी पत्नी को दो / दीजिए ।
yah paisā merī patnī ko do / dijiae.

- १० आज गाड़ी मत चलाओ / चलाइए ।
āj gāṛī mat calāo / calāie.
- ११ धीरे धीरे बोलो / बोलिए ।
dhīre dhīre bolo / bolie.

4b

- १२ राम से पूछिए । *Rām se pūchie.* Ask Ram.
- १३ बच्चों को मत बताना । *baccō ko mat batānā.* Don't tell the children.
- १४ चाचा जी से हिन्दी बोलो । *cācā jī se hindī bolo.* Speak Hindi with uncle.
- १५ मनोज से बात कीजिए । *Manoj se bāt kijie.* Talk to Manoj.
- १६ गीता से पैसा माँगना । *Gītā se paisā māgnā.* Ask Gita for money.

4c

- १७ मेरा भाई दिल्ली में रहता है । मेरी बहिन दिल्ली में रहती है ।
merā bhāī dillī mē rahtā hai. merī bahin dillī mē rahtī hai.
- १८ मैं हिन्दी समझता हूँ । हम हिन्दी समझते हैं ।
mai hindī samajhātā hū. ham hindī samajhte hāi.
- १९ लड़का गाड़ी बहुत तेज़ चलाता है । लड़की गाड़ी बहुत तेज़ चलाती है ।
laṛkā gāṛī bahut tez calātā hai. laṛkī gāṛī bahut tez calātī hai.
- २० मेरा पति हिन्दी बोलता है । मेरी पत्नी हिन्दी बोलती है ।
merā pati hindī boltā hai. merī patnī hindī boltī hai.
- २१ कौन अँग्रेजी बोलता है ? कौन अँग्रेजी बोलती है ?
kaun āgrezī boltā hai? kaun āgrezī boltī hai?

Unit 5**5a (sample answers)**

- १ बहुत अच्छी है, धन्यवाद ।
bahut acchi hai, dhanyavād.
- २ जी हाँ, घर में सब लोग ठीक हैं ।
jī hā, ghar mē sab log thīk hāi.

- ३ मुझको चावल चाहिए ।
mujhko cāval cāhie.
- ४ पाँच किलो दीजिए ।
pāc kilo dijie.
- ५ चीनी भी चाहिए । दो किलो देना ।
cīnī bhi cāhie. do kilo denā.
- ६ हाँ, एक टिकिया साबुन ।
hā̄, ek tīkiyā sābun.
- ७ नहीं, वह सब नहीं चाहिए ।
nahī̄, vah sab nahī̄ cāhie.
- ८ यहाँ से काफ़ी दूर है, लेकिन मेरे पास गाड़ी है ।
yahā̄ se kāfī dūr hai, lekin mere pās gāṛī hai.
- ९ जी नहीं, ये मेरी नहीं हैं ।
jī nahī̄, ye merī nahī̄ hā̄.
- १० जी नहीं, गाड़ी दुकान के बहुत पास खड़ी है ।
jī nahī̄, gāṛī dukān ke bahut pās khaṛī hai.

5b

- ११ मुझको तीन समोसे चाहिए ।
mujhko tīn samose cāhie.
- १२ उनको यह मकान पसंद नहीं है, छोटा मकान पसंद है ।
unko yah makān pasand nahī̄ hai, choṭā makān pasand hai.
- १३ मुझको यह कमरा पसंद नहीं है, कोई दूसरा कमरा दिखाइए ।
mujhko yah kamrā pasand nahī̄ hai, koī dūsrā kamrā dikhāīe.
- १४ आप कहाँ रहते हैं ? हम पुरानी दिल्ली में रहते हैं ।
āp kahā̄ rahte hai? ham purānī dillī mē rahte hai.
- १५ आपका मकान मेरे मकान से बहुत दूर नहीं है । कल आना ।
āpka makān hamāre makān se bahut dūr nahī̄ hai. kal ānā.
- १६ मुझको मालूम है कि मेरे अध्यापक यहाँ नहीं रहते ।
mujhko mālūm hai ki mere adhyāpak yahā̄ nahī̄ rahte.
- १७ मुझको मालूम है कि आपके अध्यापक कहाँ रहते हैं ।
mujhko mālūm hai ki āpke adhyāpak kahā̄ rahte hai.

- १८ दिल्ली में मकान बहुत महँगे होते हैं ।
dillī mē makān bahut mahāge hote hai.
- १९ दादा जी बहुत सुन्दर हिन्दी बोलते हैं ।
Dādā ji bahut sundar hindī bolte hai.
- २० हमको ये काले जूते नहीं चाहिए ।
hamko ye kāle jūte nahī̄ cāhie.

Unit 6**You can go**

- १ हम सिनेमा जा सकते हैं ।
ham sinemā jā sakte hai.
- २ चाचा जी घर पर रह सकते हैं ।
cācā jī ghar par rah sakte hai.
- ३ मैं अध्यापक से पूछ सकता हूँ ।
mai adhyāpak se pūch saktā hū̄.
- ४ बच्चे बगीचे में खेल सकते हैं ।
bacce bagīcē mē khel sakte hai.
- ५ मैं अखबार पढ़ सकती हूँ ।
mai akhbār parh saktī hū̄.
- ६ हम बच्चों को सब कुछ बता सकते हैं ।
ham baccō ko sab kuch batā sakte hai.
- ७ तुम शराब नहीं पी सकते हो ।
tum śarāb nahī̄ pi sakte ho.
- ८ वह कुछ नहीं कह सकता है ।
vah kuch nahī̄ kah saktā hai.

Turning 'I want' into 'let me'

- १ मुझको अमरीका जाने दीजिए ।
mujhko amrikā jāne dijie.
- २ मुझको गाड़ी चलाने दीजिए ।
mujhko gāṛī calāne dijie.
- ३ मुझको खाना खाने दीजिए ।
mujhko khānā khāne dijie.

- ४ मुझको काम करने दीजिए ।
mujhko kām karne dijie.
- ५ मुझको आपसे बात करने दीजिए ।
mujhko āpsē bāt kare dijie.
- ६ उसको सिगरेट पीने दीजिए ।
usko sigret pīne dijie.
- ७ हमको अध्यापक से कुछ कहने दीजिए ।
hamko adhyāpak se kuch kahne dijie.
- ८ उसको हिन्दी सीखने दीजिए ।
usko hindī sikhne dijie.
- ९ बच्चों को समोसे खाने दीजिए ।
baccō ko samose khāne dijie.
- १० हमको यहाँ रहने दीजिए ।
hamko yahā̄ rahne dijie.

6a

- १ फलवाला फल बेचता है !
phalvālā phal bectā hai!
- २ अखबारवाला अखबार बेचता है !
akhbārvālā akhbār bectā hai!
- ३ दूधवाला दूध बेचता है !
dūdhvālā dūdh bectā hai!
- ४ अध्यापक पढ़ता है ।
adhyāpak parhātā hai.
- ५ स्कूल में बच्चे पढ़ते हैं ।
skūl mē bacce parhte hai.
- ६ घर पर बच्चे खेलते हैं ।
ghar par bacce khelte hai.
- ७ ड्राइवर गाड़ी चलाता है ।
drāivar gāṛī calātā hai.
- ८ दुकानदार माल बेचता है ।
dukāndār māl bectā hai.

(sample answers)

- ९ मैं लन्दन में रहता हूँ । *maī landan mē rahtā hū̄.*
- १० मैं हिन्दी पढ़ता हूँ । *maī hindī parhātā hū̄.*
- ११ जी नहीं, मैं सितार नहीं बजाता, सिर्फ सुनता हूँ ! *jī nahī̄, maī sitār nahī̄ bajātā, sirf suntā hū̄!*
- १२ मैं कई अखबार पढ़ता हूँ । *maī kai akhbār parhātā hū̄.*
- १३ मैं चार भाषाएँ बोलता हूँ । *maī cār bhāṣāē boltā hū̄.*
- 6c**
- १४ जगदीश मनोज का अखबार पढ़ता है ।
Jagdiś Manoj kā akhbār parhātā hai.
- १५ मेरे दो भाई एक बड़े दफ्तर में काम करते हैं ।
mere do bhāī ek baṛe daftar mē kām karte hai.
- १६ मेरी बहिन मेरे भाई की गाड़ी चलाती है ।
merī bahin mere bhāī kī gāṛī calātī hai.
- १७ वह सिर्फ हिन्दी बोलता है, अँग्रेजी नहीं बोलता ।
vah sirf hindī boltā hai, āgrezī nahī̄ boltā.
- १८ हमारे अध्यापक तीन भाषाएँ बोलते हैं ।
hamāre adhyāpak tīn bhāṣāē bolte hai.
- १९ उसके बच्चे बगीचे में क्रिकेट खेलते हैं ।
uske bacce bagīče mē kriket khelte hai.
- २० हमारे माता-पिता गोश्त नहीं खाते हैं ।
hamāre mātā-pitā gośt nahī̄ khāte hai.
- २१ आप कहाँ काम करते हैं ? आप कहाँ रहते हैं ?
āp kahā̄ kām karte hai? āp kahā̄ rahte hai?
- २२ आपका छोटा भाई क्या करता है ?
āpka chotā bhāī kyā kartā hai?
- २३ आपकी माता जी कितनी भाषाएँ बोलती हैं ?
āpki mātā jī kitni bhāṣāē bolti hai?

Unit 7

Some questions about Jagdish's memories

- १ जगदीश जी वाराणसी में रहते थे ।
Jagdiś ji vārāṇasī mē rahate the.
- २ उनके परिवार में सात बच्चे थे ।
unke parivār mē sāt bacce the.
- ३ उनकी बहिने स्कूल जाना चाहती थीं, लेकिन उस ज़माने में बहुत कम लड़कियाँ स्कूल जाती थीं ।
unki bahinē skūl jānā cāhtī thī, lekin us zamāne mē bahut kam laṛkiyā ū skūl jātī thī.
- ४ उनका स्कूल उनके घर से काफी दूर था ।
unkā skūl unke ghar se kāfī dūr thā.
- ५ जी नहीं, वे पैदल नहीं जाते थे, साइकिल से जाते थे ।
jī nahī̄, ve paídal nahī̄ jātē the, sāikil se jātē the.

7a

- १ जगदीश मनोज का अखबार पढ़ता था ।
Jagdiś Manoj kā akhbār paṛhtā thā.
- २ मेरे दो भाई एक बड़े दफ्तर में काम करते थे ।
mere do bhāī ek bāre daftār mē kām karte the.
- ३ मेरी बहिन मेरे भाई की गाड़ी चलाती थी ।
merī bahin mere bhāī ki gāṛī calātī thī.
- ४ वह सिर्फ हिन्दी बोलता था, अंग्रेजी नहीं बोलता था ।
vah sirf hindī boltā thā, āgrezī nahī̄ boltā thā.
- ५ हमारे अध्यापक तीन भाषाएँ बोलते थे ।
hamārē adhyāpak tīn bhāṣāē bolte the.
- ६ उसके बच्चे बगीचे में क्रिकेट खेलते थे ।
uske bacce bagīcē mē krikeṭ khelte the.
- ७ हमारे माता-पिता गोश्त नहीं खाते थे ।
hamārē mātā-pitā gośt nahī̄ khātē the.
- ८ आप कहाँ काम करते थे ? आप कहाँ रहते थे ?
āp kahā̄ kām karte the? āp kahā̄ rahte the?

९ आपका छोटा भाई क्या करता था ?

āpka chotā bhāī kyā kartā thā?

१० आपकी माता जी कितनी भाषाएँ बोलती थीं ?

āpki mātā jī kitnī bhāṣāē boltī thi?

7b

- ११ In Jagdish's family only the boys used to go to school.
- १२ His school was very far from his house.
- १३ At school everyone called him 'Master ji', not just the children.
- १४ In his job the actual pay wasn't very good.
- १५ Jagdish's mother only spoke Hindi.
- १६ In those days the children, at least, were very happy.
- १७ There wasn't actually a garden, but there were lots of places for playing in.
- १८ As for the children, they used to sleep on the roof.
- १९ In his *childhood*, Raju was very fond of writing letters.
- २० The Prime Minister was kind, but he used to have a lot of work.

7c

हम लोग वाराणसी के पास एक छोटे गाँव में रहते थे । मेरे पिताजी स्कूल में अध्यापक थे । लेकिन वे नता बनना चाहते थे । वे प्रधान मंत्री बनने के सप्तने देखते थे । मेरी माँ उनको "प्रधान मंत्री जी" ही कहती थीं । हमारा घर गंगा के निकारे पर था । हम नदी के किनारे बहुत खेलते थे ।

उस ज़माने में हम हमेशा बड़े शहरों के बारे में बात करते थे । मैं अपने भाइयों और दोस्तों से कहता था कि बड़े लोग बड़े शहरों में ही रहते हैं । मैं भी बड़ा आदमी बनना चाहता था, मैं भी बड़े शहर में रहना चाहता था । मैं अब लंदन में रहता हूँ और मुझे मालूम है कि बड़े शहर की ज़िन्दगी कैसी होती है ... मैं एक छोटे गाँव में रहना चाहता हूँ !

ham log vārāṇasī ke pās ek chote gāv mē rahte the. mere pitājī skūl mē adhyāpak the. lekin ve netā bannā cāhte the. ve pradhān mantri banne ke sapne dekhte the. merī mā̄ unko 'pradhān mantri jī' hī kahtī thī. hamārā ghar gangā ke kināre par thā. ham nadī ke kināre bahut khelte the.

us zamāne mē ham hameśā bāre śaharō ke bāre mē bāt karte the.
maī apne bhāiyō̄ aur dostō se kahtā thā ki bāre log bāre śaharō
mē hī rahte haī. maī bhī barā ādmī bannā cāhtā thā, maī bhī bāre
śahar mē rahnā cāhtā thā. maī ab landan mē rahtā hū̄ aur mujhe
mālūm hai ki bāre śahar kī zindagī kaisī hotī hai...maī ek choṭe
gāv mē rahnā cāhtā hū̄!

Unit 8

Four children

- १ जी हाँ, ओम शंकर से बड़ा है।
ji hā̄, Om Śankar se baṛā hai.
- २ दो बच्चे रीता से छोटे हैं।
do bacce Ritā se chote haī.
- ३ सबसे बड़ा लड़का शिव है।
sabse baṛā larkā Śiv hai.
- ४ सबसे छोटा लड़का शंकर है।
sabse choṭā larkā Śankar hai.
- ५ ओम सिर्फ़ एक बच्चे से बड़ा है।
Om sirf ek bacce se baṛā hai.
- ६ जी नहीं, रीता शिव से छोटी है।
ji nahī̄, Ritā Śiv se choṭī hai.
- ७ जी हाँ, रीता ओम से छोटी नहीं है।
ji nahī̄, Ritā Om se choṭī nahī̄ hai.
- ८ जी नहीं, रीता शंकर से बड़ी है।
ji nahī̄, Ritā Śankar se baṛī hai.
- ९ मुझे तो सभी तस्वीरें बहुत पसंद हैं।
mujhe to sabhī tasvīrē bahut pasand haīl

Practise what you've learnt

- १ जावेद पत्र लिख रहा है।
Jāved patr likh rahā hai.
- २ दो लड़कियाँ ताश खेल रही हैं।
do laṛkiyā̄ tāś khel rahī hai.
- ३ कोई आदमी खाना तैयार कर रहा है।
koi ādmī khānā taiyā̄ kar rahā hai.

- ४ कुत्ता सो रहा है।
kuttā so rahā hai.
 - ५ सीता फ़ोन पर बात कर रही है।
Sītā fon par bāt kar rahī hai.
 - ६ गीता और राजू शराब पी रहे हैं।
Gītā aur Rājū śarāb pī rahe hai.
 - ७ राम बरतन माँज रहा है।
Rām bartan mā̄j rahā hai.
 - ८ उषा दौड़ रही है।
Uṣā daur rahī hai.
- 8a**
- १ आप उनसे ज्यादा होशियार नहीं हैं।
āp unse zyādā hošiyār nahī̄ hai.
 - २ मैं अपने भाई से बड़ी हूँ लेकिन आपसे छोटी हूँ।
maī apne bhāī se baṛī hū̄ lekin āpsē choṭī hū̄.
 - ३ मेरी दूसरी बहिन सबसे होशियार है।
merī dūsrī bahin sabse hošiyār hai.
 - ४ कुछ लोग कहते हैं कि हिन्दी अंग्रेज़ी से ज्यादा आसान है।
kuch log kahatे haī ki hindī āgrezī se zyādā āsān hai.
 - ५ माँ सोचती हैं कि मेरी बहिन मुझसे ज्यादा सुंदर है।
mā̄ soctī haī ki merī bahin mujhse zyāda sundar hai.
 - ६ पिताजी माताजी से ज्यादा जानते हैं लेकिन वे कुछ नहीं कह सकते हैं।
pītājī mātājī se zyādā jāntē haī lekin ve kuch nahī̄ kah sakte haī.
 - ७ उनका मकान हमारे मकान से ज्यादा बड़ा और सुंदर है।
unkā makān hamāre makān se zyādā baṛā aur sundar hai.
 - ८ मैं आपसे ज्यादा होशियार हूँ।
maī āpsē zyādā hošiyār hū̄.
 - ९ आपकी भाषा मेरी भाषा से ज्यादा मुश्किल है।
āpkī bhāṣā merī bhāṣā se zyādā muškil hai.

- १० हम लोग अपने दोस्तों को खाना खाने बुला रहे हैं।
ham log apne dostō ko khānā khāne bulā rahe hai. We're inviting our friends for a meal.
- ११ मैं खाना तैयार कर रहा हूँ।
mai khānā tayār kar rahā hūँ. I am preparing the food.
- १२ वे लोग शाम को आ रहे हैं।
ve log śām ko ā rahe hai. They are coming in the evening.
- १३ वे अपने बच्चों और दोस्तों को भी ला रहे हैं।
ve apne baccō aur dostō ko bhi lā rahe hai. They're bringing their children and friends too.
- १४ मेरी पत्नी कह रही है कि उनके बच्चे मोती को मार रहे हैं।
merī patnī kah rahī hai ki unke bacce Motī ko mār rahe hai. My wife is saying that their children are hitting Moti.
- १५ दादी जी हमारी मदद नहीं कर रही हैं, सिर्फ रेडियो सुन रही हैं।
dādi jī hamārī madad nahī kar rahī hai, sirf rediyo sun rahī hai. Grandma isn't helping us, she's only listening to the radio.
- १६ हमारा कुकर ठीक से काम नहीं कर रहा है।
hamārā kukar thīk se kām nahī kar rahā hai.
Our cooker isn't working properly.
- १७ हमारे दोस्त कह रहे हैं कि बाथरूम में पानी नहीं आ रहा है।
hamāre dost kah rahe hai ki bāthrūm mē pāni nahī ā rahā hai. Our friends are saying that there isn't any water ['coming'] in the bathroom.

8c (sample answers)

- १८ अपने खाली समय में मैं अपने दोस्तों से मिलता हूँ।
apne khālī samay mē maī apne dostō se miltā hūँ.
- १९ मुझे दोनों पसंद हैं — घर पर रहना भी और बाहर जाना भी! *mujhe donō pasand hai — ghar par rahnā bhi aur bāhar jānā bhi.* (Note भी...भी *bhi...bhi* 'both...and').
- २० क्योंकि मेरे बहुत-से हिन्दूस्तानी दोस्त हैं।
kyōki mere bahut-se hindustānī dost hai.

- २१ जी नहीं, मेरे ख्याल में दोनों भाषाएँ काफ़ी मुश्किल हैं!
*ji nahī, mere *khyāl* se donō bhāṣāē kāfi muškil hai!*
- २२ जी हाँ, मेरे हिन्दूस्तानी दोस्त हिन्दी बोलते हैं।
ji hā, mere hindustānī dost hindī bolte hai.
- २३ आज मैं यह किताब लिख रहा हूँ।
āj maī yah kitāb likh rahā hūँ!
- २४ अपनी छुट्टियों में मैं भारत या ग्रीस [Greece] जाता हूँ।
apnī chuttiyō mē māi bhārat yā grīs jātā hūँ.
- २५ मैं अभी सोच रहा हूँ कि यह पाठ [lesson] बहुत लंबा है।
maī abhī soc rahā hūँ ki yah pāth bahut lambā hai!

Unit 9

Practise what you've learnt (sample answers)

- १ आज रात को मैं हिन्दूस्तानी खाना खाऊँगा।
āj rāt ko māi hindustānī khānā khāūgā.
- २ मैं शायद बीयर पिऊँगा।
maī shāyad bīyar piūgā.
- ३ आज मैं काम करूँगा और अपने बड़े बेटे से मिलने जाऊँगा।
āj māi kām karūgā aur apne bare bete se milne jāūgā.
- ४ कल सुबह मैं ब्रिटिश लाइब्रेरी [British Library] जाऊँगा।
kal subah māi briṭiś lāibrerī jāūgā.
- ५ अगर आप परसों लंदन आएँगे/आएँगी, तो आपसे ही मिलूँगा!
agar āp parsō landan āēge/āēgi, to āpse hī milūgā!

Geeta's diary

सोमवार	घर पर रहना	<i>somvār ghar par rahnā</i>
मंगलवार	दिल्ली जाना	<i>mangalvār dillī jānā</i>
बुधवार	कुछ चीज़ें खरीदना	<i>budhvār kuch cizē <i>kharidnā</i></i>
गुरुवार	घर वापस आना	<i>guruvār ghar vāpas ānā</i>
शुक्रवार	आराम करना	<i>śukravār ārām karnā</i>
शनिवार	सीता के यहाँ जाना	<i>śanivār Sītā ke yahā jānā</i>
रविवार	अगले हफते की तैयारियाँ करना	<i>ravivār agle hafte kī taiyāriyā̄ karnā</i>

9a

- 1E If the vegetable market is closed, get ['take'] the vegetables tomorrow morning.
 2D If you don't know the way, buy a map.
 3C If you don't know the meaning of some/any word, look in a dictionary.
 4B If you don't find a policeman at the roundabout, go to the police station.
 5A If you don't get a room at the hotel, stay at my place.
 6F If you turn into that narrow lane you'll see the café on your left ['the café will appear...'].

9b

- ७ दो लोगों के लिए कमरा चाहिए। हम दो दिन रहेंगे।
do logō ke lie kamrā cāhie. ham do din rahēge.
- ८ आज शाम को हमारे कुछ दोस्त हमसे मिलने आएँगे।
āj śam ko hamāre kuch dost hamse milne āēge.
- ९ नाश्ते में क्या मिलेगा? *nāste mē kyā milegā?*
- १० क्या रात का खाना भी मिलेगा? *kyā rāt kā khānā bhī milegā?*
- ११ यहाँ से सिनेमा जाने में कितना समय लगेगा? हम पैदल जाना चाहते हैं। *yahā se sinemā jāne mē kitnā samay lagegā? ham paidal jānā cāhte hai.*
- १२ मैं लंदन फोन करना चाहता हूँ। क्या मैं अपने कमरे से ही फोन कर सकता हूँ?
mai landan fon karnā cāhtā hū. kyā mai apne kamre se hi fon kar saktā hū?
- १३ अगले हफ्ते हम लोग आगरे और दिल्ली जाएँगे।
agle hafte ham log āgre aur dilli jāēge.
- १४ क्या आज रात को हमारे दोस्त हमारे साथ खाना खा सकते हैं?
kyā āj rāt ko hamāre dost hamāre sāth khānā khā sakte hai?

9c

- १५ कल शनिवार है, इसलिए हम बाहर जाएँगे।
kal śanivār hai, islie ham bāhar jāēge.

- १६ हम सोच रहे थे कि हम सिनेमा जाएँगे।
ham soc rahe the ki ham sinemā jāēge.
- १७ मेरा भाई कह रहा था कि वह घर पर रहेगा।
merā bhāi kah rahā thā ki vah ghar par rahegā.
- १८ अगर आप चाहें तो आप भी हमारे साथ आइए।
agar āp cāhē to āp bhī hamāre sāth āie.
- १९ हम जल्दी जाएँगे ताकि अच्छी सीटें मिलें।
ham jaldī jāēge tāki acchī sītē milē.
- २० अगर बारिश हो रही है तो हम गाड़ी से जाएँगे।
agar bāriś ho rahi hai to ham gārī se jāēge.

Unit 10

Practise what you've learnt

- १ मनोज घर गया। *Manoj ghar gayā.*
- २ राजू और राम बाहर गए। *Rājū aur Rām bāhar gae.*
- ३ सीता दिल्ली गई। *Sītā dilli gaī.*
- ४ कुछ नहीं हुआ। *kuch nahi huā.*
- ५ मीना कल पहुँची। *Mīnā kal pahūčī.*
- ६ दादीजी परसों आई। *Dādījī parsō āī.*
- ७ मनोज मंगलवार को आया। *Manoj mangalvār ko āyā.*

How many did you see?

- १ मैंने दो किताबें देखीं। *maīne do kitābē dekhī.*
- २ मैंने एक सिग्रेट देखा। *maīne ek sigret dekhā.*
- ३ मैंने एक अखबार देखा। *maīne ek akhbār dekhā.*
- ४ मैंने दो गाड़ियाँ देखीं। *maīne do gāriyā dekhī.*
- ५ मैंने एक गिलास देखा। *maīne ek gilās dekhā.*
- ६ मैंने एक ट्रेन देखी। *maīne ek tren dekhī.*
- ७ मैंने दो जूते देखे। *maīne do jūte dekhe.*
- ८ मैंने तीन चाबियाँ देखीं। *maīne tin cābiyā dekhī.*
- ९ मैंने दो हाथी देखे। *maīne do hāthī dekhe.*

- १० मैंने एक मकान देखा । *maīne ek makān dekhā.*
- ११ मैंने दो कुत्ते देखे । *maīne do kutte dekhe.*
- १२ मैंने एक बंदर देखा । *maīne ek bandar dekhā*
- १३ मैंने एक बिल्ली देखी । *maīne ek billī dekhī.*
- १४ मैंने एक कमीज़ देखी । *maīne ek qamīz dekhī.*
- १५ मैंने एक दरवाज़ा देखा । *maīne ek darvāzā dekhā.*
- १६ मैंने तीन बोतलें देखीं । *maīne tīn botalē dekhī.*

What did Geeta see?

- १ गीता ने एक नई फ़िल्म देखी । *Gītā ne ek nai film dekhī.*
- २ राजू ने दो अखबार खरीदे । *Rājū ne do akhbār kharide.*
- ३ मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाई । *Motī ne das capātiyā khāī.*
- ४ मीना ने दो कहानियाँ पढ़ीं । *Mīnā ne do kahāniyā parhī.*
- ५ हमने चार कुरते खरीदे । *hamne cār kurte kharide.*
- ६ उन्होंने मेज़ पर कुछ किताबें रखीं । *unhōne mez par kuch kitābē rakhi.*
- ७ मैंने दीवार पर अपना नाम लिखा । *maīne divār par apnā nām likhā.*
- ८ मैंने कई बातें सुनीं । *maīne kai batē suni.*
- ९ मैंने एक ही भाषा सीखी । *maīne ek hī bhāṣā sikhī.*

Geeta's version of the morning

- १ राजू पहले उठा ।
Rājū pahle uthā.
- २ राजू ने गीता के लिए नाश्ता तैयार किया ।
Rājū ne Gītā ke lie nāstā taiyār kiyā.
- ३ गीता को जगाने से पहले राजू आँगन में बैठा और चाय पी ।
Gītā ko jagāne se pahle Rājū āgan mē baiṭhā aur cāy pi.
- ४ गीता की शिकायत यह थी कि राजू ने चाय में बहुत ज़्यादा चीनी डाली थी ।
Gītā ki śikāyat yah thi ki Rājū ne cāy mē bahut zyādā cīnī dālī thi.

- ५ गीता ने नाश्ता रसोई में किया ।
Gītā ne nāstā rasoī mē kiyā.
- ६ गीता ने गोलियाँ खाई । उसके सिर में दर्द था ।
Gītā ne goliyā khāī. uske sir mē dard thā.
- ७ नहीं, सिर्फ़ राजू को जल्दी उठना पसंद है, गीता को नहीं ।
nahī, sirf Rājū ko jaldī uṭhnā pasand hai, Gītā ko nahī.
- ८ उसने सोचा कि शाहरुख आया था ।
usne socā ki Šāhrukh āyā thā.
- ९ शायद गीता के सपने में ही !
śāyad Gītā ke sapne mē hi!

10a

- १ जावेद ने मुझे फ़ोन करके बताया कि तबियत खराब है ।
Jāved ne mujhe fon karke batāyā ki tabiyat kharāb hai.
- २ मैं जावेद के घर जाकर उसके कमरे में गया ।
mai Jāved ke ghar jākar uske kamre mē gayā.
- ३ जावेद का हाल देखकर मैंने डाक्टर को बुलाया ।
Jāved kā hāl dekhkar maine dāktar ko bulāyā.
- ४ थोड़ी देर में आकर डाक्टर ने कहा कि जावेद बहुत ही कमज़ोर है ।
thorī der mē ākar dāktar ne kahā ki Jāved bahut hi kamzor hai.
- ५ जावेद को कुछ गोलियाँ देकर डाक्टर ने कहा कि रोज़ दो गोलियाँ लेना ।
Jāved ko kuch goliyā dekar dāktar ne kahā ki roz do goliyā lenā.
- ६ जावेद ने मुस्कराकर डाक्टर से धन्यवाद कहा ।
Jāved ne muskarākar dāktar se dhanyavād kahā.
- ७ डाक्टर ने मेरी तरफ देखकर कहा कि “अच्छा, तो मैं चलता हूँ ।”
dāktar ne merī taraf dekhkar kahā ki ‘acchā, to mai caltā hū’.
- ८ मैंने कहा कि चाय पीकर जाइए ।
maīne kahā ki cāy pīkar jāie.
- ९ डाक्टर ने हँसकर कहा कि मैं चाय नहीं लूँगा, अपनी फ़ीस लूँगा !
dāktar ne hāskar kahā ki mai cāy nahī lūgā, apnī fis lūgā!

कल सुबह में छह बजे उठा। नाश्ता करके मैंने अपने भाई को फोन किया। वह सो रहा था। मेरी आवाज़ सुनकर उसने कहा, “तुमने मुझे इतनी जल्दी क्यों जगाया ?”। मैंने कहा, “तुमको याद नहीं ? आज हम जयपुर जा रहे हैं !” उसने पूछा, “हम कितने बजे जा रहे हैं ?”। मैंने जवाब दिया, “हम दस बजे की गाड़ी पकड़ेंगे। तुम जल्दी तैयार हो जाओ !” उसने जँभाई लेकर कहा कि रात में उसने सपना देखा था। सपने में एक बूढ़ी औरत ने उससे कहा था कि आज तुम कहीं मत जाना ! घर पर ही रहना ! मैंने हँसकर कहा, “यह तो सपना ही था। उठो न ! तैयार हो जाओ !”

गाड़ी ठीक दस बजे स्टेशन से चलने लगी। पर बीस-पच्चीस मिनट बाद वह रुकी। इंजन ख़राब हो गई थी। सुनसान जगह थी; पास में कोई गाँव या मकान नहीं था। जुलाई की गरमी में सारे यात्रियों ने गाड़ी से उतरकर कई घंटों तक कुछ छोटे पेड़ों के साथे में इंतज़ार किया। भयंकर गरमी थी। तीन बजे एक दूसरी गाड़ी आकर रुकी। यह दूसरी गाड़ी यात्रियों को वापस दिल्ली ले आने आई थी।

गाड़ी की कहानी हमने रेडियो पर ही सुनी। हमने उस बूढ़ी औरत की सलाह ली थी। हम जयपुर कल जाएँगे...

kal subah maī chah baje uthā. nāstā karke maīne apne bhāī ko fon kiyā. vah so rahā thā. merī āvāz sunkar usne kahā, ‘tumne mujhe itnī jaldī kyō jagāyā?’ maīne kahā, ‘tumko yād nahī? āj ham jaypur jā rahe hāi!’ usne pūchā, ‘ham kitne baje jā rahe hāi?’ maīne javāb diyā, ‘ham das baje kī gārī pakarēge. tum jaldī taiyār ho jāo!’ usne jābhāī lekar kahā ki rāt mē usne sapnā dekhā thā. sapne mē ek būṛhī aurat ne usse kahā thā ki āj tum kahī mat jānā! ghar par hī rahnā! maīne hāskar kahā, ‘yah to sapnā hī thā. uṭho na! taiyār ho jāo.’

gārī thiķ das baje stēśan se calne lagā. par bīs-paccis mināt bād vah rukī. injan kharāb ho gai thī. sunsān jagah thi; pās mē koi gāv yā makān nahī thā. julāī kī garmī mē sare yātriyō

ne gārī se utarkar kai ghaṇṭō tak kuch choṭe perō ke sāye mē intazār kiyā. bhayankar garmī thi. tīn baje ek dūsri gārī ākar rukī. yah dūsri gārī yātriyō ko vāpas dillī le āne āī thi. gārī kī kahānī hamne rediyo par hī sunī. hamne us būṛhī aurat kī salāh lī thi! ham jaypur kal jāēge...

Unit 11

India: states and languages

- १ तमिल तमिलनाडु में बोली जाती है। *tamil tamilnāḍu mē boli jātī hai.*
- २ मराठी महाराष्ट्र में बोली जाती है। *marāṭhī mahārāṣṭra mē boli jātī hai.*
- ३ केरल में मलयालम बोली जाती है। *keral mē malayālam boli jātī hai.*
- ४ हिन्दी दस प्रदेशों में बोली जाती है। *hindī das pradeśō mē boli jātī hai.*
- ५ दिल्ली और बिहार के बीच उत्तर प्रदेश पाया जाता है। *dillī aur bihār ke bīc uttar pradeś pāyā jātā hai.*

Sharma ji in his shop

- १ गोपाल को शर्मा जी से बुलाया गया। *Gopāl ko Śarmā ji se bulāyā gayā.*
- २ सामान छोटे कमरे में रखा जाएगा। *sāmān choṭe kamre mē rakhā jāegā.*
- ३ कमरे की सफाई गोपाल से की जाएगी। *kamre kī safāī Gopāl se kī jāegī.*
- ४ दुकान को आठ बजे बंद किया जाएगा। *dukān ko āṭh baje band kiyā jāegā.*
- ५ शर्मा जी के साफ़ कपड़े धोबी के यहाँ से लाए जाएंगे। *Śarmā jī ke sāf kapṛē dhobī ke yahā se lāe jāēge.*
- ६ क्योंकि गोपाल रेडियो सुन रहा था। *kyōki Gopāl rediyo sun rahā thā!*

Your help is needed

- १ गीता को आराम करना चाहिए ।
Gītā ko ārām karnā cāhie.
- २ मनोज को गोली लेनी चाहिए और पानी पीना चाहिए ।
Manoj ko goli leni cāhie aur pānī pīnā cāhie.
- ३ राजू को फ़र्श को साफ़ करना चाहिए ।
Rājū ko farś ko sāf karnā cāhie.
- ४ मीना को कुछ खाना चाहिए ।
Minā ko kuch khānā cahie.
- ५ उन लोगों को नया घर लेना (या खरीदना) चाहिए ।
un logō ko nayā ghar lenā (yā kharidnā) cāhie.

11a

- १ कोई तीस लोग बुलाए जाएँगे ।
koi tīs log bulāe jāēge.
- २ शुक्रवार को घर को साफ़ किया जाएगा ।
Sukravār ko ghar ko sāf kiyā jāegā.
- ३ रविवार की सुबह को खाना बनाया जाएगा ।
ravivār ki subah ko khānā banāyā jāegā.
- ४ दोपहर को कुछ रिश्टेदारों को स्टेशन से लाए जाएँगे ।
dopahar ko kuch riśtedārō ko stēšan se lāe jāēge.
- ५ बच्चों को तोहफे दिए जाएँगे ।
baccō ko tohfe die jāēge.
- ६ रात को बगीचे में बत्तियाँ जलाई जाएँगी ।
rāt ko bagīce mē battiyā jalāi jāēgi.
- ७ संगीत भी बजाया जाएगा ।
sangīt bhi bajāyā jāegā.
- ८ पड़ोसियों को भी बुलाया जाएगा ।
parosiyō ko bhī bulāyā jāegā.

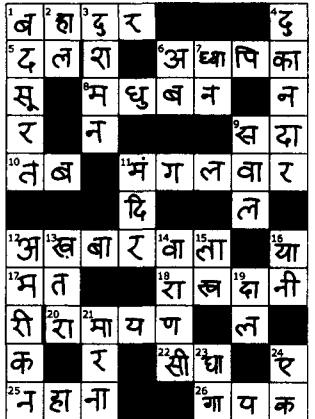
11b

- ९ आज का खाना ताज़ा नहीं था । लगता है वह कल ही बनाया गया था ।

- āj kā khānā tāzā nahī thā. lagtā hai vah kal hī banāyā gayā thā.*
- १० कल रात को हमारे दोस्त हमसे मिलने आए थे लेकिन हमें नहीं बताया गया कि वे आए हैं ।
kal rāt ko hamāre dost hamse milne āe the lekin hamē nahī batāyā gayā ki ve āe hai.
 - ११ किसी के गंदे कपड़े मेरे कमरे रखे गए थे ।
kisi ke gande kapre mere kamre mē rakhe gae the.
 - १२ आज शाम को मैंने देखा कि हमारे कमरे के दरवाजे को ठीक से बंद नहीं किया गया था ।
āj śām ko maine dekhā ki hamāre kamre ke darvāze ko thik se band nahī kiyā gayā thā.
 - १३ एक बात और — हमारे सामान को खोला गया था !
ek bāt aur — hamāre sāmān ko kholā gayā thā!
 - १४ हमको नहाने के लिए गरम पानी नहीं दिया गया ।
hamko nahāne ke lie garam pānī nahī diyā gayā.
 - १५ मैंने परसों कुछ कपड़े दिए थे धोने के लिए, लेकिन अभी तक वे वापस नहीं दिए गए ।
maine parsō kuch kapre die the dhone ke lie, lekin abhī tak ve vāpas nahī die gae.
 - १६ मेरे ड्राइवर को बताया गया कि उसे गाड़ी में ही सोना होगा ।
mere drāivar ko batāyā gayā ki use gāṛī mē hī sonā hogā.

11c

Why do these people hassle me? Everyday they complain about something. It seems they're very fond of complaining. I don't know which country they're from ['they've come from']. In my opinion when people come to our country they shouldn't complain about everything. They should respect this country. It's true that their luggage shouldn't have been opened, but all the other matters were quite minor. I should tell the manager about this but I don't want to tell him. I won't tell him. These people can go to hell!



Practise what you've learnt

- १ हम शर्मा जी से बच्चों को हिन्दी सिखवाएँगे ।
ham Šarmā ji se baccō ko hindī sikhvāēge.
- २ मैंने नौकरों से कुछ खाना बनवाया ।
maīne naukarō se kuch khānā banvāyā.
- ३ हमें गाड़ी को ठीक करवाना है ।
hamē gārī ko thiik karvānā hai.
- ४ मैं मास्टरजी से कुछ करते सिलवाना चाहता हूँ ।
maī māṣṭarjī se kuch kurte silvānā cāhtā hū̄.
- ५ मैंने इन पत्रों को किसी से लिखवाया ।
maīne in patrō ko kisi se likhvāyā.

The doctor asks you some questions

- १ मेरी तबियत दो दिन से खराब है ।
merī tabiyat do din se kharāb hai.
- २ जी नहीं, बुखार नहीं है ।
ji nahī̄, bukhār nahī̄ hai.
- ३ जी हाँ, सिर में दर्द है ।
ji hā̄, sir mē dard hai.
- ४ जी नहीं, मैं बाहर का खाना कभी नहीं खाता हूँ ।
ji nahī̄, maī bāhar kā khānā kabhī nahī̄ khātā hū̄.

५ जी नहीं, मैं बोतल का पानी ही पीता हूँ ।

ji nahī̄, maī botal kā pāni hi pitā hū̄.

६ जी हाँ, उलटी हो रही है ।

ji hā̄, ulṭī ho rahī hai.

७ हाँ, दस्त भी है ।

hā̄, dast bhī hai.

८ मैं शराब पीता तो हूँ लेकिन बहुत ज्यादा नहीं ।

maī śarāb pītā to hū̄ lekin bahut zyādā nahī̄.

९ आम तौर पर नींद ठीक से आती है ।

ām taur par niid thiik se ātī hai.

१० मैं ग्यारह-बारह बजे सोता हूँ ।

maī gyārah-bārah baje sotā hū̄.

११ मैं कम से कम [at least] सात घंटे सोता हूँ ।

maī kam se kam [at least] sāt ghaṇṭe sotā hū̄.

१२ जी नहीं, और कोई तकलीफ नहीं है ।

ji nahī̄, aur koi taklif nahī̄ hai.

12a

१ किसी बड़े आर्टिस्ट ने उसको बनाया होगा ।

kisi bare ḥṛṭiṣṭ ne usko banāyā hogā.

२ जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ कई दूसरे रिक्षेवाले भी रहते हैं ।

jahā̄ Hirālāl rahtā hai vahā̄ kai dūsre rikṣevāle bhī rahte hā̄.

३ उस शहर का नाम आगरा है ।

us śahar kā nām āgrā hai.

४ जी नहीं, बारिश में भी हीरालाल को काम करना पड़ता है ।

ji nahī̄, bāriś mē bhī Hirālāl ko kām karnā partā hai.

५ रिक्षे का वज़न तब बहुत ज्यादा हो जाता है जब मोटे लोग

अपने भारी सामान को लेकर रिक्षे में चढ़ते हैं ।

rikṣe kā vazan tab bahut zyādā ho jātā hai jab mote log apne bhārī sāmān ko lekar rikṣe mē carhते hā̄.

६ हीरालाल की जेब तब खाली रहती है जब कोई सवारी नहीं आती ।

Hirālāl ki jeb tab khālī rahtī hai jab koi savārī nahī̄ ātī.

७ जो लोग रिक्षे चलाते हैं उनकी ज़िन्दगी मुश्किल होती है ।
jo log rikše calāte hai unkī zindagi muśkil hotī hai.

12b (sample answers)

- ८ जो लोग भारत के बारे में कुछ सीखना चाहते हैं उनको हिन्दी सीखनी चाहिए ।
jo log bhārat ke bāre mē kuch sikhnā cāhte hai unko hindī sikhni cāhie.
- ९ जब मैंने पहली बार ताज महल को देखा तो मैंने सोचा कि मैं भी एक ऐसी इमारत बनाऊँगा !
jab maīne pahlī bār tāj mahal ko dekhā to maīne socā ki māi bhi ek aisi imārat banāūñgā!
- १० जहाँ मेरे रिश्टेदार रहते हैं, वहाँ पहुँचने में कई घंटे लगते हैं ।
jahā mere riśtedār rahte hai, vahā pahūcne mē kai ghanṭe lagte hai.
- ११ जो आदमी मेरे साथ काम करता है उसकी पत्नी मेरी पत्नी की सहेली है ।
jo ādmī mere sāth kām kartā hai uski patnī merī patnī ki saheli hai.
- १२ जो आदमी मेरे घर के सामने रहता है वह कोई बड़ा नेता है ।
jo ādmī mere ghar ke sāmne rahtā hai vah koi baṛā netā hai.
- १३ जिन लोगों के पास बहुत पैसा है वे ही लंदन में बड़ा मकान ख़रीद सकते हैं ।
jin logō ke pās bahut paisā hai ve hī landan mē baṛā makān kharid sakte haī.
- १४ जो कपड़े मैंने कल ख़रीदे उनको तुमने कहाँ रखा ?
jo kapڑe maīne kal kharide unko tumne kahā rakhā?

12c

- १५ जब मैं आगरे जाता हूँ तो अक्सर राजू के यहाँ रहता हूँ ।
jab maī agre jātā hū to aksar Rājū ke yahā rāhtā hū.
- १६ जो आदमी हमको हिन्दी पढ़ाता है वह राजू का भाई है ।
jo ādmī hamko hindī paṛhātā hai vah Rājū kā bhāī hai.
- १७ जो तोहफा मैंने आज राजू को दिया वह काफ़ी सस्ता था ।

jo tohfā maīne āj Rājū ko diyā vah kāfī sastā thā.

- १८ जब मैंने उसको दिया तो उसने उसे अपनी माँ को दिखाया ।
jab maīne use usko diyā to usne use apnī mā ko dikhāyā.
- १९ जब राजू की माँ ने मेरा तोहफा देखा तो वे हँसने लगीं ।
jab Rājū kī mā ne merā tohfā dekhā to ve hāsne lagī.
- २० जो सवाल उन्होंने राजू से मेरे बारे में पूछा मैं उसको कभी नहीं भूलूँगा ।
jo savāl unhōne Rājū se mere bāre mē pūchā usko maī kabhī nahī bhūlūñgā.
- २१ जो जवाब राजू ने दिया वह हमेशा याद रहेगा ।
jo javāb Rājū ne diyā vah hameśā yād rahegā.

12d

Dear Manoj,

I got your letter, thanks. I hadn't had a letter for a year so I'd begun wondering what had happened to my friend Manoj.

Everything's fine here. My brother has married. He's rented a small house in Delhi.

My father says I should get married too now. But I've told him clearly that I won't get married yet. I'm still young. When I turn thirty then maybe I'll start thinking about these things. But Father doesn't want to listen to what I say. Just a little while ago he again began talking about marriage. I got a bit angry. I said, 'Yes Papa, I heard!'

Tell me your email address.

Yours, Motu

KEY

- m. masculine
 f. feminine
 pl. plural
 m., f. used for both sexes
 m./f. used in either gender

DICTIONARY ORDER

The order of the characters in the Devanagari script follows the chart given in the introduction. Vowels precede consonants; nasalized vowels precede unnasalized vowels; plain consonants precede conjunct consonants.

अँगूठा <i>āgūthā</i> m. thumb	अच्छा <i>acchā</i> good, nice
अंग्रेज़ <i>āgrez</i> m., f. English person	अध्यापक <i>adhyāpak</i> m. teacher
अंग्रेज़ी <i>āgrezī</i> f. English (language); and adj.	अध्यापिका <i>adhyāpikā</i> f. teacher
अंदर <i>andar</i> inside	अपना <i>apnā</i> one's own (my, etc.)
अख्बार <i>akhbār</i> m. newspaper	अभी <i>abhi</i> right now; still
अख्बारवाला <i>akhbārvälā</i> m. newspaper seller	अमरीकन <i>amrikan</i> American
अकेला <i>akelā</i> alone	अरे are hey! Oh!
अकेलापन <i>akelāpan</i> m. loneliness	अलमारी <i>almāri</i> f. cupboard
अगर <i>agar</i> if	अस्पताल <i>aspatal</i> m. hospital
अगला <i>aglā</i> next	आँख <i>ākh</i> f. eye
	आँगन <i>āgan</i> m. courtyard
	आकाश <i>ākāś</i> m. sky
	आगे <i>āge</i> ahead

आज <i>āj</i> today; आजकल <i>ājkal</i> nowadays, these days; आज रात को <i>āj rāt ko</i> tonight; आज शाम को <i>āj sām ko</i> this evening	उंगली <i>ūglī</i> f. finger
आठ <i>āth</i> eight	उगना <i>ugnā</i> to grow (of plants)
आदमी <i>ādmī</i> m. man	उठना <i>uṭhnā</i> to get up, rise
आदर <i>ādar</i> m. respect	उठाना <i>uṭhānā</i> to pick up, raise
आदरणीय <i>ādaranīy</i> respected (used for 'Dear...' in formal correspondence)	उतरना, उतर <i>utarnā, utar</i> <i>jānā</i> to get down, alight
आधा <i>ādhā</i> m. half	उत्तर <i>uttar</i> north
आना <i>ānā</i> to come	उधर <i>udhar</i> there, over there
आप <i>āp</i> you	उम्र <i>umra, umar</i> f. age
आपका <i>āpkā</i> your, yours	उर्दू <i>urdū</i> f. Urdu
आम <i>ām</i> ¹ m. mango	उलटी <i>ulṭī</i> f. vomiting, sickness
आम <i>ām</i> ² ordinary; आम तौर पर <i>ām taur par</i> usually	उसका <i>uskā</i> his, her/hers, its
आराम <i>ārām</i> m. rest; आराम करना <i>ārām karnā</i> to rest; आराम से <i>ārām se</i> comfortably, easily	ऊपर <i>ūpar</i> up, upstairs
आवाज़ <i>āvāz</i> f. voice; sound	ऋण <i>r̥ī</i> m. debt
आशा <i>āśā</i> f. hope	एक <i>ek</i> one; a
आसान <i>āsān</i> easy	ऐसा <i>aisā</i> such, of this kind
इंजन <i>injan</i> m. engine (train)	ओ <i>o</i> oh!
इंतज़ार <i>intazār</i> m. waiting, expecting; का इंतज़ार करना <i>kā intazār karnā</i> to wait for	ओर <i>or</i> f. side, direction
इतना <i>itnā</i> so much, so	और <i>aur</i> and; more
इतिहास <i>itihās</i> m. history	औरत <i>aurat</i> f. woman
इधर <i>idhar</i> here, over here	कंधा <i>kandhā</i> m. shoulder
इमारत <i>imārat</i> f. building	कई <i>kai</i> several
इलाज <i>ilāj</i> m. cure, treatment	कटना <i>kaṭnā</i> to be cut
इसका <i>iskā</i> his, her/hers, its	कपड़ा <i>kapṛā</i> m. cloth; garment
इसलिए <i>islie</i> so, because of this	कब <i>kab</i> when?
	कभी <i>kabhi</i> ever; कभी कभी <i>kabhi kabhi</i> sometimes; कभी नहीं <i>kabhi nahi</i> never
	कम <i>kam</i> little, less
	कमज़ोर <i>kamzor</i> weak
	कमर <i>kamar</i> f. waist
	कमरा <i>kamrā</i> m. room
	कमी <i>kamī</i> f. lack, shortage
	कमीज़ <i>qamīz</i> f. shirt
	कम्प्यूटर <i>kampyūṭar</i> m. computer

करना *karnā* to do
 करवाना *karvānā* to get done (by someone else)
 कराची *karāčī* f. Karachi
 कल *kal* yesterday; tomorrow
 क़लम *qalam* m./f. pen
 कलाई *kalāī* f. wrist
 कहना *kahnā* to say
 कहाँ *kahā̄* where?
 कहानी *kahānī* f. story
 कहीं *kahī̄* anywhere, somewhere
 का-की-के *kā-kī-ke* [shows possession, like English apostrophe's]
 काठमांडु *kāthmāndu* m. Kathmandu
 कान *kān* m. ear
 काफ़ी *kāfī*¹ f. coffee
 काफ़ी *kāfī*² quite, very; enough
 काम *kām* m. work; job, task; काम करना *kām karnā* to work; to function
 काला *kālā* black
 कालेज *kālej* m. college
 कि *ki* that (conjunction); कि *ki* when, when suddenly; or
 कितना *kitnā* how much/many?
 किताब *kitāb* f. book
 किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge
 किलो *kilo* m. kilo, kilogram
 किराया *kirāyā* m. rent; fare
 किसी *kisī* oblique of कोई *koi*
 की ओर *ki* or towards
 की तरफ *ki taraf* towards

की तरह *ki tarah* like
 कुछ *kuch* some; something; कुछ और *kuch aur* some more; कुछ नहीं *kuch nahī* nothing
 कुरता *kurtā* m. kurta, loose shirt
 कुहनी *kuhnī* f. elbow
 कुत्ता *kuttā* m. dog
 कुरता *kurtā* m. kurta
 कुरसी *kursī* f. chair
 कुल मिलाकर *kul milākar* all together, in total
 कृपया *kṛpayā* please (formal)
 के अंदर *ke andar* inside
 के अलावा *ke alāvā* as well as
 के ऊपर *ke ūpar* above, on top of
 के चारों तरफ *ke cārō taraf* all around
 के द्वारा *ke dvārā* by (in formal passive sentences)
 के नज़दीक *ke nazdik* near
 के नीचे *ke nīcē* below, under
 के पास *ke pās* near; in the possession of
 के बाहर *ke bāhar* outside
 के यहाँ *ke yahā̄* at the place of
 के लिए *ke lie* for
 के साथ *ke sāth* with, in the company of
 के सामने *ke sāmne* opposite
 केला *kelā* m. banana
 कैसा *kaisā* how?
 को *ko* to; [also marks an individualized direct object: पानी को पियो *pānī ko piyo* 'Drink the water']

कोई *koi* some, any, a; (with number) about; कोई दूसरा *koi dūsrā* some other, another; कोई नहीं *koi nahī* nobody
 कौन *kaun* who?
 कौनसा *kaunsā* which?
 क्या *kyā* what?; and question marker
 क्यों *kyō* why?
 क्योंकि *kyōki* because
 क्रिकेट *kriket* m. cricket
 खड़ा *khaṛā* standing
 खत *khat* m. letter (correspondence)
 खत्म *khatm* finished; खत्म करना *khatm karnā* to finish
 ख्याल *khyāl*, m. opinion, thought, idea
 खराब *kharāb* bad; खराब हो जाना *kharāb ho jānā* to break down
 खरीदना *kharidnā* to buy
 खर्च *kharc* m. expenditure; खर्च करना *kharc karnā* to spend
 खाली *khālī* empty, free, vacant
 खाना *khānā*¹ m. food
 खाना *khānā*² to eat
 खिड़की *khirkī* f. window
 खिलौना *khilaunā* m. toy
 खुद *khud* oneself (myself, etc.)
 खुश *khuś* pleased, happy
 खूब *khüb* a lot, freely
 खेल *khel* m. game
 खेलना *khelnā* to play (a game)
 खोलना *kholnā* to open
 गंगा *gangā* f. Ganges

गंदा *gandā* dirty
 गरम *garam* hot, warm
 गरमी *garmī* f. heat; गरमियाँ *garmiyā̄* f.pl. summer
 गरीब *garīb* poor
 गर्दन *gardan* f. neck
 गली *gali* f. lane, narrow street
 गाँव *gāv* m. village
 गाड़ी *gārī* f. car; train, vehicle
 गाना *gānā* m. song, singing
 गाना *gānā* to sing
 गाल *gāl* f. cheek
 गिलास *gilās* m. tumbler
 गुजराती *gujaratī* f. Gujarati
 गुरुवार *guruvār* m. Thursday
 गोलचक्कर *golcakkar* m. roundabout
 गोली *goli* f. tablet, pill; bullet
 गोस्त *gośt* m. meat
 घंटा *ghantā* m. hour
 घर *ghar* m. house, home
 घास *ghās* f. grass
 घुटना *ghuṭnā* m. knee
 घुसना *ghusnā* to enter, sneak in
 घूमना *ghūmnā* to turn, revolve
 घोड़ा *ghorā* m. horse; घोड़े बेचकर सोना *ghoṛē beckar sonā* to sleep like a log
 घढना *caṛhnā* to climb, get into vehicle
 घढाव *caṛhāv* m. rise, incline
 घपाती *capātī* f. chapati
 घमकना *camaknā* to shine
 घम्मच *cammac* m. spoon

चलना *calnā* to move, blow, flow; चलते जाना *calte jānā* to keep going
 चलाना *calānā* to drive
 चश्मा *caśmā* m. glasses, spectacles
 चाकू *cāqū* m. knife, penknife
 चाचा *cācā* m. uncle (father's younger brother)
 चाबी *cābi* f. key
 चाय *cāy* f. tea
 चार *cār* four; चारें और *cārō or all around*
 चालू करना *cālū karnā* to turn on
 चावल *cāval* m. rice
 चाहना *cāhnā* to want, wish
 चाहिए *cāhie* (is) wanted, needed
 चिंता *cintā* f. anxiety
 चिट्ठी *cittī* f. letter, note
 चीज़ *ciz* f. thing
 चीनी *cini* f. sugar
 चुकना *cuknā* to have already done (with verb stem: वह जा चुका है *vah jā cukā hai* 'He's already gone')
 चूहा *cūhā* m. mouse, rat
 चेहरा *cehrā* m. face
 चौड़ा *caurā* wide, broad
 चौथा *cauthā* fourth
 छठा *chatā* sixth
 छत *chat* f. roof
 छह *chah* six
 छाती *chāti* f. chest
 छुट्टी *chutti* f. holiday; free time

छोटा *chotā* small
 जँबाई *jābhāi* f. yawn
 जगह *jagah* f. place
 जगाना *jagānā* to awaken
 जब *jab* when
 ज़माना *zamānā* m. period, time
 जरूर *zarūr* of course
 ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need; मुझको X की ज़रूरत है *mujhko X ki zarūrat hai* I need X
 जलना *jalnā* to burn
 जलवाना *jalvānā* to cause to burn
 जलाना *jalānā* to light, burn
 जल्दी *jaldī* quickly, early; f. hurry
 जवान *javān* young
 जवाब *javāb* m. answer, reply; जवाब देना *javāb denā* to reply
 जहाँ *jahā* where
 जांघ *jāgh* f. thigh
 जान *jān* f. life, soul
 जानना *jānnā* to know
 जाना *jānā* to go
 ज़िंदगी *zindagī* f. life
 ज़िंदा *zindā* (invariable -ā ending) alive
 जी *jī* word of respect used after names etc. and as a short form of जी हाँ *jī hā* 'yes'
 जी नहीं *jī nahī* no
 जी हाँ *jī hā* yes
 जीतना *jītnā* to win, conquer
 जीवन *jīvan* m. life
 ज़ुकाम *zukām* m. head cold
 ज़ोर से *zor se* with force, loudly

जूता *jūtā* m. shoe
 जेब *jeb* f. pocket
 जैसा ... वैसा *jaisā... vaisā* as [one thing], so [another]
 जो *jo* who, which
 ज्यादा *zyādā* more, much
 झूठ *jhūth* m. a lie
 टाँग *tāg* f. leg
 टार्च *tārc* m. torch, flashlight
 टिकट *tikat* f./m. ticket; stamp
 टिकिया *tikiyā* f. cake (e.g. of soap)
 टूटना *tūtnā* to break
 टैक्सी *taiksī* f. taxi
 टोस्ट *tost* m. toast, piece of toast
 ट्रेन *tren* f. train
 ठंड *thand* f. cold; ठंड लगना *thand lagnā* to feel cold
 ठंडा *thandā* cold
 ठीक *thik* OK, all right; exactly
 ठुड़डी *thuddī* f. chin
 डाक *dāk* f. post; डाक घर *dāk ghar* m. post office; डाक की टिकट *dāk kī tikat* f. stamp
 डाक्टर *dāktar* m. doctor
 डालना *dālnā* to put, pour
 डिब्बा *dibbā* m. box
 ड्राइवर *drāivar* m. driver
 डाबा *dhābā* m. roadside cafe
 तंग *tang* narrow, confined; तंग करना *tang karnā* to harass
 तक *tak* up to, until, as far as
 तकलीफ *taklif* f. suffering, pain, discomfort, inconvenience, trouble

तनखाह *tankhvāh*, तनखाह *tankhāh* f. pay, wages
 तब *tab* then
 तबला *tablā* m. tabla (drum)
 तबियत *tabyat* f. health, disposition
 तमिल *tamil* f. Tamil
 तस्वीर *tasvīr* f. picture
 ताकि *taki* so that, in order that
 ताज महल *taj mahal* m. Taj Mahal
 ताज़ा *tāzā* (-ā ending sometimes treated as invariable) fresh
 ताश *tās* m. playing cards
 तीन *tīn* three
 तीसरा *tīsrā* third
 तुम *tum* you (familiar)
 तुम्हारा *tumhārā* your, yours
 तू *tū* you (intimate)
 तैयार *taiyār* ready, prepared; तैयार करना *taiyār karnā* to prepare; तैयार हो जाना *taiyār ho jānā* to get ready
 तैयारी *taiyāri* f. preparation
 तो *to* so, then; as for...
 तोड़ना *torñā* to break, smash
 तोता *totā* m. parrot
 तोहफा *tohfā* m. gift, present
 थकना *thaknā* to get tired
 थाना *thānā* m. police station
 थोड़ा *thorā* (a) little; थोड़ी देर *thorī der* f. a little while
 दक्षिण *daksiṇ* south
 दफ्तर *daftar* m. office
 दयालु *dayālu* kind, merciful

दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m. door

दर्जी *darzī* m. tailor

दर्द *dard* m. pain

दवा *davā* f. medicine

दवाखाना *davākhānā* m.

pharmacy, chemist's shop

दस *das* ten

दस्त *dast* m. diarrhoea; दस्त आना
dast ānā to have diarrhoea

दाँत *dāt* m. tooth

दादा *dādā* m. grandfather
(father's father)

दादी *dādī* f. grandmother
(father's mother)

दाल *dāl* f. daal, lentil

दाहिना *dāhinā* right (direction)

दिखाना *dikhānā* to show

दिन *din* m. day

दिया *diyā* m. lamp

दिल *dil* m. heart

दिल्ली *dillī* f. Delhi

दीवार, दीवाल *dīvār, dīvāl* f. wall

दुकान *dukān* f. shop

दुकानदार *dukāndār* m.
shopkeeper

दुखी *dukhi* sad

दुर्घटना *durghaṭnā* f. accident

दूध *dūdh* m. milk

दूधबाला *dūdhvālā* m. milkman

दूर *dūr* far, distant

दूसरा *dūsrā* second; other

देखना *dekhnā* to look, to see

देना *denā* to give; to allow to,
let (with oblique infinitive:
हमको जाने दो *hamko jāne do*

'Let us go')

देर *der* f. a while, length of
time; delay; देर से *der se* late

देरी *derī* f. delay

देश *des* m. country

दो *do* two

दोनों *donō* both, the two

दोस्त *dost* m., f. friend

दौड़ना *dauṛnā* to run

धन्यवाद *dhanyavād* thank you

धीरे धीरे *dhīre dhīre* slowly

धूलना *dhulnā* to be washed

धूलबाना *dhulvānā* to get washed

धोना *dhonā* to wash

धोबी *dhobi* m. washerman

ध्यान *dhyān* m. attention; ध्यान से
dhyān se attentively; ध्यान

रखना *dhyān rakhnā* to pay
attention to, look after

न *na* don't; isn't that so?

नक्षा *naqṣā* m. map, plan

नदी *nadī* f. river

नमस्कार *namaskār* hello,
goodbye

नमस्ते *namaste* hello, goodbye

नया *nayā* (f. नई *naī*; m. pl. नए
nae) new

नर्स *nars* m., f. nurse

नल *nal* m. tap, pipe

नहाना *nahānā* to bathe

नहीं *nahī* not, no

नाक *nāk* f. nose

नाम *nām* m. name

नाराज़ *nārāz* angry, displeased

नाव *nāv* f. boat

नाश्ता *nāstā* m. breakfast,
snack; नाश्ता करना *nāstā*
karnā to have breakfast

निकलना *nikalnā* to emerge,
come/go out नीचे *nīcē* down,
downstairs

नींद *nīd* f. sleep; नींद आना *nīd*
ānā (sleep to come) to get to
sleep

नीला *nilā* blue

नेता *netā* m. leader, politician

नेपाल *nepāl* m. Nepal

नौ *nau* nine

नौकर *naukar* m. servant

नौकरी *naukari* f. job,
employment

पंखा *pankhā* m. fan

पकड़ना *pakarnā* to catch

पचास *pacās* fifty

पड़ना *parnā* to fall; to have to
(with preceding infinitive:
मुझे जाना पड़ेगा *mujhe jānā*
paregā 'I'll have to go')

पड़ा *parā* lying

पड़ोसी *parosī* m., पड़ोसिन
parosin f. neighbour

पढ़ना *parhnā* to read, to study

पढ़ाई *parhāī* f. studies,
studying

पढ़ाना *parhānā* to teach

पतला *patlā* thin

पता *patā* m. address;
whereabouts

पति *pati* m. husband

पत्नी *patnī* f. wife

पत्र *patr* m. letter
(correspondence)

पर *par*¹ but

पर *par*² on; at ('at home' etc.)
परसे *parsē* two days away (the
day after tomorrow; the day
before yesterday)

परिवार *parivār* m. family

पश्चिम *paścim* west

पसंद *pasand* pleasing (यह मुझको
पसंद है *yah mujhko pasand hai*
I like this); पसंद आना *pasand*
ānā to appeal to, to be liked

पहला *pahlā* first

पहाड़ *pahāṛ* m. hill

पहुँचना *pahūcnā* to reach, arrive

पाँच *pāč* five; पाँचवाँ *pācvā* fifth

पाँव *pāv* m. foot, leg

पाकिस्तान *pākistān* m. Pakistan

पागल *pāgal* mad, crazy

पाना *pānā* to find, obtain; to be
able, to manage to (with
verb stem: मैं नहीं जा पाया *mai*
nahī jā pāyā 'I didn't manage
to go')

पानी *pāni* m. water

पापा *pāpā* m. papa, father

पार *pār* across; पार करना *pār*
karnā to cross; उस पार *us pār*
on the other side (of, के ke)

पार्टी *pārtī* f. party

पास में *pās mē* nearby

पिछला *pichlā* previous, last

पिता *pitā* m. father

पीटना *pītnā* to beat, thrash

पीना *pīnā* to drink; to smoke
 पीला *pīlā* yellow
 पुकारना *pukārnā* to call out
 पुराना *purānā* old (for inanimates, not for people)
 पुल *pul* m. bridge
 पुलिस *pulis* f. police; पुलिसवाला *pulisvālā* m. policeman
 पुस्तकालय *pustakālay* m. library
 पूछना *pūchnā* to ask
 पूरा *pūrā* full, complete
 पूर्व *pūrv* east
 पेट *pet* m. stomach
 पेड़ *per* m. tree
 पैदल *paidal* on foot
 पैर *pair* m. foot; पैर की ऊंगली *pair kī ügli* f. toe
 पैसा *paisā* m. money
 प्यारा *pyārā* dear, sweet, cute
 प्यास *pyās* f. thirst; प्यास लगना *pyās lagnā* (thirst to strike) to feel thirsty
 प्रदेश *pradeś* m. state, region
 प्रधान मंत्री *pradhān mantri* m./f. prime minister
 प्रिय *priy* dear; 'Dear...' (in informal letter writing)
 प्रेस करना *pres karnā* to iron
 प्लेट *plet* f. plate
 फल *phal* m. fruit
 फलबाला *phalvālā* m. fruitseller
 फर्श *fars* m. floor
 फिर, फिर से *phir, phir se* again
 फ़िल्म *film* f. film
 फ़ीस *fis* f. fee, fees

फूल *phūl* m. flower
 फोन *fon* m. phone; फोन करन *fon karnā* to phone
 बंद *band* closed, shut
 बकवास *bakvās* f. nonsense, idle chatter
 बगीचा *bagicā* m. garden
 बचपन *bacpan* m. childhood
 बच्चा *baccā* m. child
 बजना *bajnā* to play, resound, chime
 बजाना *bajānā* to play (music)
 बजे *baje* o'clock
 बड़ा *baṛā* big
 बढ़िया *baṛhiyā* (invariable -ā ending) excellent, really good, fine
 बटुआ *baṭuā* m. purse, wallet
 बताना *batānā* to tell
 बत्ती *batti* f. light, lamp
 बनवाना *banvānā* to cause to be made
 बनाना *banānā* to make
 बरतन *bartan* m. dish, utensil
 बस *bas* f. bus
 बहिन *bahin* f. sister
 बहुत *bahut* very; बहुत ज्यादा *bahut zyādā* very great, too much
 बाँह *bāh* f. arm, upper arm
 बाज़ार *bāzār* m. market, bazaar
 बात *bāt* f. thing said, idea; बात करना *bāt karnā* to talk
 बाप *bāp* m. dad; बाप रे बाप ! *bāp re bāp!* Oh God!
 बाप रे बाप ! Oh God!

बायाँ *bāyā* left (direction)
 बार *bār* f. time, occasion; इस बार *is bār* this time; कितनी बार *kitni bār* how many times?; कई बार *kai bār* several times
 बारिश *bāriś* f. rain; बारिश होना *bāriś honā* to rain
 बाल *bāl* m. hair
 बाहर *bāhar* outside
 बिजली *bijli* f. electricity
 बिलकुल *bilkul* quite, completely
 बिल्ली *billi* f. cat
 बिस्कुट *biskuṭ* m. biscuit
 बीमार *bimār* ill, sick
 बीयर *bīyar* f. beer
 बुखार *bukhār* m. fever
 बुधवार *budhvar* m. Wednesday
 बुरा *burā* bad
 बुलवाना *bulvānā* to cause to be called
 बुलाना *bulānā* to call, invite, summon
 बुढ़ा *būṛhā* elderly
 बेचना *becnā* to sell
 बेटा *betā* m. son
 बेटी *betī* f. daughter
 बेहतर *behtar* better
 बैठणा *baiṭhnā* to sit
 बैठा *baiṭhā* seated, sitting
 बोतल *botal* f. bottle
 बोलना *bolnā* to speak
 भयंकर *bhayankar* terrible
 भरना *bharnā* to be filled
 भरोसा *bharosā* m. trust, reliance
 भाई *bhāī* m. brother
 भाइ में आए *bhāī mē jāe* '(he/she) can go to hell' (भाइ *bhāī* m. grain-parching oven)
 भारत *bhārat* m. India
 भारी *bhārī* heavy
 भाषा *bhāṣā* f. language
 भिजवाना *bhijvānā* to have sent, to cause to be sent
 भी *bhi* also; even
 भूख *bhūkh* f. hunger; भूख लगना *bhūkh lagnā* (hunger to strike) to feel hungry
 भेजना *bhejnā* to send
 मंगलवार *māngalvār* f. Tuesday
 मंदिर *mandir* m. temple
 मकान *makān* m. house
 मज़ा *mazā* m. enjoyment, fun; मज़े करना *maze karnā* to enjoy oneself, have fun
 मत *mat* don't
 मतलब *matlab* m. meaning
 मदद *madad* f. help; किसी की मदद करना *kisi kī madad karnā* to help someone
 मराठी *marāṭhi* f. Marathi
 मरीज़ *marīz* m. patient
 महँगा *mahāgā* expensive
 महसूस करना *mahsūs karnā* to feel; महसूस होना *mahsūs honā* to be felt, experienced
 महिला *mahilā* f. lady
 महीना *mahinā* m. month
 माँ *mā* f. mother; माँ-बाप *mā-bāp* m. pl. parents
 माँगना *māgnā* to ask for,

demand
माँजना *mājnā* to scour, clean, cleanse
माता *mātā* f. mother
माता-पिता *mātā-pitā* m.pl. parents
माथा *māthā* m. forehead
माफ़ी *māfi* f. forgiveness; माफ़ी
 माँगना *māfi māgnā* to apologize
मामूली *māmūlī* ordinary
मारना *mārnā* to hit, beat, strike
माल *māl* m. goods, stuff
मालूम *mālūm* (is) known;
 मालूम नहीं *mālūm nahi*
 [I] don't know
मार्ग *mārg* m. road, street (used in street names)
मिठाई *mīthāī* f. sweet, sweetmeat
मिठास *mīthās* f. sweetness
मिलना *milnā* to meet, to be available
मीठा *mīthā* sweet
मुंबई *mumbāī* f. Mumbai, Bombay
मुँह *mūh* m. mouth; face
मुड़ना *mūrnā* to turn
मुफ्त (का) *muft (kā)* free; मुफ्त में
muft mē for nothing, free
मुश्किल *muśkil* difficult; मुश्किल
 से *muśkil se* with difficulty, hardly
मुस्कराना *muskarānā* to smile
में *mē* in
मेज़ *mez* f. table

मेमसाहब *memsāhab* f.
 memsaheb
मेरा *merā* my, mine
मेहनत *mehnat* f. hard work;
 मेहनती *mehntī* hard-working
मैं *mai* I
मैला *mailā* dirty
मोटा *moṭā* fat
मौसम *mausam* m. weather
यह *yah* he, she, it, this
यहाँ *yahā* here
यहीं *yahī* right here
या *yā* or
यात्री *yātrī* m. traveller,
 passenger
याद *yād* f. memory
यानी *yānī* in other words, that
 is to say
ये *ye* they, these
रखना *rakhnā* to put, place, keep
रविवार *ravivār* m. Sunday
रसोई *rasoī* f. kitchen
रहना *rahnā* to live, to stay
राजा *rājā* m. king, raja
रात *rāt* f. night; रात का खाना *rāt*
 का *khānā* m. dinner
रास्ता *rāstā* m. road
रिक्षा *riksā* m. rickshaw
रिक्षेवाला *rikṣevālā* m. rickshaw
 driver
रिस्तेदार *riśtedār* m. relation,
 relative
रुपया *rupayā* m. rupee
रेडियो *reḍiyō* m. radio
रोज़ *roz* every day

रोना *ronā* to cry, weep
लंबा *lambā* tall
लगना *lagnā* time to be taken;
 घर जाने में १० मिनट लगते हैं / एक
 घंटा लगता है *ghar jāne mē 10*
minat lagte hai / ek ghaṇṭā
lagtā hai It takes 10 minutes
 / one hour to get home; लगना
lagnā to seem; to be felt (of
 hunger, thirst etc.); to have
 an effect; to begin (following
 an oblique infinitive)
लन्दन *landan* m. London
लड़का *larkā* m. boy
लड़की *larkī* f. girl
लाइट *lāit* f. light, electric
 power
लाना *lānā* to bring
लाल *lāl* red
लिखना *likhnā* to write
लेकिन *lekin* but
लेखक *lekhak* m. writer
लेटना *letnā* to lie down
लेटा *letā* lying, lying down
लेना *lenā* to take
लोग *log* m. pl. people
लौटना *lauṭnā* to return
व *va* and
वगैरह *vagairah* etc., and so on
वज़न *vazan* m. weight
वह *vah* he, she, it, that
वहाँ *vahā* there
वापस *vāpas* 'back' in वापस
 आना/जाना/देना *vāpas*
ānā/jānā/denā to
 come/go/give back

वाराणसी *vārāṇasī* f. Varanasi,
 Banaras
विदेश *videś* abroad
विदेशी *videśī* m. foreigner;
 adj. foreign
विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m. student
वे *ve* they, those
शक्ति *sakti* f. power
शनिवार *śanivār* m. Saturday
शब्द *śabd* m. word
शब्दकोश *śabdkoś* m. dictionary
शराब *śarāb* f. alcoholic drink,
 liquor
शरीर *śarīr* m. body
शहर *śahar* m. town, city
शांति *śānti* f. peace
शादी *śādī* f. wedding,
 marriage; शादी करना *śādī*
karnā to marry
शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā* (-ā ending
 invariable) married
शानदार *śāndār* splendid,
 magnificent
शाबाश *śābāś* bravo
शाम *śām* f. evening
शायद *śāyad* maybe, perhaps
शिकायत *śikāyat* f. complaint;
 शिकायत करना *śikāyat karnā* to
 complain
शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday
शुक्रिया *śukriyā* thank you
शुद्ध *śuddh* pure
शुभ *śubh* good, auspicious
शुभकामना *śubhkāmnā* f. good
 wish

शोला *solā* m. flame
 शौक *sauq* m. liking, hobby, interest
 श्री *śrī* Mr; श्रीमती *śrimatī* Mrs
 संगीत *sangīt* m. music
 संगीतकार *sangītkār* m. musician
 संतरा *santara* m. orange
 सक्ना *saknā* to be able (with verb stem: तुम जा सकते हो *tum jā sakte ho* 'You can go')
 सच *sac* m. truth; adj. true
 सड़क *sarak* f. road, street
 सपना *sapnā* m. dream; सपना देखना *sapnā dekhnā* to dream, to have a dream
 सब *sab* all; सब कुछ *sab kuch* everything; सबसे *sabse* of all (in superlatives, e.g. सबसे अच्छा *sabse acchā* best, best of all)
 सब्ज़ी *sabzī* f. vegetable(s); सब्ज़ी मंडी *sabzī mandī* f. vegetable market; सब्ज़ीवाला *sabzivālā* m. vegetable seller
 समझना *samajnā* to understand
 समय *samay* m. time
 समोसा *samosā* m. samosa
 सरकार *sarkār* f. government
 सलाह *salāh* f. advice
 सवारी *savārī* f. passenger, rider
 सस्ता *sastā* cheap
 सहायता *sahāytā* f. assistance
 सहित *sahit* with (formal)
 सही *sahī* correct, true, exact
 सहेली *saheli* f. female's female friend

-सा -sā '-ish' (suffix that qualifies an adjective, as in बड़ा-सा *baṛā-sā* 'biggish')
 साइकिल *sāikil* f. bicycle
 साड़ी *sārī* f. sari
 सात *sāt* seven
 सादर *sādar* respectful
 साफ़ *sāf* clean, clear; साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean
 साबुन *sābun* m. soap
 सामने *sāmne* opposite
 सामान *sāmān* m. goods, furniture, luggage
 साया *sāyā* m. shade, shadow
 साल *sāl* m. year
 साहब *sāhab* m. sahib
 सिखाना *sikhvānā* to cause to be taught
 सिखाना *sikhānā* to teach
 सिग्रेट *sigret* m. cigarette
 सितार *sitār* m. sitar
 सिनेमा *sinemā* m. cinema
 सिर *sir* m. head
 सिर्फ़ *surf* only
 सिलवाना *silvānā* to have sewn
 सीना *sīnā* to sew
 सुखी *sukhī* happy
 सीखना *sikhnā* to learn
 सुंदर *sundar* beautiful, handsome
 सुनना *sunnā* to hear, to listen
 सुनसान *sunsān* desolate, empty
 सुबह *subah* f. morning
 से *se* from
 सैर *sair* f. trip

सोचना *sochnā* to think
 सोना *sonā* to sleep
 सोमवार *somvār* m. Monday
 सौ *sau* m. hundred
 स्कूल *skūl* m. school
 हँसना *hāsnā* to laugh
 हफ्ता *haftā* m. week
 हम *ham* we, us
 हमारा *hamārā* our, ours
 हमेशा *hameśā* always
 हर *har* every, each
 हवा *havā* f. air, breeze
 हाँ *hā* yes
 हाथ *hāth* m. hand
 हाथी *hāthī* m. elephant
 हाल *hāl* m. condition, state (in क्या हाल है? *kyā hāl hai?* 'How's things? How are you?')

हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi
 हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustānī* Indian
 हिलाना *hilānā* to move, shake
 ही *hī* only (emphatic)
 हीरा *hirā* m. diamond
 हुआ *huā* [past tense of होना *honā*] 'happened'
 हूँ *hū* am
 है *hai* are
 है *hai* is
 हो *ho* are (with तुम *tum*)
 होटल *hotäl* m. hotel, restaurant, cafe
 होशियार *hosiyār* clever

KEY

- adj. adjective (only stated to resolve ambiguities)
 f. feminine
 m. masculine
 m., f. used for both sexes
 m./f. used in either gender
 N regularly uses the ने ne construction in perfective tenses
 n sometimes uses the ने ne construction in perfective tenses
 p. plural

- a एक ek, कोई koi
 able, to be सकना saknā (after verb stem — मैं जा सकता हूँ maī jā saktā hū I can go)
 about (approx.) करीब qarib, लगभग lagbhag; (with number) कोई koi (कोई दस लोग koi das log some ten people); (concerning) के बारे में ke bāre mē
 above ऊपर ūpar
 abroad विदेश vides
 accept, to स्वीकार करना svikār karnā^N; मानना mānnā^N

- accident हादसा hādsā m., दुर्घटना durghaṭnā f.
 actually वैसे vaise
 add, to जोड़ना joḍnā^N
 address पता patā m.
 advice सलाह salāh f.
 aeroplane हवाई जहाज havāī jahāz m.
 affection प्यार pyār m.
 after के बाद ke bād
 again फिर phir, फिर से phir se
 age (of person) उम्र f. umra, umar
 Agra आगरा āgrā m.

- ahead (of) (के) आगे (ke) āge
 air हवा havā f.
 airmail हवाई डाक havāī dāk f.
 alcoholic drink शराब śarāb f.
 all सब sab, सभी sabhi; whole सारा sārā
 allow to, to oblique inf. + देना denā^N (मुझे जाने दो mujhe jāne do 'let me go')
 alone अकेला akelā; (adv.) अकेले akele
 also भी bhi
 although हालाँकि hālāki
 always हमेशा hameśā
 America अमरीका amrīkā m.; American अमरीकन amrīkan
 among के बीच ke bīc; among themselves आपस में āpas mē
 and और aur
 anger गुस्सा gussā m.
 angry नाराज nārāz
 answer जवाब javāb m.; to answer जवाब देना javāb denā^N
 anxiety परेशानी pareśāni f.; चिंता cintā f.
 anyone (at all) कोई (भी) koi (bhi)
 anywhere (at all) कहीं (भी) kahī (bhi)
 apart from के सिवा/ सिवाय ke sivā/sivāy; को छोड़कर ko chorkar
 apologize (to), to (से) माफ़ी māfi māgnā^N
 appear, to दिखना dikhnā, दिखाई
- देना dikhāī denā; to seem लगना lagnā
 area, district इलाक़ा ilāqā m.
 arm बाँह bāh f.
 around, in vicinity of के आस-पास ke ās-pās
 arrange, to का इंतज़ाम करना kā intazām karnā^N
 arrangement इंतज़ाम intazām m.
 arrive, to पहुँचना pahūcnā
 as if, as though जैसे jaise, मानो mānō
 as soon as जैसे ही jaise hī
 ask, to पूछना pūchnā^N; ask Ram राम से पूछो Rām se pūchho
 at को ko; पर par
 at least कम से कम kam se kam
 attention ध्यान dhyān m.; to pay attention (to) (पर) dhyān denā^N
 attentively ध्यान से dhyān se
 August अगस्त agast m.
 available, to be मिलना milnā
 back (in sense 'return') वापस vāpas
 back (part of body) पीठ pīth f.
 bad खराब kharāb, बुरा burā
 bag, cloth bag थैला thailā m.
 Banaras बनारस banāras m., वाराणसी vārāṇasi f.
 bathe, to नहाना nahānā
 be, to होना honā; बनना bannā
 beat, to मारना mārnā^N

beautiful सुन्दर *sundar*
because क्योंकि *kyōki*
because of की वजह से *kī vajah se*, के कारण *ke kārān*
become, to बनना *bannā*
before (के/से) पहले (*ke/se*) *pahle*
begin to, to oblique inf. + लगना *lagnā* (पानी पड़ने लगा *pāni parne* *lagā* it began to rain); शुरू करना *śurū karnā* N (हम काम शुरू करें *ham kām śurū karē* let's begin work)
beginning शुरू *surū* m.
behind (के) पीछे (*ke*) *piche*
bell घंटी *ghantī* f.
below, beneath (के) नीचे (*ke* nice)
between के बीच *ke bic;* between themselves आपस में *āpas mē*
bicycle साइकिल *sāikil* f.
big बड़ा *barā*
bird चिरिया *ciriyā* f.
birth जन्म *janm* m.
birthday जन्मदिन *janmdin* m.
blanket कंबल *kambal* m.
boil, to उबलना *ubalnā*; उबालना *ubālnā*
book किताब *kitāb* f.; पुस्तक *pustak* f.
bored, to be ऊबना *übñā*
born, to be पैदा होना *paidā honā* (पैदा *paidā* inv.); का जन्म होना *kā janm honā*

both दोनों *donō*
bottle बोतल *botal* f.
boy लड़का *larkā* m.
bread रोटी *rotī* f.; (loaf) डबल रोटी *dabal rotī* f.
break, be broken, to टूटना *tūtnā*
break, to तोड़ना *tornā* N
breakfast नाश्ता *nāstā* m.
bridge पुल *pul* m.
bring, to लाना *lānā*, ले आना *le ānā*
brother भाई *bhāi* m.
brother-in-law (husband's younger bro.) देवर *devar* m.; (wife's bro.) साला *sālā* m.
building इमारत *imārat* f.
bullet गोली *golī* f.
burn, to जलना *jalnā*; जलाना *jalānā* N
bus बस *bas* f.
but लेकिन *lekin*, पर *par*, मगर *magar*
butter मक्खन *makkhan* m.
buy, to खरीदना *kharidnā* N
by से *se*; by means of (के) द्वारा (*ke*) *dvārā*
call (invite), to बुलाना *bulānā* N
camera कैमरा *kaimrā* m.
can see 'able, to be'
capital city राजधानी *rājdhānī* f.
car गाड़ी *gārī* f., कार *kār* f.
care (about), to (की) परवाह करना (*ki*) *parvāh karnā* N

cat बिल्ली *billī* f.
catch, to पकड़ना *pakarnā* N; (of fire or illness) लगना *lagnā*
cause कारण *kārān* m.
certainly ज़रूर *zarūr*
chair कुरसी *kursī* f.
chance, opportunity मौका *mauqā* m.
change, to बदलना *badalnā* N
chapatti चपाती *capātī* f.
cheap सस्ता *sastā*
child बच्चा *baccā* m.
childhood बचपन *bacpan* m.
choose, to चुनना *cunnā* N
cigarette सिग्रेट *sigret* f.
cinema सिनेमा *sinemā* m.
city शहर *śahar* m.
class क्लास *klās* m./f.
clean साफ़ *sāf*; to clean साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* N
cleaning सफाई *safāfī* f.
clear साफ़ *sāf*; evident ज़ाहिर *zahir*
clever (intelligent) होशियार *hošiyār*; (cunning) चतुर *catur*
closed बंद *band*
close, to बंद करना *band karnā* N
cloth कपड़ा *kaprā* m.
clothing, garment कपड़ा *kaprā* m.
cloud बादल *bādal* m.
coffee काफी *kāfi* f.
cold ठंड *ṭhaṇḍ* f.; (adj.) ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā*; (nose cold) ज़ुकाम *zukām* m.

come, to आना *ānā*
come out, to निकलना *nikalnā*
comfort आराम *ārām* m.; comfortably आराम से *ārām se*
companion साथी *sāthī* m.
complain, to शिकायत करना *śikāyat karnā* N; to complain to Sita about Ram, सीता से राम की शिकायत करना *Sītā se Rām kī śikāyat karnā* N
complaint शिकायत *śikāyat* f.
computer कम्प्यूटर *kampyūṭar* m.
concern चिंता *cintā* f.
condition, state हाल *hāl* m., हालत *hālat* f.
congratulation बधाई *badhāi* f.
conversation बातचीत *bātcīt* f.
copy (of book etc.) प्रति *prati* f.
corner कोना *konā* m.
correct सही *sahī*
cough, to खाँसी आना *khāsī ānā*
country देश *des* m.
cow गाय *gāy* f.
cross (road etc.), to पार करना *pār karnā* N
crowd भीड़ *bhīr* f.
cup प्याला *pyālā* m.
cupboard अलमारी *almārī* f.
cure इलाज *ilāj* m.
curtain परदा *pardā* m.
cut, to be कटना *kaṭnā*
cut, to काटना *kāṭnā* N
daal, lentils दाल *dāl* f.
daily (adverb) रोज़ *roz*

dance नृत्य *nṛtya* m., नाच *nāc* m.; to dance नाचना *nācnā*

dark अंधेरा *ādherā*; (of colour) गहरा *gahrā*; darkness अंधेरा *ādherā* m.

date तारीख *tārikh* f.

daughter बेटी *betī* f.

daughter-in-law बहू *bahū* f.

day दिन *din* m.; all day दिन भर *din bhar*; day before yesterday / after tomorrow परसों *parsō*

dear प्रिय *priy*

death मौत *maut* f., मृत्यु *mṛtyu* f.

degree (academic) डिग्री *digrī* f.

delay देर f.

Delhi दिल्ली *dillī* f.

deliberately जान-बूझकर *jān-būjhkar*

description वर्णन *varṇan* m.; to describe का वर्णन करना *kā varṇan karnā* N

despair निराशा *nirāśā* f.

Devanagari (the Hindi script) देवनागरी *devnāgarī* f.

dhobi, washerman धोबी *dhobī* m.

dialect बोली *boli* f.

dictionary शब्दकोश *śabdkoś* m.

die, to मरना *marnā*

difference फर्क *farq* m. it makes no difference कोई फर्क नहीं पड़ता *koi farq nahī partā*

different भिन्न *bhinn*; (separate) अलग *alag*

difficult मुश्किल *muškil*

difficulty मुश्किल *muškil* f.

direction तरफ *taraff* f., ओर or f.

dirty गंदा *gandā*, मैला *mailā*

disappointment निराशा *nirāśā* f.; disappointed निराश *nirāś*

distant दूर *dūr*

do, to करना *karnā* N

doctor डाक्टर *dākṭar* m.

dog कुत्ता *kuttā* m.

don't (in commands) न *na*, मत *mat*

door दरवाजा *darvāzā* m.

doubt शंका *śankā* f.

down, downstairs नीचे *nīcē*

draw, to खींचना *khīcna* N

drawer दराज *darāz* f.

dream सपना *sapnā* m.; to dream सपना देखना *sapnā dekhnā* N

drink, to पीना *pīnā* N

drive, to चलाना *calānā* N

driver ड्राइवर *drāivar* m.

each हर *har*, हरेक *harek*

ear कान *kān* m.

early जल्दी *jaldī*

earn, to कमाना *kamānā* N

easily आसानी से *āsāni se*, आराम से *ārām se*

easy आसान *āsān*; simple *saral*

eat, to खाना *khānā* N

edge किनारा *kinārā* m.

either... or या तो... या *yā to... yā*

electricity बिजली *bijlī* f.

e-mail ई-मेल *i-mel* f.

emerge, to निकलना *nikalnā*

employment नौकरी *naukri* f.

end अंत *ant* m.; in the end, after all आखिर (मे) *ākhir (mē)*

English person अंग्रेज *āgrēz* m., f.

enough! that's all! बस *bas*

envelope लिफाफा *lifāfā* m.

escape, to बचना *bačnā*

etc. वगैरह *vagairah*, इत्यादि *ityādi*

evening शाम *śām* f.

everything सब *sab*, सब कुछ *sab kuch*

exactly, precisely ठीक *thik*

examination परीक्षा *parikṣā* f.; to take (sit) an exam परीक्षा देना *parikṣā denā* N; to examine की परीक्षा लेना *kī parikṣā lenā* N

except for (को) छोड़कर *ko chorkar*, के सिवाय *ke sivāy*

expensive महँगा *mahāgā*

experience अनुभव *anubhav* m.

explain, to समझाना *samjhānā* N

extremely बहुत ही *bahut hī*

face मुँह *mūh* m.; चेहरा *cehrā* m.

facing, opposite (के) सामने (*ke*) *sāmne*

fall, to गिरना *girnā*

family परिवार *parivār* m.

famous मशहूर *mašhūr*, प्रसिद्ध *prasiddh*

fan पंखा *pankhā* m.

far away दूर *dūr*

fare (taxi etc.) किराया *kirāyā* m.

fat मोटा *moṭā*

father पिता *pitā* m. (inv.), बाप *bāp* m.

fault, guilt कसूर *kasūr* m.

fear डर *dar* m.; to fear (से) डरना (*se darna*)

feel, to महसूस करना *mahsūs* *karnā* N; to be felt महसूस होना *mahsūs honā*

fetch, to लाना *lānā*, ले आना *le ānā*

fever बुखार *bukhār* m.

fight, to (से) लड़ना (*se larnā* N

film फ़िल्म *film* f.

find, to पाना *pānā* N

finger ऊंगली *ūglī* f.

finish, to खत्म करना *khatm karnā* N

finished खत्म *khatm*

fire आग *āg* f.

first पहला *pahlā*; (adverb) पहले *pahle*

fix, to ठीक करना *thik karnā* N

floor फर्श *farš* m./f.

flower फूल *phūl* m.

fly (insect) मक्की *makkī* f.

fly, to उड़ना *uṛnā*

follow, to का पीछा करना *kā pīchā karnā* N

food खाना *khānā* m.

for के लिए *ke lie*

forbidden मना *manā* (inv.)
 force, strength जोर *zor* m.
 foreign country विदेश *videś* m.
 foreigner विदेशी *videśī* m.
 forget, to भूलना *bhūlnā*, भूल
 जाना *bhūl jānā*
 forgive, to माफ़ करना *māf karnā*
 N
 forgiveness माफ़ी *māfi* f.
 fork (utensil) कॉटा *kāṭā* m.
 free (vacant) खाली *khālī*;
 (of cost) मुफ्त *muft*;
 free time फुरसत *fursat* f.
 fresh ताजा *tāzā*
 friend दोस्त *dost* m., f., मित्र
 mitr m., f.; girl's girlfriend
 सहेली *saheli* f.
 from से *se*
 fruit फल *phal* m.
 full पूरा *pūrā*, भरा *bharā*
 fun मज़ा *mazā* m.
 furniture सामान *sāmān* m.
 future भविष्य *bhavिष्यa* m.
 Ganges गंगा *gangā* f.
 garden बगीचा *bagicā* m.
 get up, to उठना *uṭhnā*
 ghost भूत *bhūt* m.
 gift तोहफा *tohfā* m., भेट *bhēṭ* f.
 girl लड़की *laṛkī* f.
 give, to देना *denā* N; to give up
 छोड़ना *chorñā* N
 glasses, specs चश्मा *caśmā* m.
 go, to जाना *jānā*

gold सोना *sonā* m.
 good अच्छा *acchā*; decent भला
 bhalā
 goodbye नमस्ते *namaste*,
 नमस्कार *namaskār*
 government सरकार *sarkār* f.;
 governmental सरकारी *sarkārī*
 grandfather (father's father)
 दादा *dādā* m. (invariable -ā
 ending.) ; (mother's father)
 नाना *nānā* m. (invariable -ā
 ending)
 grandmother (father's mother)
 दादी *dādī* f.; (mother's
 mother) नानी *nānī* m.
 grass घास *ghās* f.
 guest मेहमान *mehmān* m.
 guru गुरु *guru* m.
 half आधा *ādhā* adj. & m.
 hand हाथ *hāth* m.
 happiness खुशी *khuśi* f.
 happy खुश *khuś*
 harass, to तंग करना *tang karnā* N
 hard, difficult मुश्किल *muśkil*
 hard-working मेहनती *mehnati*
 harm नुकसान *nuqsān* m.
 hate नफरत *nafrat* f.; to hate
 (से) नफरत करना (*se*) *nafrat*
 karnā N
 he वह *vah*
 head सिर *sir* m.
 health तबियत *tabiyat* f.
 hear, to सुनना *sunnā* N

heart दिल *dil* m.
 heat गरमी *garmi* f.
 heaven स्वर्ग *svarg* m.
 heavy भारी *bhārī*
 height लंबाई *lambāī* f.
 hello नमस्ते *namaste*, नमस्कार
 namaskār; (on phone) हलो
 halo
 help मदद *madad* f.; to help
 him उसकी मदद करना *uski*
 madad karnā N
 here यहाँ *yahā*, इधर *idhar*
 high ऊँचा *ūcā*
 hill पहाड़ *pahāṛ* m.
 Hindi हिन्दी *hindī* f.
 Hindu हिन्दू *hindū*
 history इतिहास *itihās* m.
 hit, to मारना *mārnā* N
 holiday छुट्टी *chuṭṭī* f.
 home घर *ghar* m.; at home घर
 पर *ghar par*
 hope आशा *āśā* f., उम्मीद *ummīd* f.
 hospital अस्पताल *aspatāl* m.
 hot गरम *garam*
 hotel होटल *hotäl* m.
 hour घंटा *ghaṇṭā* m.
 house मकान *makān* m.
 how much/many कितना *kitnā*;
 how much does that come
 to? कितना हुआ? *kitnā huā?*
 hunger भूख *bhūkh* f.; to feel
 hungry भूख लगना *bhūkh*
 lagnā
 hungry भूख लगना *bhūkh*
 lagnā
 husband पति *pati* m.
 I मैं *mai*
 ice बर्फ़ *barff*.
 idea विचार *vicār* m., ख्याल
 khyał m.
 if अगर *agar*
 ill बीमार *bīmār*
 immediately तुरंत *turānt*
 important ज़रूरी *zarūrī*
 impossible असंभव *asambhav*,
 नामुम्किन *nāmumkin*
 in में *mē*
 in front (of) (के) आगे (*ke*) *āge*
 increase, to बढ़ना *baṛhnā*,
 बढ़ाना *baṛhānā* N
 India हिन्दुस्तान *hindustān* m.,
 भारत *bhārat* m.; Indian
 हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustānī*, भारतीय
 bhāratīy
 individual, person व्यक्ति *vyakti* m.
 inside (के) अंदर (*ke*) *andar*
 instead of के बजाय *ke bajāy*
 intelligent होशियार *hoṣiyār*, तेज़
 tez
 intention इरादा *irādā* m.
 interesting दिलचस्प *dilcasp*
 invite, to बुलाना *bulānā* N
 -ish -सा -sā
 it वह *vah*
 job, employment नौकरी *naukri* f.
 joke मज़ाक *mazāk* m.; joking,
 fun हँसी-मज़ाक *hāsi-mazāk* m.

journey यात्रा *yātrā* f., सफर

safar m.

jungle जंगल *jangal* m.

keep, to रखना *rakhnā* ⁿ

key चाबी *cābī* f.

kill, to मारना *mārnā* ⁿ, मार

डालना *mār dālnā* ⁿ

kind, type तरह *tarah* f., प्रकार
prakār m.

king राजा *rājā* m. (inv.)

kitchen रसोईघर *rasoīghar* m.

knife छुरी *churī* f.

know, to जानना *jānnā* ⁿ; मालूम
होना *mālūm honā*

kurta कुरता *kurtā* m.

lack, want कमी *kamī* f.

lady महिला *mahilā* f.

lamp, light बत्ती *battī* f.

land ज़मीन *zamin* f.

lane गली *gali* f.

language भाषा *bhāṣā* f., ज़बान
zabān f.

last, previous पिछला *pichlā*

late, delayed देर से *der se*

later बाद (में) *bād (mē)*, आगे
चलकर *āge calkar*

laugh, to हँसना *hāsnā* ⁿ; to
make laugh हँसाना *hāsānā* ⁿ

lazy आलसी *ālsī*; (workshy)
कामचोर *kāmcōr*

leader, politician नेता *netā* m.

learn, to सीखना *sikhnā* ⁿ; to
study पढ़ना *parhnā*

leave, to छोड़ना *chorñā* ⁿ

left (opp. of right) बायाँ *bāyā*;
to the left (hand) बायें उलटे
(हाथ) *bāyē/ulṭe (hāth)*

left (remaining) बाकी *bāqī*

length लंबाई *lambāi* f.

lentil(s) दाल *dāl* f.

less कम *kam*

letter ख़त *khat* m., पत्र *patr* m.,
चिट्ठी *cittī* f.

lie झूठ *jhūṭh* m.; to lie झूठ
बोलना *jhūṭh bolna* ⁿ

lie, recline, to लेटना *letnā*

life ज़िंदगी *zindagī* f., जीवन
jivan m.

lift, to उठाना *uṭhānā* ⁿ

light (brightness) रोशनी *rośnī*
f.; (lamp, electric light) बत्ती
battī f.

light (in weight) हल्का *halkā*

like की तरह *kī tarah*; (equal to)
(के) समान *ke samān*; (such as)
जैसा *jaisā*

like, to पसंद करना *pasand karnā* ⁿ,
पसंद होना *pasand honā*

listen, to सुनना *sunnā* ⁿ

little, a थोड़ा-सा *thorā-sā*

live, to (reside) रहना *rahnā*; (be
alive) जीना *jīnā* ⁿ

lock ताला *tālā* m.

London लंदन *landan* m.

loneliness अकेलापन *akelāpan* m.

look for, to ढूँढना *dhūṛhnā* ⁿ, की
तलाश करना *kī talāś karnā* ⁿ

look, to देखना *dekhnā* ⁿ

lose, to खोना *khonā* ⁿ

love प्रेम *prem* m., प्यार *pyār* m.;
to love us हमसे प्रेम/प्यार करना

hamse prem/pyār karnā ⁿ

luggage सामान *sāmān* m.

lunch दोपहर का खाना *dopahar*
kā khānā m.

luxury ऐश *aiś* m.

lying (for inanimate things)
पड़ा *parā*; (for people, 'lying
down') लेटा *letā*

Ma माँ *mā̄* f.

mad पागल *pāgal*

mail, post डाक f.

make, to बनाना *banānā* ⁿ

man, person आदमी *ādmī* m.

mango आम *ām* m.

market बाजार *bāzār* m.

married शादी-शुदा *sādi-śudā*

(invariable -ā ending.)

marry, to शादी करना *sādi karnā* ⁿ;

to marry Ram, राम से शादी

करना *Rām se sādi karnā* ⁿ; to

marry Ram to Sita, राम की

शादी सीता से करना *Rām kī*

sādi Sītā se karnā ⁿ

matter बात *bāt* f.; it doesn't

matter कोई बात नहीं *koi bāt*

nahī

mean, miserly कंजूस *kanjūs*

meaning मतलब *matlab* m., अर्थ

arth m.

meat गोश्त *gośt* m., मांस *mā̄s* m.

medicine दवा *davā* f.

meet, to (से) मिलना *(se) milnā*

meeting मुलाकात *mulāqāt* f., भेट
bhēt f.

memory याद *yād* f.

midnight आधीरात *ādhīrāt* f.

milk दूध *dūdh* m.

mine मेरा *merā*

minute मिनट *minat* m.

mistake गलती *galtī* f., भूल *bhūl*
f.; to make a mistake
गलती/भूल करना *galtī/bhūl*
karnā ⁿ

Monday सोमवार *somvār* m.

money पैसा *paisā* m.

monkey बंदर *bandar* m.

month महीना *mahīnā* m.

moon चाँद *cād* m.

more और *aur*, ज्यादा *zyādā*,
अधिक *adhik*

morning सुबह *subah* f.

mosquito मच्छर *macchar* m.

most ज्यादा *zyādā*, अधिक *adhik*;
at the most अधिक से अधिक
adhik se adhik, ज्यादा से ज्यादा
zyādā se zyādā

mostly ज्यादातर *zyādātār*

mother माता *mātā* f., माँ *mā̄* f.

mountain पहाड़ *pahāṛ* m.

mouth मुँह *mūh* m.

move, to चलना *calnā*; हिलना
hilnā; to move house शिफ्ट

करना *śif t karnā* ⁿ, घर बदलना
ghar badalnā ⁿ

much ज्यादा *zyādā*, अधिक *adhib*
Muslim मुसलमान *musalmān*
 adj. and m.
my मेरा *merā*
narrow तंग *tang*
near (के) नज़दीक (ke) *nazdīk*,
 (के) पास (ke) *pās*
necessary ज़रूरी *zarūrī*
neck गर्दन *gardan* f.
need ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f.
needed चाहिए *cāhie*
neighbour पड़ोसी *parosi* m.
neither... nor न ... न *na... na*
new नया (नए, नई) *nayā (nae, nai)*
news खबर *khabar* f., समाचार
 samācār m.
newspaper अखबार *akhbār* m.
next अगला *aglā*
next to, close by को बगल में *kī bagal mē*
night रात *rāt* f.
no नहीं *nahī*; जी नहीं *jī nahī*
no one कोई नहीं *koi nahī*
nobody कोई नहीं *koi nahī*
noise, tumult शोर *sor* m.
noon, afternoon दोपहर *dopahar* f.
nose नाक *nāk* f.
not नहीं *nahī*, न *na*
nothing कुछ नहीं *kuch nahī*
now अब *ab*
nowadays आजकल *ājkal*
nowhere कहीं नहीं *kahī nahī*

o' clock बजे *baje*
of का *kā*
of course ज़रूर *zarūr*, अवश्य
avaśya
office दफ्तर *daftar* m.
often अक्सर *aksar*
old (of people) बूढ़ा *būrhā*; (of
 things) पुराना *purānā*
old man बूढ़ा *būrhā* m.
old woman बुढ़िया *būrihyā* f.
on पर *par*
on top (of) के ऊपर *ke ūpar*
one एक *ek*; one and a half डेढ़
deṛh; one and a quarter सवा
savā
oneself खुद *khud*, स्वयं *svayam*
only सिर्फ *srif*, केवल *keval*; ही *hi*
open खुला *khulā*; to open खुलना
khulnā; खोलना *kholnā*
opinion राय *rāy* f.; ख्याल *khyāl*
 m.; in my opinion मेरे ख्याल
 मेंसे *mere khyāl mē/se*
opportunity मौका *mauqā* m.
or या *yā*
order (send for), to मँगवाना
māgvānā ^N
ordinary आम *ām*, साधारण
sādhāraṇ
other, second दूसरा *dūsrā*
otherwise नहीं तो *nahī to*
our, ours हमारा *hamārā*
out बाहर *bāhar*
out of, from among में से *mē se*

outside (के) बाहर (ke) *bāhar*
own, one's own अपना *apnā*
pain दर्द *dard* m.; (mental) दुःख
duḥkh m.
paper कागज *kāgaz* m.
park (car), to खड़ा करना *khaṛā*
karnā ^N
particular खास *khaṣ*, विशेष
višeṣ
party (political) दल *dal* m.
party (social event) पार्टी *pārtī* f.
passenger यात्री *yātri* m.,
 मुसाफ़िर *musāfir* m., सवारी
savārī f.
pearl मोती *motī* m.
pen कलम *qalam* m./f.
pencil पेंसिल *pensil* f.
people लोग *log* m. pl.; the
 people, public जनता *jantā* f.
 (used in singular)
perhaps शायद *śāyad*
period, age जमाना *zamānā* m.
person, individual व्यक्ति *vyakti* m.
phone, to फोन करना *fon karnā* ^N
photograph फोटो *foto* m.; to
 take photo फोटो खीचना *foto*
khīcna ^N
pick up, to उठाना *uṭhānā* ^N
picture तस्वीर *tasvīr* f., चित्र *citr* m.
piece, bit टुकड़ा *tukṛā* m.
pill गोली *goli* f.
place जगह *jagah* f.
play (game), to खेलना *khelnā* ^N
pure, unmixed शुद्ध *suddh*

put on, to पहनना *pahannā* ^N
 put, to रखना *rakhnā* ^N
 quarrel झगड़ा *jhagrā* ^{m.}
 question सवाल *savāl* ^{m.}, प्रश्न
praśn ^{m.}
 quick तेज़ *tez*
 quickly जल्दी *jaldī*
 quite (fairly) काफ़ी *kāfi*;
 (completely) बिलकुल *bilkul*
 radio रेडियो *rediyo* ^{m.}
 rain बारिश *bāriś* ^{f.}; to rain
 बारिश होना *bāriś honā*, पानी
 पड़ना *pānī pārnā*
 reach, to पहुँचना *pahūcnā*
 read, to पढ़ना *paṛhnā* ^N
 ready तैयार *taiyār*
 real असली *aslī*
 reason कारण *kāraṇ* ^{m.}, वजह
vajah ^{f.}
 recognize, to पहचानना
pahcānnā ^N
 red लाल *lāl*
 refuse (to), to (से) इनकार करना
 (se) *inkār karnā* ^N
 relative रिश्तेदार *riśtedār* ^{m., f.}
 remain, to रहना *rahnā*
 remaining बाकी *bāqī*
 remember, to याद करना *yād*
karnā ^N; याद होना *yād honā*
 remind, to याद दिलाना *yād*
dilānā ^N
 rent किराया *kirāyā* ^{m.}; to rent
 किराये पर लेना/देना *kirāye par*
lenā/denā ^N

reply जवाब *javāb* ^{m.}; to reply
 जवाब देना *javāb denā* ^N
 rest, ease आराम *ārām* ^{m.}; to
 rest आराम करना *ārām karnā* ^N
 return, to लौटना *lauṭnā*
 rice चावल *cāval* ^{m.}
 rich, wealthy अमीर *amīr*
 rickshaw रिक्षा *riksā* ^{m.}
 right (correct) ठीक *thik*, सही
sahi
 right (opp. of left) दाहिना
dāhinā; to the right (hand)
 दाहिने (हाथ) *dāhine (hāth)*
 river नदी *nadī* ^{f.}
 robbery चोरी *corī* ^{f.}
 room कमरा *kamrā* ^{m.}
 run, to दौड़ना *daurnā*; to run
 away भागना *bhāgnā*
 rupee रुपया *rupayā* ^{m.}
 salt नमक *namak* ^{m.}
 samosa समोसा *samosā* ^{m.}
 sandal चप्पल *cappal* ^{f.}
 Sanskrit संस्कृत *sanskṛt* ^{f.}
 sari साड़ी *sārī* ^{f.}
 Saturday शनिवार *śanivār* ^{m.}
 save, to बचाना *bacānā* ^N
 say, to (से) कहना (se) *kahnā* ^N
 scold, to डाँटना *dātnā* ^N
 script (alphabet) लिपि *lipi* ^{f.}
 sea समुद्र *samudra* ^{m.}
 search तलाश *talāś* ^{f.}; to search
 for की तलाश करना *kī talāś*
karnā ^N

seated, sitting बैठा *baithā*
 see, to देखना *dekhnā* ^N
 seem, to लगना *lagnā*; मालूम होना
mālūm honā
 sell, to बेचना *bechnā* ^N
 send, to भेजना *bhejnā* ^N
 sentence वाक्य *vākyā* ^{m.}
 separate, separately अलग *alag*
 servant नौकर *naukar* ^{m.}
 several कई *kai*
 she वह *vah*
 shoe; pair of shoes जूता *jūtā* ^{m.}
 shop दुकान *dukān* ^{f.}; shop-
 keeper दुकानदार *dukāndār* ^{m.}
 should चाहिए *cāhie* (after
 infinitive: 'I should go' मुझको
 जाना चाहिए *mujhko jānā*
cāhie)
 shout, to चिल्लाना *cillānā* ^N
 shut बंद *band*; to shut बंद करना
band karnā ^N
 side, direction तरफ *taraff* ^{f.}, ओर
or ^{f.}
 silent चुप *cup*, खामोश *khāmos*
 simple, easy सरल *saral*
 since the time when... since then
 जब से ... तब से *jab se... tab se*
 sing, to गाना *gānā* ^N
 sister बहिन *bahin* ^{f.}
 sit, to बैठना *baithnā*
 sitar सितार *sitār* ^{m.}
 sky आकाश *ākāś* ^{m.}, आसमान
āsmān ^{m.}
 sleep नींद *nīd* ^{f.}
 sleep, to सोना *sonā*
 small छोटा *choṭā*
 smile, to मुस्कराना *muskarānā* ^N
 smoke, to (सिग्रेट) पीना (*sigret*)
pinā ^N
 so (then) तो *to*, सो *so*; so much
itnā ^N
 soap साबुन *sābun* ^{m.}
 sold, to be बिकना *biknā*
 some (with single countable
 noun) कोई *koī*; (with
 uncountable) कुछ *kuch*;
 something else कुछ और *kuch aur*, something or other कुछ न
 कुछ *kuch na kuch*
 somehow कहीं *kahī*
 someone कोई *koī*; someone
 else और कोई *aur koī*, कोई
 और *koī aur*, someone or other
 कोई न कोई *koī na koī*
 sometime कभी *kabhī*;
 sometimes कभी कभी *kabhi kabhī*
 somewhere कहीं *kahī*; some-
 where else कहीं और *kahī aur*;
 somewhere or other कहीं न
 कहीं *kahī na kahī*
 son बेटा *betā* ^{m.}
 song गाना *gānā* ^{m.}, गीत *gīt* ^{m.}
 soon जल्दी *jaldī*
 sound आवाज़ *āvāz* ^{f.}
 south दक्षिण *dakṣin* ^{m.}

speak, to बोलना *bolnā* n.
 spoon चम्पच *cammac* m.
 stair, staircase सीढ़ी *sīhī* f.
 stamp टिकट *tikat* m./ f.
 standing खड़ा *kharā*
 state, province प्रदेश *pradeś* m.
 station स्टेशन *stēshān* m.
 stay, to रहना *rahnā*
 steal, to चोरी करना *cori karnā* n.
 still (up to now) अभी *abhi*
 stomach पेट *peṭ* m.
 stone पत्थर *patthar* m.
 stop, to रुकना *rukna*; रोकना
 rokna n.
 story कहानी *kahānī* f.
 straight, straightforward सीधा
 sīdhā
 strange अजीब *ajib*
 stranger अजनबी *ajnabī* m.
 street सड़क *sarak* f.
 string रस्सी *rassi* f.
 stroll, to ठहरना *tahalnā*
 strong मज़बूत *mazbūt*, तेज़ *tez*
 student विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m., f.
 studies, studying पढ़ाई *parhāi* f.
 study, to पढ़ना *parhnā*
 stupid बेबूफ़ *bevaqūf*; stupid
 person उल्लू *ullū* m. (lit. 'owl')
 subject, topic विषय *viṣay* m.
 success सफलता *saphaltā* f.;
 successful सफल *saphal*,
 कामयाब *kāmyāb*
 suddenly, unexpectedly अचानक
 acānak, एकाएक *ekāek*

suggestion सुझाव *sujhāv* m.; to
 suggest सुझाव देना *sujhāv*
 denā n.
 summer गरमियाँ *garmiyā* f. pl;
 summer holidays गरमी की
 छुटियाँ *garmi kī chuttiyā* f. pl
 sun सूरज *sūraj* m.; sunlight,
 sunshine धूप *dhūp* f.
 Sunday रविवार *ravivār* m.
 surprise आश्चर्य *āscarya* m.; I'm
 surprised मुझे आश्चर्य है *mujhe*
āscarya hai
 sweet मीठा *mīthā*; sweet dish
 मीठाई *mīthāi* f.
 swim, to तैरना *tairnā* n.
 tabla तबला *tablā* m.
 table मेज *mez* f.
 tablet, pill गोली *golī* f.
 tailor दर्जी *darzi* m.
 take, to (receive) लेना *lenā* n;
 (deliver) ले जाना *le jānā*
 take away, to ले जाना *le jānā*
 take care of, to का ख़्याल/ध्यान
 रखना *kā khyāl/dhyān rakhnā* n
 talk, converse, to (से) बात/बातें
 करना (*se*) *bāt/bātē karnā* n
 tall लंबा *lambā*; (high) ऊँचा *ūcā*
 tap (faucet) नल *nal* m.
 taxi टैक्सी *taiksi* f.
 tea चाय *cāy* f.
 teach, to (a subject) पढ़ाना
 parhānā n., (a skill) सिखाना
 sikhānā n.
 teacher अध्यापक *adhyāpak* m.

tell, to बताना *batānā* n.
 temple मंदिर *mandir* m.
 thank you शुक्रिया *sukriyā*,
 धन्यवाद *dhanyavād*
 that (conjunction) कि *ki*
 that (pronoun) वह *vah*
 that is to say यानी *yānī*
 theft चोरी *cori* f.
 then फिर *phir*, तब *tab*
 there वहाँ *vahā*; right there वहाँ
 vahā; over there उधर *udhar*
 these ये *ye*
 they ये *ye*, वे *ve*
 thick, coarse मोटा *motā*
 thief चोर *cor* m.
 thin पतला *patlā*; (lean) दुबला-
 पतला *dublā-patlā*
 thing चीज *cīz* f.; (abstract,
 'matter') बात *bāt*. f.
 think, to सोचना *sochnā* n.
 thirst प्यास *pyās* f.; to feel
 thirsty, thirsty to strike प्यास
 लगना *pyās lagnā*
 this यह *yah*
 those वे *ve*
 thought विचार *vicār* m., ख़्याल
 khyāl m.
 throat गला *galā* m.
 throw, to डालना *dālnā* n, फेंकना
 phēknā n.
 ticket टिकट *tikat* m./ f.
 time समय *samay* m., वक्त *vaqt*
 m.; occasion बार *bār* f., दफ़ा
 dafā f.

tired थका *thakā*; to be tired
 थकना *thaknā*
 to को *ko*
 today आज *āj*
 together (in company with) एक
 साथ *ek sāth*, के साथ *ke sāth*
 tomorrow कल *kal*
 too (also) भी *bhī*; (excessive)
 बहुत ज़्यादा *bahut zyādā*
 touch, to छूना *chūnā* n.
 towards की तरफ़/ ओर *ki*
 taraf/ or
 town शहर *śahar* m.
 toy खिलौना *khilaunā* m.
 train ट्रेन *tren* f., गाड़ी *gāṛī* f.,
 रेलगाड़ी *relegāṛī* f.
 translation अनुवाद *anuvād* m.;
 to translate (का) अनुवाद करना
 (*ka*) *anuvād karnā* n.
 travel यात्रा *yātrā* f., सफ़र *safar* m.;
 to travel यात्रा/सफ़र करना *yātrā/*
 safar karnā n.
 traveller यात्री *yātri* m., मुसाफ़िर
 musāfir m.
 tree पेड़ *peḍ* m.
 true सच *sac*
 trust भरोसा *bharosā* m., विश्वास
 viśvās m.
 truth सच्चाई *sacchāi* f.
 try, to की कोशिश करना *ki kośis*
 karnā n.
 turn, bend मोड़ *mor* m.
 turn, to मुड़ना *muṛnā*, मोड़ना
 morā n.

two दो *do*; two and a half ढाई *dhāī*
uncle (father's younger brother) चाचा *cācā* m. (inv.)
understand, to समझना *samajhnā* n
understanding समझ *samajh* f.
until तक *tak*
up, upstairs ऊपर *ūpar*
up to तक *tak*
upset परेशान *paresān*
Urdu उर्दू *urdū* f.
urgent जरूरी *zarūrī*
us हम *ham*
useless बेकार *bekār*
usually आम तौर पर *ām taur par*
vacant खाली *khālī*
vacate, to खाली करना *khālī karnā* n
valuable क़ीमती *qimti*
Varanasi वाराणसी *vārāṇasi* f.
vegetable(s) सब्जी *sabzī* f.
very बहुत *bahut*
via से होकर *se hokar*
village गाँव *gāv* m.
visible, to be दिखाई देना *dikhāī denā*
voice आवाज़ *āvāz* f.
wait, waiting इंतज़ार *intazār* m.;
 to wait (for) (का) इंतज़ार करना
(kā) intazār karnā n
walk, to पैदल चलना/जाना *paidal calnā/jana*

wall दीवार *dīvār* f.
want, to चाहना *cāhnā* n (in past, use imperfective – मैं चाहता था *mai cāhtā thā* – rather than perfective)
warm गरम *garam*
wash, to धोना *dhonā* n; (bathe) नहाना *nahānā*; to wash dishes बरतन *mājnā* n
washed, to be धुलना *dhulnā*
watch, wristwatch घड़ी *gharī* f.
water पानी *pānī* m.
way, manner ढंग *dhang* m., तरह *tarah* f., प्रकार *prakār* m.
we हम *ham*
weak कमज़ोर *kamzor*
wear, to पहनना *pahannā* n
weather मौसम *mausam* m.
wedding शादी *sādī* f.
week हफ्ता *haftā* m., सप्ताह *saptāh* m.
weep, to रोना *ronā* n
well, anyway खैर *khair*
well, in a good way अच्छा *acchā*, अच्छी तरह (से) *acchi tarah (se)*
wet (soaked) भीगा *bhigā*; (damp) गीला *gīlā*
what like, what kind of? कैसा *kaisā*
what? क्या *kyā*
when... then जब... तब *jab... tab*
when? कब *kab*

where... there जहाँ ... वहाँ *jahā... vahā*
where? कहाँ *kahā*, किधर *kidhar*
which, the one which जो *jo*; which/what ever जो भी *jo bhi*
which? कौनसा *kaunsā*
while (on the other hand) जब *ki jab ki*
white सफेद *safed*; white person गोरा *gorā* m., f.
who, the one who जो *jo*; whoever जो भी *jo bhi*
who? कौन *kaun*
why? क्यों *kyō*
wife पत्नी *patnī* f.
wind हवा *havā* f.
window खिड़की *khirkī* f.
with से *se*; (in company of) के साथ *ke sāth*
without के बिना *ke binā*; without doing/saying/thinking बिना किए/बोले/सोचे *binā kie/bole/soce*

woman औरत *aurat* f.
wood लकड़ी *lakṛī* f.
word शब्द *śabd* m.
work काम *kām* m.; (occupation) धंधा *dhandhā* m.; (employment) नौकरी *naukri* f.

world दुनिया *duniyā* f.
write, to लिखन *likhnā* n
writer लेखक *lekhak* m.
wrong, incorrect गलत *galat*
year साल *sāl* m., वर्ष *varṣ* m.; (of calendar, era) सन् *san* m.
yes हाँ *hā*, जी हाँ *ji hā*
yesterday कल *kal*
you (intimate) तू *tū*; (familiar) तुम *tum*; (formal) आप *āp*
young छोटा *choṭā*, जवान *javān*
your, yours (intimate) तेरा *terā*; (familiar) तुम्हारा *tumhārā*; (formal) आपका *āpkā*

adjective A word that describes: 'green, small, nice'.

adverb A word or phrase that describes the way in which something happens: 'quickly, carefully, immediately, next week'.

agreement Having the same number, gender and case: in 'we go', the verb 'go' agrees with 'we'; in 'he goes', 'goes' agrees with 'he'.

case A way of showing the relationship of a word to other words in a sentence: 'she hit her' distinguishes aggressor and victim by having 'she' and 'her' in different cases. In Hindi, the main distinction is between 'direct case' and 'oblique case'.

conjunction A link-word between parts of a sentence, such as 'that' and 'but' in 'I heard that my brother was ill but I did nothing'.

continuous The tense that describes things going on at a particular time, conveyed in English by an '-ing' verb and in Hindi by a रहा *rahā* construction: वह बोल रहा है vah bol rahā hai 'he is speaking'.

direct The case used by default for nouns (and pronouns and adjectives); it is replaced by the 'oblique' when a noun (etc.) is followed by a postposition, and in some adverbial phrases.

gender The status of a noun as being either masculine or feminine. For animates, grammatical gender follows sexual gender (आदमी *ādmī* 'man' is masculine, औरत *aurat* 'woman' is feminine), but for inanimates the allocation of gender is not easily predictable (कान *kān* 'ear' is masculine, नाक *nāk* 'nose' is feminine).

imperfective A verb tense whose action is not a completed, one-off event: मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindī boltā hūँ* 'I speak Hindi'; see **perfective**.

intransitive verb One that cannot take a direct object. Verbs of motion are typical examples: आना *ānā* 'to come', जाना *jānā* 'to go'.

noun A word that names something: 'mouse, love, brother, Ram'.

number The status of a word as being either singular or plural.

infinitive The form of the verb listed in dictionaries: in Hindi it ends -ना -nā, as in करना *karnā*; in English it features the word 'to', as in 'to do'. An infinitive is used in many constructions such as मुझको जाना चाहिए *mujhko jānā cāhie* 'I ought to go'.

object The part of the sentence that is affected by the verb, or to which the action is done. In वह राम को पैसा देगा *vah Rām ko paisā degā* 'He'll give money to Ram', वह *vah* 'he' is the subject, पैसा *paisā* 'money' is the direct object, राम *Rām* 'Ram' the indirect object.

oblique The case that is used before a postposition. In मेरे कमरे में *mere kamre mē* 'in my room', मेरे *kamre* *mere kamre* is made oblique by में *mē*. An oblique also appears (without postposition) in some adverbs such as इन दिनों *in dinō* 'these days'.

participle A form of the verb used as the basis for various tenses: जाता *jātā* is the imperfective participle from जाना *jānā* 'to go' and is used to form वह जाता है/था *vah jātā hai/thā* 'he goes/ used to go'.

passive A verb whose focus is on the action being done rather than the person doing it: 'the food is being cooked' is passive, 'I am cooking the food' is active.

perfective A verb tense that describes a completed, one-off action, as in हमने गाड़ी खरीदी *hamne gāṛī kharidī* 'we bought a car'.

possessive Having a meaning that indicates ownership: 'my' and 'our' are possessive pronouns.

postposition Words like में *mē* 'in', पर *par* 'on' and के लिए *ke lie* 'for', which express a relationship to the word or phrase preceding it, as in मेज पर *mez par* 'on the table', आप के लिए *āp ke lie* 'for you'; postpositions are the Hindi equivalents of English prepositions.

pronoun A word that stands for a noun: 'Manoj read a book' uses nouns, 'he read it' uses pronouns.

relative A relative pronoun such as 'who, which' gives further information about something already mentioned, as in 'Find the boy who took my jacket': such a word introduces a relative clause.

stem The base form of a verb, to which endings are added: कर *kar* in करना *karnā* 'to do'.

subject That person or thing who acts or is: हम *ham* 'we' in हम खाना तैयार करेंगे *ham khānā taiyār karēngे* 'we will prepare food'.

subjunctive A form of the verb that typically expresses possibility or suggestion rather than definitive actions.

transitive A transitive verb is one that can take a direct object: 'to eat, to write, to ask' ('to eat food, to write letters, to ask questions').

verb A word or phrase that denotes an action or a state of being: 'ate' in 'I ate the banana', 'am' in 'I am unwell'. It usually has a subject ('I') and may also take an object ('the banana').

References are to Unit and section number.

able, to be 6.3
 absolutive 10.4
 adjectives 2.1, 3.1, 3.3
 adverbs 4.2, 8.4
 age ('how old...?') 6.2
 allow, to 6.4
apnā 8.3
 be, to (present) 1.1, (past) 7.1
 begin, to 11.1
bhi 3.3, 7.4
cāhie ('to need') 5.2, ('should') 11.4
cāhnā 6.4
 can 6.3
 case 3.3, 5.1, 6.1, 10.2
 causatives 12.2
 commands 4.1, 9.2
 comparisons 8.1
 compound verbs 12.5
 compulsion ('should, must') 11.4, 11.5
 conditionals ('if') 9.2
 crossword puzzle 12.1
cuknā 12.4
 dates 12.6
 days of the week 9.1
 destinations 8.4
 directions (finding the way) 11.2

let (allow), to 6.4
mālūm 5.2
 meet, to 4.2
milnā ('to meet') 4.2; ('to be available; to get') 5.3
 months 12.7
 must 11.4, 11.5
ne 10.2
 negatives 1.2, 4.3
 nouns 2.2, 3.3
 numbers 2.2, 12.6
 object with *ko* 7.2
 obligation expressions 11.4, 11.5
 oblique (see case)
 parts of the body 12.3
pasand 52
 passive 11.3
 possession 1.2, 2.4, 3.2 6.1, 8.3
 postpositions 3.2, 3.3, 5.2, 8.4
 pronouns 1.2, 1.3, 2.3, 2.4, 5.1, 7.3
hi 7.4
 honorifics 2.3, 2.4, 4.1
 'if' clauses 9.2
 imperatives 4.1
 intransitive verbs 10.1
jab, jahā, jo etc. 12.1
jākar construction 10.4
jī 2.4
kā 6.1
 know, to 5.2
ko 5.2, 7.2, 7.3, 10.2, 11.4, 11.5
koi 6.1
kuch 6.2
kyā (question marker) 2.2; ('what?') 2.4
lagnā 9.4, 11.1

quantities 5.4
 questions 1.2, 1.4, 2.3, 3.1, 3.2, 4.3
 relative clauses 12.1
 reported speech 9.1
saknā 6.3
 shades of meaning 12.4
 should 11.4
 style in Hindi 12.5
 subjunctive 9.2
 superlatives 8.1
 tenses: continuous 8.2, future 9.1, present imperfective 4.3, past imperfective 7.1, perfective 10.1–10.3
 time of day 12.7
 time taken to do something 9.4
to 7.4
 transitive verbs 10.2, 12.2
 want, to 5.2, 6.4
 word order 3.2, 3.3
 would 8.1



also available in a book/CD pack

teach
yourself

beginner's hindi

rupert snell

- Are you new to language learning?
- Do you want lots of practice and examples?
- Do you want to improve your confidence to speak?

Beginner's Hindi is written for the complete beginner who wants to move at a steady pace and have lots of opportunity to practise. The grammar is explained clearly and does not assume that you have studied a language before. You will learn everything you need to get the most out of a holiday or to go on to further study.

Rupert Snell is former Reader in Hindi at the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London.

Why not try ● Hindi Conversation ● Hindi
● Beginner's Hindi Script ● or visit www.teachyourself.co.uk?

Cover ● © Hugh Sitton/Getty Images ● Man with umbrella,
Agra, India

the leader in self-learning with more than 500
titles, covering all subjects
be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



UK £9.99

ISBN 978-0-340-85652-9

00999



9 780340 856529